

NEW CONCEPT ENGLISH BOOK 2

§ Lesson 1 A private conversation 私人谈话

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★private adj. 私人的

如果妈妈想看你的信, 你可以说: It's my private letter.

如果陌生人想进你的房子, 你可以说: It's my private house.

private life 私生活

由此引申出 **privacy n. 隐私**: private life 私生活

It's privacy. 这是我的隐私!(不愿让别人知道的)

新东方是 private school(私立学校), 与此相反, 公立学校是 public school. 所以, private 的反义词是 public.

eg. public 公众; public letter 公开信; public place 公共场所

private 还有一个值得注意的意思: 普通的.

如: private citizen 普通公民: I'm a private citizen.

private soldier 大兵;

我们熟悉的《拯救大兵瑞恩》就是《Private Ryan》

★conversation n. 谈话

subject of conversation: 话题(天气是英国人最喜爱的话题)

几种谈话:

1、talk 内容可正式可不正式, 也可以私人: Let's have a talk.

2、conversation 一般用于正式文体中, 内容上往往不正式: They are having a conversation.

3、dialogue 对话, 可以指正式国家与国家会谈: China and Korea are having a dialogue.

4、chat 闲聊, 就是北京人说的“侃”, 说的是无关紧要的事.

5、gossip 嚼舌头, 说长道短

have a + talk/chat/dialogue/conversation/gossip 名词变动词

★seat n. 座位

这个词很重要, 考试常考.

have a good seat, 这里的 **seat** 指 **place**(指地点不错), 而不是 chair.

take a seat/take your seat 坐下来, 就坐

下面这个句子在口语、电影里很常见: Is the seat taken?(这个位置有人吗?)

考点: 作为动词的 seat 与 sit 的区别

sit--vi; seat--vt

eg: He is sitting there. 他住在那儿.

You seat him. 你给他找个位置.

seat sb 让某人就坐, 后面会加人

eg: seat yourself.

Seat him.

★play n. 戏

★loudly adv. 大声的

★angry adj. 生气的

cross=angry ; I was angry.He was cross.

annoyed: 恼火的;

程 | I was annoyed.

度 | I was angry/cross.

加 | I was very angry.

深 ↓ **be blue in the face** : I am blue in the face.(脸色都青了, 相当生气了)

★bear(bore, borne) v. 容忍

bear, stand

I can't bear/stand you

endure[in'djuə] : 忍受, 容忍

put up with : 忍受

I got divorced (离婚) .I could not put up with him

bear/stand/endure

忍受的极限在加大

put up with=bear=stand

bear n.熊 white bear

bear hug : 热情(热烈)的拥抱

give sb a bear hug

★business n. 事, 生意

business man : 生意人

do business: 做生意

go to some place on business: 因公出差

I went to Tianjin on business.

thing 可以指事情,也可以指东西

business: 某人自己的私人的事情

It's my business (指私人的事, 自己处理的事)

it's none of your business

【课文讲解】

go to the theatre

see a film=go to the cinema

go to the + 地点 表示去某地干嘛

go to the doctor's 去看病

go to the dairy 去牛奶店

go to the + 人 + 's 表示去这个人开的店

go to the butcher's **买肉**

go to school: 去上学

go to church: 去做礼拜

go to hospital(医院): 去看病

go to the Great Wall

go home; 跟 home 相连一定表示没有事情可做,回家休息

I am at home 在家休息

enjoy, enjoy oneself: 玩的开心

enjoy+sth : 喜欢,从当中得到一种享受

I like something very much./I love something.

I enjoy the class.

I enjoy the music.

I enjoy the book.

enjoy the dinner/film/progame/game

were sitting : 当时正座在

过去进行时态 : 过去的某个时间正在发生的动作

一个故事的背景往往用进行时态描述

I + be + v(ing)

The girl was reading a book in the garden. A boy came to her.

got : 变得, 表示一种变化, got angry

I am/was angry 是一个事实

I got angry: 强调变化过程

It is hot.

It got hot.

got 取代 be 动词, got 是一个半联系动词, 可以直接加形容词

turn round: 转头

not pay any attention = pay no attention

表示注意, pay attention; 对什么加以注意, pay attention to sth

not any = no

I could not bear it./you./the noise.

I can't hear a word.

美音: 肯定 I can [kæn] 否定, I can't [kænt], 它的 /t/ 是吞进去的, 在读音上很难区别, 只能根据上下文来定

2. 如果时间和地点连在一起, 先放地点, 再放时间

如果问何时何地, 是一个固定搭配 when and where

(4)...

ahead of : 在...前面 (+时间、位置)(动态的行为)

ahead of time

He goes ahead of me.

5 _____ did the writer feel? Angry.

a. Where b. Why c. How d. When

(5) ...c...

how —— 对一个方式、状态提问

特殊疑问词对后面的答案提问

angry(adj)

how(adv.) —— 对形容词、副词、介词短语提问

where —— 用介词, 地点

when —— 用介词, 时间

why —— 用 because 回答

11 The writer could not bear it. He could not _____ it.

a. carry b. suffer c. stand d. lift

(11)...

suffer: 遭受, 忍受 (精神或肉体上) + 痛苦

bear: 忍受 = stand

I suffer the headache.
He often suffers defeat.

§ Lesson 2 Breakfast or lunch? 早餐还是午餐?

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★until prep. 直到

直到...才; 直到...为止

后面加(时间状语)从句,前面就是主句

1) His father didn't die until he came back. (肯定)

直到他回来,他爸爸才死.

2) His father was alive until he came back. (否定)

直到他回来为止,他爸爸都是活着的.

到他回来这一点之前,没死 : not die; 活的 : 不加 not.

把 **until** 作为时间终止线

从句的时间终点之前,这个动作做了还是没做?

做了——肯定;

没做——否定.

For he ____A(C)____(wait) until it stopped raining.

A. waited B. didn't wait

A. leave B. left C. didn't leave

I stay in bed until twelve o'clock.

I didn't get up until 12 o'clock.

★outside adv. 外面

作状语

He is waiting for me outside.

It is cold outside.

ring(rang.rung) v.(铃、电话等)响(刺耳的)

[注]这种响是刺耳的,往往是提醒人做某事

The telephone(door bell) is ringing.

而风铃等响要用 **jingle**

jingle(bell): (铃儿) 响叮当

给某人打电话 : **ring sb.**

Tomorrow I'll ring you.

打电话(名) : **give sb. a ring**

Remember to ring me/remember to give me a ring

戒指(名词) n

★aunt n. 姑,姨,婶,舅妈(所有长一辈的女性都用这个称呼)

与此相同, 男性则是 **uncle**: 叔叔

他们的孩子 : **cousin** : 堂兄妹(不分男女)

cousin 的孩子 : **nephew** : 外甥, **niece** : 外甥女[记 : “捏死”]

★repeat v. 重复

【Text】

Lesson 2 Breakfast or lunch? 早餐还是午餐?

First listen and then answer the question. 听录音, 然后回答以下问题.

Why was the writer's aunt surprised?

It was Sunday. I never get up early on Sundays. I sometimes stay in bed until lunchtime. Last Sunday I got up very late. I looked out of the window. It was dark outside. 'What a day!' I thought. 'It's raining again.' Just then, the telephone rang. It was my aunt Lucy. 'I've just arrived by train,' she said. 'I'm coming to see you.'

'But I'm still having breakfast,' I said.

'What are you doing?' she asked.

'I'm having breakfast,' I repeated.

'Dear me,' she said. 'Do you always get up so late? It's one o'clock!'

参考译文

那是个星期天, 而在星期天我是从来不早起的, 有时我要一直躺到吃午饭的时候. 上个星期天, 我起得很晚. 我望望窗外, 外面一片昏暗. “鬼天气!” 我想, “又下雨了.” 正在这时, 电话铃响了. 是我姑母露西打来的. “我刚下火车,” 她说, “我这就来看你.”

“但我还在吃早饭,” 我说.

“你在干什么?” 她问道.

“我正在吃早饭,” 我又说了一遍.

“天啊,” 她说, “你总是起得这么晚吗? 现在已经 1 点钟了!”

【课文讲解】

On Sundays: 所有的星期天, 每逢星期天

never: 从来不 (可以直接用在动词前面)=not (变成否定句, 前面一定要加助动词)

I don't like her. = I never like her.

因为是上个星期, 所以时态不是一般现在时.

look out of : 朝窗外看 out of 是固定搭配

从...里: from, out of

dark: 天很黑

What a day?

What + a + n. ——感叹句

It is a terrible day. ==> What a terrible day!

what+a/an (+a.)+n. (+主语+谓语)

What a terrible day!

省略: 1. 主、谓随时可省

what a good girl (she is)!

2. 省形容词

What a day! 有上下文和一定的语境, 才能省略形容词.

just then: 就在那时

It was my aunt Lucy.

如果不知道对方性别, 可以用 it 取代

Who are you?/Who is it ?

just 只会出现在“现在完成时”

by train

by 直接加交通工具(不能有任何修饰词, 复数)

如果加修饰词, 就要换掉 by 用 in 或 on

I go out by bus.

若是两辆 : I go out in/on two buses.

I'm coming to see you. 我将要来看你.

用 come 的现在进行时态 be coming 表示一般将来

同样的用法还有 : go, come, leave, arrive, land, meet, die, start, return, join...

前 4 个一定要记住

天哪!英国人说 Dear me!或 My dear!

美国人说 : My god! [gɒd] ([ɔ]发啊的音)注意美英的发音不同.

It's one o'clock! 注意下划线要连读!

【Key structures】 关键句型

本课的重点句型是现在进行和一般现在.

Now, often and Always 表示现在和经常发生的动作

Now——现在进行时(说话的当时正在发生, 现阶段正在发生)

Often, Always——一般现在时

"现阶段": I am working as a teacher.

I do.../he does...

I get up...

一般现在时, 是一种习惯, 真理, 是过去, 现在和未来都会发生的事情.

现在还在睡觉

He is still sleeping.

频率副词往往放在句子中间, 实义动词前, 非实义动词后

如果既有实义动词又有非实义动词, 要放在两个之间.

疑问句中副词往往放在主语后面.

非实义动词 : 1. 系动词(be)

2. 助动词帮助动词构成时态的(do, does, will, shall, have, had, has)

3. 情态动词 : (must, can, may) 除此之外都是实义动词.

p4 Exercises

1 I am looking out of my window. I can see some children in the street. The children _____ (play) football. They always _____ (play) football in the street. Now a little boy _____ (kick) the ball. Another boy _____ (run) after him but he cannot catch him.

2 I carried my bags into the hall.

'What you _____ (do)?' my landlady asked.

'I _____ (leave), Mrs. Lynch, ' I answered.

'Why you _____ (leave)?' she asked. 'You have been here only a week. '

'A week too long, Mrs. Lynch, ' I said. 'There are too many rules in this house. My friends never _____ (come) to visit me. Dinner is always at seven o'clock, so I frequently _____ (go) to bed hungry. You don't like noise, so I rarely _____ (listen) to the radio. The heating doesn't work, so

I always _____ (feel) cold. This is a terrible place for a man like me. Goodbye, Mrs. Lynch. '

1. are playing; "always" play; is kicking "now"; is running

2. are you doing; am leaving; (用进行时态表达将来时: go, come, leave, arrive
join, return, die, land, meet)

"别人用什么时态, 你就用什么时态" are you leaving

come

go (I go to bed hungry. 形容词做状语)

(rarely 很少) listen

"doesn't work" 停止工作, 已坏了, 不起作用了.

feel

I frequently go to bed hungry (背诵)

He went to school hungry. 饿着肚子上学.

You must come here hungry. 空腹来这里.

【Special Difficulties】 难点

What + a/an + a. + n. + 主语 + 谓语

What 对名词感叹

3. He is causing a lot of trouble

名词: trouble

主语: he

动词: is causing

What (a lot of) trouble (he is causing)!

【Multiple choice questions】 多项选择题

5. He doesn't get up early on Sundays. He gets up _____ .

a. late b. lately c. slowly d. hardly

5. "not early"

late (adj./adv.) lately (adv.) = recently (adv.) 最近的, 近来的.

how are you going lately? 最近一段时间身体还好吗?

A

8 He _____ out of the window and saw that it was raining.

a. looked b. saw c. remarked d. watched

8. A

look (vi.): 表示看的动作; 后面一定要加介词

see (vt.): 表示看的结果; 后面直接加宾语

watch: 表示观看; 后面直接加宾语, 但宾语一定是能够活动的东西

look at pictures (对) watch pictures (错)

11 Breakfast is the first _____ of the day.

a. food b. dinner c. lunch d. meal

11. D

lunch: 中餐 food: 食物

dinner: 正餐 一天中最丰盛的那顿饭, 可能是中餐, 也可能是晚餐, 但决不会是早餐.
meal : 一顿饭

频率副词,放在实义动词前, 非实义动词后;
如果即有实义动词又有非实义动词.要放在两个之间
疑问句中副词往往放在主语的后面

§ Lesson 3 Please Send Me a Card 请给我寄张明信片

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★send v. 寄, 送

寄信 : send a letter

用法 : send sth to sb/send sb sth

类似的用法还有 give,take,pass,read,sell...

send/take children to school

区别 : **take** : 强调某人亲自送; take flowers to his wife 自己送

send 则是通过第三人去送, 如美国的校车 send flowers to his wife 叫店里的人送

postcard n. 明信片

[注意]/t/和/k/前者失去爆破音

send him a card

简写为 card, 由此引申出 :

namecard/visiting card : 名片

Here is my namecard.(口语常用, 同时伴随着递出的动作)

ID card: 身份证; ID : 身分, 身份 (identification, identity)

credit card: 信用卡

cash card 现金卡, 储蓄卡, 工资卡(不能透支的那种)

★spoil(spoiled or spoilt) v. 使索然无味, 损坏(重点词)

几种破坏 :

break: 打破; break the windows 打破玻璃

damage: 破坏, 程度不一定很重

destroy : 破坏, 彻底摧毁

以上三个是指物理上的破坏, 而 **spoil** 主要指精神上

spoil: 把东西的质量变得不好; 生活中不顺心的事; 宠坏, 溺爱

1、宠坏 His parents spoiled the boy.

2、毁了某人心情.

This spoiled my day.

What you said spoiled me.

His arrival spoiled my holiday.

★museum n. 博物馆

Palace Museum: 故宫

★public adj. 公共的

这个词我们在第一课见过了，基本用法和 **private** 一起记。下面再说两点：
public house 简称 **pub**：酒吧；**public place** 公共场所
in public: 公开的；**in private**: 私下里的(介词短语在英语中往往充当状语)
Let's have a conversation in private. 让我们私下谈谈？
Why not have a conversation in public? 为什么不公开谈呢？(当面说呢？)

★**friendly** adj. 友好的

以 **-ly** 结尾是形容词，同样的还有 **lovely** adj.

friendly 单独用，形容词，一般做定语来用

作为状语表示这个人做什么事情很友好，用短语 **in a friendly way**

waiter n. 服务员，招待员

waiter(男服务员), **waitress**(女服务员)，只出现在餐馆里

领班：**chief waiter**

商店里的店员：**shop assistant**

其他公共场所的服务员：**attendant**

★**lend** v. 借给 **lend to / lend sth.to sb/ lend sb.sth.**

借进：**borrow**: **borrow from**; 但 **borrow** 不能用 **borrow sb sth.**

★**decision** n. 决定

v. **decide**

make a big/great decision (重大/伟大，更重大)

★**whole** adj. 整个的

all the...：**all the day** (the 可省略)

the whole..：**the whole day.**

all of 后面如果加代词，代词前面不需要修饰词

一旦要加名词，前面一定要加 **the**

all of us; **all of the students**

★**single** adj. 唯一的，单一的

反义词：**double** 双倍的

【Text】

Lesson 3 Please send me a card 请给我寄一张明信片

First listen and then answer the question. 听录音，然后回答以下问题。

How many cards did the writer send?

Postcards always spoil my holidays. Last summer, I went to Italy. I visited museums and sat in public gardens. A friendly waiter taught me a few words of Italian. Then he lent me a book. I read a few lines, but I did not understand a word. Everyday I thought about postcards. My holidays passed quickly, but I did not send cards to my friends. On the last day I made a big decision. I got up early and bought thirty-seven cards. I spent the whole day in my room, but I did not write a single card!

参考译文

明信片总搅得我假日不得安宁。去年夏天，我去了意大利。我参观了博物馆，还去了公园。一位好客的服务员教了我几句意大利语，之后还借给我一本书。我读了几行，但一个字也不懂。我每天都想着明信片的事。假期过得真快，可我还没有给我的朋友们寄过一张明信片。到了最后一天，我作出了一项重大决定。我早早起了床，买来了 37 张明信片。我在房间里关了整整一天。然而竟连一张明信片也没写成！

【课文讲解】

The baby spoiled my night.

Italian[ɪ'tæljən] 于 Italy['ɪtəli] : 注意读音不同

and 先后往往是对等的概念, but 也是如此

teach sb.sth.

He teaches our English.(错)

He teacher us English.(对)

语言不可数，所以要用 a little Italian 或 a few words of Italian

I can speak a little English/a few words of English

think about/of 考虑, 思考, think of 还可指想到

think over: 仔细考虑

last summer 里的 last 表示 “上一个”

last: 表示 “上一个” 或 “最后一个”, 表示 “最后一个” 时要加冠词 the

具体到一天及一天的早中晚都要用 on

I spend the whole day in my room.

spend+时间+地点 : 在什么地点我花费/度过了多少时间

I spend three hours in the sea.

I spend my weekend at my mother's.

I spend three hours in the classroom everyday.

I spend a lot of time in traffic jam.(交通堵塞)

Review 回顾 :

spoil

send/lend/teach sb.sth.

send/lend/teach sth. to sb

【Special Difficulties】 难点

双宾语 : 直接宾语(表示动作结果)和间接宾语(动作目标)

give sb.sth./give sth to sb

sb: 间接宾语

sth: 直接宾语

间接宾语在后面时, 其前必须加 to(对……而言)或 for(为……而做)

give a book to me. I buy a book for you

take flowers to my wife.

order soup for you.

可以翻译为 “给”、“替”、“为” 的, 就用 for; 如果只能翻译为 “给” 的, 就用 to

与 for 相连的 buy,order,make,find

find sth.for sb.

do sb.a favor 帮某人一个忙

Do me a favor please./Do a favor for me.帮我一个忙

Exercise

1.He paid some money to the shop-keeper.

3.The writer brought the man a bottle of beer.

在日常生活中，碰到熟人：Can I buy you a bottle of beer? 意为我请你喝杯酒的概念。

What do you think of?

What do you think of the weather today? 你觉得天气怎么样?

cold,chilly,freeze, I'll freeze.我要冻僵了

What do you think of TV program last night?

send somebody something

send something to somebody

give, take, pass, read, sell, buy

find something for somebody

make buy Do a favor for me.

Can I order something for you?

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题

4 _____ him a few words of Italian? The waiter.

a.Who taught b.Who did teach c.What did he teach d.Whom did he teach

找特殊疑问词的时候一定要根据答案来决定

who whom

人做主语提问——who 对宾语提问——whom

如果对主语提问，则句子的的语序和陈述句语序一样

如果对非主语来提问，则句子要使用特殊疑问词+一般疑问句的语序

A 正确 who 既可以对主语提问也可以对宾语提问，而 whom 只能对宾语提问

Who/Whom did the waiter teach a few words of Italian?

5 He was a friendly waiter. He spoke to the writer _____ .

a.friend b.as friends c.like friends d.in a friendly way

He spoke to the writer like a friend.

in...way :以...方式

D 正确

friendly 单独用，形容词，一般做定语来用

作为状语表示这个人做什么事情很友好，用短语 in a friendly way

7 He spent the whole day in his room. He was in his room _____ day.

a.the hole b.the all c.all d.all of

whole all the day; all of us

C 正确

all of 后面如果加代词，代词前面不需要修修饰词

一旦要加名词，前面一定要加 the

all of the friends all of my friends all of the students

10 On the last day he made a big decision. It was the _____ day of his holiday.

a.final b.end c.latest d.bottom

the last day, final——形容词 end——名词/动词
bottom——名词 形容词修饰 day
latest: 最新的 latest news latest style 新款

11 He made a big decision. He _____ .

a.thought about it b.made up his mind c.changed his mind d.made a wish

think about: 考虑、思考、想

make up one's mind: 下定决心

change one's mind: 改变主意

make a wish : 许个心愿, 愿望, 许愿

B 正确

【Key structures】 关键句型

Exercise B

My friend, Roy, _____ (die) last year. He _____ (leave) me his CD player and his collection of CDs. Roy _____ (spend) a lot of money on CDs. He _____ (buy) one or two new CDs every week. He never _____ (go) to the cinema or to the theatre. He _____ (stay) at home every evening and _____ (listen) to music. He often _____ (lend) CDs to his friends. Sometimes they _____ (keep) them. He _____ (lose) many CDs in this way.

died 有具体的过去时间一定是具体的过去式

一般现在时

bought kept lent...

§ Lesson 4 An exciting trip 激动人心的旅行

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★exciting adj. 令人兴奋的

excite: 激动

excited:

-ed: 自己感到 / -ing: 令人感到

exciting boy 令人兴奋的男孩

interesting man

The man is interesting.

The news exciting, I am excited

这类动词的宾语一定是人

The news excited me.

让后面的人感到...

interesting: 令人感到有趣的

interested: 感到有意思的

The book interests me. 那本书让我感到很有趣

★receive v. 接受, 收到

accept : 同意接收

receive: 客观的收到

This morning I received a bunch of flowers from a boy, but I didn't accept it.

take 也可以作收到 take the exam : 接收考试; take advice 接收建议

receive/have

receive/have a letter from somebody.

★firm n. 商行, 公司

company

★different adj. 不同的

★centre n. 中心

★abroad adv. 在国外

副词, 直接和动词连用

go abroad 去国外

live abroad 国外定居

study abroad 国外学习

【Text】

Lesson 4 An exciting trip 激动人心的旅行

First listen and then answer the question. 听录音, 然后回答以下问题.

Why is Tim finding this trip exciting?

I have just received a letter from my brother, Tim. He is in Australia. He has been there for six months. Tim is an engineer. He is working for a big firm and he has already visited a great number of different places in Australia. He has just bought an Australian car and has gone to Alice Springs, a small town in the centre of Australia. He will soon visit Darwin. From there, he will fly to Perth. My brother has never been abroad before, so he is finding this trip very exciting.

参考译文

我刚刚收到弟弟蒂姆的来信, 他正在澳大利亚. 他在那儿已经住了 6 个月了. 蒂姆是个工程师, 正在一家大公司工作, 并且已经去过澳大利亚的不少地方了. 他刚买了一辆澳大利亚小汽车, 现在去了澳大利亚中部的小镇艾利斯斯普林斯. 他不久还将到达达尔文去, 从那里, 他再飞往珀斯. 我弟弟以前从未出过国, 因此, 他觉得这次旅行非常激动人心.

【课文讲解】

读音语调要顿挫一些

received a letter from just 和完成时连用

months one month[mʌnθ] two months[twʌnθs] 注意读音 将/θ/省略

I've arrived in Beijing. (has been) arrive 是瞬间动词不能和段时间连用

He has been in Beijing for one year.

has been + in 地点

He has been in America for two years.

连读

work for work in 强调地点 work for 强调 work

I am working for a school.

I am working in the New Oriental school.

a great number of 类似于, 约等于 a lot of

a great number of 后面一定要加可数名词复数

a lot of 可加可数名词也可加不可数名词

I have a lot of friends

I have a great number of friends.

has gone to : 去了某地没回来

has been to : 曾经去过某地, 现在不在那个地方

Have you been to Paris?

soon: 很快(时间)

from there: 从那地方起

from 即可以加时间又可以加地点

from half past 8 to half past 11

from Beijing to Tianjing

fly to Perth: go to Perth by air

before——副词, 在此之前 现在完成时态的标志

find trip exciting

find + 宾语 + 形容词做宾补 find the room clean

find her happy

is finding I'm finding... We're finding... 在口语中经常使用

《语法精粹》P4

下面表示状态、感觉、情绪、精神活动的动词不可用于进行时

believe; doubt see hear know understand belong think

consider feel look seem show mind have sound taste

require possess care like hate love detest desire

arrive 不能和断时间连用

用进行时态表示将来时态的 : go, come, leave, arrive

第3课关键句型 : 一般过去式 第4课关键句型 : 现在完成式

第5课 : 一般过去式和现在完成式的相同点, 不同点, 用的时候要注意什么

下面几个词一出现就标志着完成式 : just before already

receive take(拿 带, 一般不作收到用)

他到某地有多久了.

He has been... ..

I have been here for three years.

find: 发现, 找到

find the book dirty

find+n.+a.(宾补)

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题

3 Tim is in Australia. He went _____ Australia six months ago.

a.to b.in c.at d.into

at...表示位置 be at...(典型表示位置的介词短语)

go to...只要有 to 这个感念, 它的后面一定要有宾语, go to the theater

go in...(in 做副词)很少加宾语 He went in.

go into...有去向的动作, 还有进入的动作 go into the room
move: 搬家
move in: 搬进来
move to the new house: 正在搬
move into : 搬进去了

4 Tim is in Australia. How long _____ there?
a.is he b.has he been c.has he d.was he
how long...对段时间提问, 跟现在完成时相连
have+动词的过去分词

§ Lesson 5 No wrong numbers 无错号之虞

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★pigeon n. 鸽子

It's not my pigeon. 这不是我的过错=None of my business.

★message n. 信息

information...不可数

leave sb. a message: 给...留便条

I'll leave you a message.

take a message for sb: 替...捎口信

Can I take a message for you? 你能替我捎个口信吗?

Can you take a message for me?

打电话 :

Hello!--→May I have a word with Tom ?/May I speak with/to Tom?--→Can you take a message for me?

★cover v. 越过

cover: 覆盖

cover+距离 : 越过 cover the distance

★distance n. 距离 distant: (a)远距离的

importance: (n.)重要 important: (a.)重要的

difference : (n.)不同 different: (a.) 不同的

keep distance: 保持距离

Can I share this table?

Can I join you?

★request n. 要求, 请求

request for: 对...有请求, 有需求

I have a request for the cake.

request sb.to do sth...要求某人做..=ask sb.to do sth.

require sb.to do sth.

you are required/asked to do...对人要求习惯用被动语态

★spare part 备件

★service n. 业务, 服务

serve: (v.) 服务, 接待

service: (n.) 服务, 业务

at your service-→glad to be at your service-→I am glad to be at your service. 我很乐意为您效劳.

——Thank you.

——You are welcome.(下次又需要再来找我)/Not at all.(根本完全不用谢)/That's (all)right.(绝对正确, 绝对过时)/(It's) My pleasure.(我很高兴这么做, 把自己放得很低, 把对方抬得很高)/That's ok.(类似于 That's (all)right.)

——Thank you for your listening.在讲课, 演讲结束时说, 即感谢大家的合作的概念
应以鼓掌回应.

情急之下, 可通用以下 :

—No thanks.

—No sorry.

【Text】

Lesson 5 No wrong numbers 无错号之虞

First listen and then answer the question.听录音, 然后回答以下问题.

What does 'No wrong numbers' mean?

Mr. James Scott has a garage in Silbury and now he has just bought another garage in Pinhurst. Pinhurst is only five miles from Silbury, but Mr. Scott cannot get a telephone for his new garage, so he has just bought twelve pigeons. Yesterday, a pigeon carried the first message from Pinhurst to Silbury. The bird covered the distance in three minutes. Up to now, Mr. Scott has sent a great many requests for spare parts and other urgent messages from one garage to the other. In this way, he has begun his own private 'telephone' service.

参考译文

詹姆斯.斯科特先生在锡尔伯里有一个汽车修理部, 现在他刚在平赫斯特买了另一个汽车修理部. 平赫斯特离锡尔伯里只有 5 英里, 但詹姆斯.斯科特先生未能为他新的汽车修理部搞到一部电话机, 所以他买了只鸽子. 昨天, 一只鸽子把第一封信从平赫斯特带到锡尔伯里. 这只鸟只用了 3 分钟就飞完了全程. 到目前为止, 斯科特先生从一个汽车修理部向另一个发送了大量索取备件的信件和其他紧急函件. 就这样, 他开始自己的私人“电话”业务.

【课文讲解】

garage['gæɪrɑ:ʒ, -rɪdʒ; (US) gə'reɪʒ]: 车库, 车行, 两种读音要注意

another: 其它的很多个中的一个

other: 其它的

the other:

Pinhurst is five miles (away) from Silbury.

Bus stop is only one mile from school/here.

Bus stop is only one mile (away).

--How far...? 多远

How far(away) is the bus stop?

How far is your home(from here)?

My home is ten miles away from here.

get a telephone: 得到电话, 安装电话

for: 为了

just...完成时态

from...to...: 从一个地点的另外一个地点

英语中能使文章生辉的一个是动词一个是介词

carry: 带着, 携带 其强调所携带的东西不会着地, 体会下例:

I take my sister to the cinema.

I carried my son.

I carry the bag.

cover the distance: 飞过那段距离

up to now: 到现在为止(现在完成时)

request for: 对...的需求

a great many: 许多(+可数名词复数)

a great number of: 许多(+可数名词复数)

...request and ...message(并列)

other: 其它的

urgent(adj): 紧急的 sth.urgent: 紧急的事情

another: 其它中的一个(+单数名词)

the other: 两个之中的另外一个 one...the other

other: (a.)+n. 其它的 (可+单/复数名词)

others=>other + 名词复数(不用再加名词)

Some boys are playing football.and others are rowing/(going boating).

One is watering the flowers,and the other is reading.

Can you show me another?

【Special Difficulties】 难点

in this way: 这样,以这种方式

in a friendly way

in a way: 从某种意义上来说: In a way,you are kind.

in the way: 挡路: Sorry,you are in the way.(在口语中很少用,一般用 Excuse me)

out of the way: 让路: Get out of the way!.你给我滚出去!

by the way: 随便说一声, 随便问一下(开头——转移话题, 随意)

on the way(to): 在去...的途中(陈述句): on the way to school/the office,on the way home.

另: in the family way: 怀孕了, 快有小孩了(have a baby)

The woman is in the family way.

Exercise

1 _____ from Athens to London, the plane stopped at Rome.

2 I cooked this _____ you showed me.

3 _____, where is my coat?

4 Yes, _____ he has been very successful.

5 Children get _____ during the holidays.

(1) ...On the way...

Athens: 雅典 London: 伦敦

(2)...in the way

这种方式

I do...in the way you showed me.

I fly the kite in the way you showed me.

(3)...By the way...

(4)...in a way...

从某种意义上来说

(5).....

get one's own way: 随心所欲 (at one's pleasure)

关于系动词：一般来说，如 be become 一定不单独使用，往往要在后面加上表语，我们称它为系动词。

但另外还有一些系动词同时又是不及物的实义动词，常见的有：seem look appear sound taste feel smell stay remain keep grow turn go run get prove stand 等，这些词有的语法书上称为半联系动词。

A little 修饰不可数名词; a few 修饰可数名词

soon: 不久以后，强调的是时间上的快

He will soon visit Darwin. He will visit Darwin _____,

(a) quickly (b) for a short time (c) shortly (d) in a hurry

He went quickly .quickly 指的是动作上的快

for a short time: 不久，表示动作延续一段时间

soon: 不久以后，表示在这段时间之后

shortly=soon. 不久以后

in a hurry: 匆忙的指的是动作

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题

4 Mr. Scott cannot get a telephone for his garage. _____ he has just bought twelve pigeons.

a. That's so b. That's why c. Because d. For

so 表示前面是原因，后面是结果

That's why : 那就是为什么，前者是原因

That's why+从句：那就是.....原因，前者是原因，后者 why 后面是结果

I was caught in the traffic jam. That's why I was late.

be 动词后面是表语，后面的从句是表语从句

That's 后面的表语从句常常用特殊疑问词引导，再加一个句子

That's when we can start class.

That's where we will have a meeting.

That's how I get to school.

8 Mr. Scott has a garage in Silbury. His _____ garage is in Pinhurst.

a. another b. other c. else d. different

(8).....one...the other...

another: 另外一个

another=an+other

an/a 是冠词

his/my/your 是形容词性物主代词

my mother's 是名词所有格

在语法上, 以上三个词是不能同时并存的, 一般要用只能用其中一个

a bag/my bag

his, 形容词物主代词, another=an+other

another 强调的是剩下的还有好几个当中的一个, 强调的是有三个以上

other: 其它的, 加单数就表示一个, his 取代 the 的位置

语法的范围正在放宽松, his another 也对, 但不太好

else: 其他的

1、疑问代词, who else, what else can I do for you?

2、anyone else, anything else? 不定代词

else 会放在被修饰词的后面, 会修饰两种词, 疑问词和不定代词

different: 不同的

【时态填空】

1 What _____ you _____ (buy) yesterday?

2 Up till now, he never _____ (lend) me anything.

3 _____ you (burn) those old papers yet?

4 He _____ (fight) in Flanders in the First World War.

5 They already _____ (leave).

6 When _____ you _____ (lose) your umbrella?

7 _____ you _____ (listen) to the concert last night?

8 We just _____ (win) the match.

1...did...

yesterday, 一般过去时

2...has never lent..

up till now/up to now, 现在完成时

never 属于频率副词, 频率副词一定会放在实义动词之前, 非实义动词之后

3....have you burned...

burn: 燃烧, yet, 现在完成时的标志

4.....fought...(fight 的过去分词)

in the first World War, in+ 具体的过去年代是具体的过去时间, 一般过去时

5...have already left...

already: 已经

6...did you lose...

When, 对时间点提问

要不然和将来时连用, When will you do sth?

如果确定不和将来时连用, 一般情况 When 的出现意味着一般过去时

现在完成时会用 How long 定位

7...Did you listen...

last night, 一般过去时

8...have just won...

just

动词的时态的第一种概念: 根据这句话本身找关键词

完形填空一句话的出的结论不一定是正确的, 往往要根据上下文的时间得出时态

§ Lesson 6 Percy Buttons 珀西·巴顿斯

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★beggar n. 乞丐

beg v. 乞求

I beg your pardon?

ask for : 请求得到

beg for : 乞求得到

★food n. 食物 不可数

a lot of food

★pocket n. 衣服口袋

inner pocket: 内口袋

jacket pocket : 夹克的口袋

coat pocket : 大衣口袋

pocket book: 袖珍书

pocket dictionary: 袖珍词典

pocket money : (小孩)零花钱

change: 零钱

get exact change : 准备好正确的零花钱

beer money: (男孩)零花钱

pocket pick: 车上的小偷

★call v. 拜访, 光顾

visit

call sb: 给某人打电话

call up sb: 给某人打电话

call back: 回某人电话

Can you take a message for me?

Can you tell him to call back?

call on sb 拜访某人

call at, at 一般和地点相连

call at+地点=visit someplace 拜访某地

I will call on you.

I will call at your home.

call out =shout, 大声喊

call in sb: 招集和邀请某人

For the project, the government called in a lot of experts.

【Text】

Lesson 6 Percy Buttons 珀西·巴顿斯

First listen and then answer the question. 听录音, 然后回答以下问题.

Who is Percy Buttons?

I have just moved to a house in Bridge Street. Yesterday a beggar knocked at my door. He asked me for a meal and a glass of beer. In return for this, the beggar stood on his head and sang songs. I gave him a meal. He ate the food and drank the beer. Then he put a piece of cheese in his pocket and went away. Later a neighbour told me about him. Everybody knows him. His name is Percy Buttons. He calls at every house in the street once a month and always asks for a meal and a glass of beer.

参考译文

我刚刚搬进了大桥街的一所房子。昨天一个乞丐来敲我的门，问我要一顿饭和一杯啤酒。作为回报，那乞丐头顶地倒立起来，嘴里还唱着歌。我给了他一顿饭。他把食物吃完，又喝了酒。然后把一块乳酪装进衣袋里走了。后来，一位邻居告诉了我他的情况。大家都认识他，他叫珀西·巴顿斯。他每月对这条街上的每户人家光顾一次，总是请求给他一顿饭和一杯啤酒。

【课文讲解】

move to : 搬到

knock at: 敲

knock at the door

knock at the window

beer[bɪə(r)]; bear[bɛə] 注意读音

ask sb for sth: 问某人要什么东西; request for

for; 为了这个目的去请求某人, sb 更多的时候不出现, ask for sth

The boy asked (his parents 省略)for money again/once more.

in return for this : 作为对什么的回报

in return: 作为回报

He doesn't want anything in return. 他不想得到任何回报

hospitality: 热情

I'll buy a present for him in return for hospitality.

this 在代词当中常常指代上文的一件事情

stood on his head : 倒立

stand on one's hands: 用手着地(hand 单数就是一只手, 双手复数)

跪着, 膝盖 : knees : stand on one's knees

躺着, 躺 : lie : lie in bed

lie on one's back: 仰面躺着

lie on one's side: 侧躺

lie on one's stomach : 趴着

give him a meal

go away

later : 后来

tell sb about sth, about: 关于, 通过其他事自己得出结论, tell you about him

tell sb sth: 告诉某人某件事(把事情直接告诉), tell you the news

tell you the word

tell you about the word

everybody 作为主语一定作单数看待, 属于不定代词

所有的不定代词作为主语一律为单数看待：somebody anybody everything 等

calls at every house

in the street 英国写/on the street 美国写

once a month: 一个月一次, 单位表达方式

a. 表示每月一次, 计量单位 “/”

five kilometers an hour

ask for, 是 ask sb for sth 的省略

Percy Buttons? a beggar

He calls at every house in the street once a month and asks for a meal and a glass of beer

【Key structures】 关键句型

a, the 和 some

a: 单数, 可数名词

the: 可加单数/复数, 还可加不可数名词, 加在什么名词前面都对

some: 只能加在不可数名词的前面或可数名词复数的前面

a 和 the 的区别

a 是泛指, a man; 特指, the man

在文章当中第一次出现名词的时候往往用 a 和 an 修饰, 第二次出现的时候用 the

在表示一种笼统概念的陈述句中可以省略 a 和 some

Yesterday I bought a book, Books are not very expensive.

笼统概念：某某一类/一种东西

I have just drunk a glass of milk, Milk is very refreshing.

I ate an apple./Apples are delicious.

I like oranges. Would you like some oranges?

Mrs. Jones bought a bag of flour, a bag of sugar, and some tea.

She always buys flour, sugar and tea at the grocer's

a 和 the

A man is walking towards me. The man is carrying a parcel. The parcel is full of meat.

Names

We cannot put a or the in front of names

表示某某一类人当中, 具有这种特征当中的一个, a Mr. Zhang

【Special Difficulties】 难点

某些动词的后面加上介词或副词以后就会改变词义, 这种新的组合称作短语动词

put: 放, put on

take: 拿走, take off

look: 看, look at: 看, look for: 寻找, look after: 照顾, look out: 当心

call : call at, call on, call in, call back, call for (a. 去取某物, 去接某人 b. 需要 : The problem calls for immediate action 这个问题需要立即采取行动)

knock : knock at: 敲, knock off, knock over, knock out

knock off: 下班, He knocked off earlier.

knock sth off+地点, knock the vase off the table

knock off: 打折, knock 10% off the price.

knock over,A car knocked the boy over.

如果有地点, off; 无地点, over,I knocked the boy off the bicycle.

Exercises A

- 1 He did not know how to fight, but he knocked the boxer _____ .
- 2 This flowerpot is broken, Who knocked it _____ ?
- 3 I knocked _____ early yesterday and went to a football match.
- 4 Listen! Someone is knocking _____ the window!

1...out...

knock out :打晕, boxer:拳击手

在拳击场合中, 把人打倒在地叫 knock out(专用术语)

2...over...

无地点

3...off...

4...at...

Exercises B

- 1 The old lady hit the thief over the head with a candlestick and now he is unconscious.
- 2 At what time do you finish work every day?
- 3 The shopkeeper reduced the price of all his goods by 20%.

1 knock out 2 knock off 3 knock 10% off the price of all the goods

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题

5 A neighbour told me about him. He _____ Percy Buttons was a beggar.

a.told b.said me c.told to me d.said

5...D...

say 说/tell 告诉

He says + 句子; He says+that+句子; say to sb.

tell sb.+句子 : tell sb.+that+句子

He said to me/he told me

Percy Buttons 作为从句的主语

一个简单句只有一个主语一个动词

He told me Percy Buttons was a Beggar.

6 Everybody knows him _____ know him.

a.They all b.Each c.Every d.All they

they all(对)/all they(错)

all of us/all of them

我们所有人 all of us,we all

each/every 每一个

each:强调个体; every 强调整体

every adj.+n. 每一个(书, 本, 人等)

each adj.&pron.:each adj.+n; each pron.直接作主语或者宾语

every person likes...

each person likes.../each likes...

every 不能做主语; each 强调个体, 使用第三人称单数

7 _____ does he call? Once a month.

a.How seldom b.How long c.How soon d.How often

once a month: 每月一次, 属于频率

对频率提问 : how often

提问多久 : how long

提问次数 : how many times

How many times do you visit your mother each month?

How long do you visit your mother? 对时间提问

How often do you visit your mother? 对时间和次数提问

How soon 多久以后

How soon will you finish your homework?

8 A beggar is a person who _____ .

a.asks for money but doesn't work b.asks for food

c.works hard d.is out of work

out of work 失业

I am out of work,/I lose my job.

10 She gave him a piece of cheese. He put the _____ of cheese in his pocket.

a.bit b.bar c.block d.packet

10...A...

piece of: a piece of cheese 一块奶酪

bit : a bit of /a piece of 在英文中经常互用

bar: a bar of chocolate---一块巧克力

bar 门闩 : 长条状 : a bar of chocolate; a bar of soap

block 块, 一大块: block v.堵塞; block n.房子

packet: 一包

a piece of.../a bit of...

12 All the houses in our _____ are the same age and size.

a.street b.way c.road d.route

12...A...

same age and size 同年代同样式

street 两边有房子的街道, 强调城市里的街道

way, on the way,in the way 挡住某人的路(强调方向)

road 路的通称 : road home 通往家的路 (张艺谋的影片《我的父亲母亲》的英文名)

route 路线

【语法精粹】

1.How can you____b____if you are not ____?

A.listening/hearing

B.hear/listening

C.be listening/hear

D.be hearing/listening to

listen 听/hear 听见

如果你不听, 怎么可能听见呢?

be 不能加动词原形; be+ -ed/-ing

can+动词原形

2.The girl even won't have her lunch before she__D__her homework.

A.will finish

B.is finishing

C.had finished

D.finishes

won't=will not

状语从句中, 用一般现在时取代将来时.

3.Those who have applied for the post__A__in the office.(此题超前)

A.are being interviewed B.are interviewing

C.interviewing (光动词+ing 不能构成谓语) D.to be interviewing (不定式不能构成谓语动词)

apply for 申请

who 在名词后面, 引导定语从句

interview 面试

从句(have applied for)现在完成时, 主句缺少谓语动词

A.are being interviewed 被动

B.are interviewing 主动

在英文中, 只能领导对员工面试, 员工只能被面试

4.The old scientist __C__to do more for the country.

A.is wishing B.has been wishing. C.wishes

D.has been wished 从语法上说合理, 但不合情

scientist 科学家; wish 希望

表示状态、感觉、情绪、精神活动的动词不可用于进行时态.

wish sb.to do

5.If he__B__,don't wake him up.

A.still sleeps B.is still sleeping C.still had been sleeping D.will be sleeping still

if——一般用一般现在式

如果他在睡觉的话, 不要吵醒他

关于时态的把握 : 1.关键词 2.上下文 3.潜在含义

now 现在进行时

often,always 一般现在时

just,already 现在完成时

last week,last summer...一般过去时

§ Lesson 7 Too late 为时太晚

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★detective n. 侦探

detective story 侦探小说

★airport n. 机场

★airfield n. 飞机起落的场地

port 港口; airport 航空港

field 田野; airfield 停机坪

at the airport

on the airfield

★expect v. 期待, 等待

except (prep)除……之外

expect/ik'spekt/ v. 期待, 等待

I think so.

I expect so.我希望如此 [口语]

expect sb.to do sth.期待某人做某事

expect sth.及物动词: I expect your letter.

I expect you to write back.

wait for sth./wait for sb.不及物动词

expect: 心理上的等待

wait for: 动作上的等待

I wait for my mother.

I expect my mother to come back.

★valuable adj. 贵重的

★precious adj. 珍贵的

value n.v ---valuable adj.有价值的

sth.is valuable/sth.is precious

precious 带有感情色彩的

precious photo 珍贵的照片

price 价格; priceless adj.-less 表否定; 没有价格的, 无价的

valueless adj. 没有价值, 不足道的

worth 值: worthless adj. 无价值的

★parcel n. 包裹

★diamond n. 钻石

precious stone 宝石

crystal 水晶; jade 玉

diamond ring 钻石戒指

★steal v. 偷

steal, stole, stolen

steal sth. 偷(某物)

rob sb. 抢(某人)

My wallet was stolen.

I was robbed.

rob the bank 与地点相连的偷抢都用 rob+地点

★main adj. 主要的

main building; main street

main sentence; main idea

但不能与人连用

★guard n. 警戒, 守卫

life guard 救生员/body guard 保镖

★stone n. 石子

★sand n. 沙子

本课重点：过去进行时，一般过去时

一般过去时与现在完成时

共同点：动作在过去都做过了。

区别：过去式只能强调过去的事，和现在没有任何关系。

I ate a piece of bread.

现在完成时，过去的事情对现在产生的影响。

I have eaten a piece of bread this morning. I'm not hungry.

The clock stopped. 陈述事实

The clock has stopped. 过去的事实对现在造成影响

It snowed yesterday.

It has snowed yesterday. 强调对现在造成影响

【Text】

Lesson 7 Too late 为时太晚

First listen and then answer the question. 听录音，然后回答以下问题。

Did the detectives save the diamonds?

The plane was late and detectives were waiting at the airport all morning. They were expecting a valuable parcel of diamonds from South Africa. A few hours earlier, someone had told the police that thieves would try to steal the diamonds. When the plane arrived, some of the detectives were waiting inside the main building while others were waiting on the airfield. Two men took the parcel off the plane and carried it into the Customs House. While two detectives were keeping guard at the door, two others opened the parcel. To their surprise, the precious parcel was full of stones and sand!

参考译文

飞机误点了，侦探们在机场等了整整一上午。他们正期待从南非来的一个装着钻石的贵重包裹。数小时以前，有人向警方报告，说有人企图偷走这些钻石。当飞机到达时，一些侦探等候在主楼内，另一些侦探则守候在停机坪上。有两个人把包裹拿下飞机，进了海关。这时两个侦探把住门口，另外两个侦探打开了包裹。令他们吃惊的是，那珍贵的包裹里面装的全是石头和沙子！

【课文讲解】

all morning=all the morning

The plane was late 飞机晚(点)了

The bus was late./The train was late.

detectives 没有强调一些侦探或者那些侦探, 强调侦探这种人

笼统感念, 可不加 some,the

...were waiting... 故事背景, 用进行时态

They were expecting...期待着心理上的等

They were waiting for...

a valuable parcel of diamonds

a cup of tea 强调的是茶

South Africa 南非

a few hours earlier 几个小时以前

a few hours before/a few hours ago

someone had told...过去完成时, 过去以前发生的事情

...that thieves would try to...

would+do 过去将来时,间接方式, 转述, 站在过去看未来

that 从句.典型的宾语从句, 起转述作用

steal sth.

one...the other.../some...others...

others=other+名词复数

...the plane arrived,...were waiting inside the main building

while others were waiting on...

when; while 当.....时候

while 能用 when 代替; 但是 when 却不一定能用 while 代替.

while+从句, 动作一定会延续

when+延续性动词/瞬间动词; when he arrived

when he died

when,while 强调动作同时发生

过去进行时 :

在过去的某一点时间, 或者是过去某一动作同时发生的另外一个动作

瞬间动词(arrive)无进行时态

I am arriving 进行时态表示将要

When he arrived,I was having dinner.

同时发生的两个动作, 均用过去进行时

When I was doing my homework,my mother was cooking.

When my mother was doing the housework,my father was watching TV.

同时发生的两个动作

1. 一个用一般过去时, 另一个用过去进行时

2. 分工的情况, 均用过去进行时

When the plane arrived,...were waiting inside the main building

while others were waiting on...

Two men took the parcel off...

take sth.off...=take sth.away from...

and carried it into...carried 表示看得很重

Customs House 海关

While...

...were keeping guard at the door,two others opened the parcel.

表面上是分工, 两个动作同时发生, 不是同时开始同时结束, 延续时间不一致, 长一点时间的动作作用进行时态, 短时间的动作作用过去时.

When someone knocked at the door,I was having dinner.

keep guard 守卫; at the door 在门边(固定搭配)

two others=two other detectives

To their surprise

to one's surprise,让某人惊讶的是

To my surprise,the teacher was late.

To one's +表达人情绪的名词

to one's joy

To my joy, my mother came here yesterday.

to one's excitement

To our excitement,our team wins.

be full of ...装满

My bag was full of books.

The cup is full of water.

总结

a few hours ealier 几个小时以前

two others

to one's surprise,...

be full of 装满

重点 : 过去动作同时发生的时态

1.过去两个动作同时发生, 习惯上一个用一般过去时, 另一个用过去进行时;
; 动作长用过去进行时, 动作短用一般过去时; 分工的情况, 动作的开始时间和
结束时间几乎相同, 均用过去进行时;

I was listening to the radio,my sister was dancing.

2.两个动作在同时段进行, 在不同时间结束, 先发生的动作未结束, 另一个动作
发生, 先发生的动作作用进行时态, 另一个动作作用过去时.

When the telephone rang,I was opening the door.先开门

When the telephone was ringing, I opened the door. 电话先响

3.瞬间动词没有进行时态, 所以两个动作同时发生, 延续性动词用进行时态, 瞬间
动词使用过去时态.

【Special Difficulties】 难点

Do you remember these sentences?

come and look at...

I am looking for...

v. +prep. +宾语

Now read these sentences

v. +prep./adv.代表不同的意思

look at 看; look after 照料

v. + prep./adv. + 宾语(n.)

v. + 宾语(n./pron.) + prep./adv.

take off the coat.....take the coat off/take it off

coat n.作宾语

put on your shoes/put your shoes on/put them on

宾语的位置和词性取决于施加动作的动词

介词出现, 一定要有宾语, 所以 v. + prep. + 宾语(n.)

副词可省略.v. + 宾语(n./pron.) + adv. 或 v. + adv. + 宾语(n.)

at, after prep; off adv.

vt. + 宾语(及物)

vi. + prep. + 宾语(不及物)

take vt./look vi.

I always take money with me.我身上总带些钱

Exercise

put the book on the desk--> put vt.

put out...-->out adv.

He is looking for his pen.....for prep.

- 1 He gave away all his books.
 - 2 She woke up the children early this morning.
 - 3 He is looking for his umbrella.
 - 4 They cut off the king's head.
 - 5 Put on your hat and coat.
 - 6 Give it back to your brother.
 - 7 Help me to lift up this table.
 - 8 Take off your shoes and put on your slippers.
 - 9 He is looking at the picture.
 - 10 Send her away or she will cause trouble.
 - 11 They have pulled down the old building.
 - 12 Make up your mind.
 - 13 He asked for permission to leave.
- She threw away all those old newspapers.

1.give away...-->give(vt.)-->give...away

2.woke up...-->wake sb.(vt.);up(adv.)-->wake...up...

wake me up.叫醒我; 代词做宾语, 放在动词与副词之间

3.look for...-->look(vi.)

4.cut off...-->cut(vt.);cut oneself;cut hair

5.put on...-->put...on...

6.give it back...-->it(pron.)

7.lift up...-->up(adv.)可省略; lift(up)sth; lift sth.up

8.take off...; put on...-->take (vt.)put(vt.)

9.look at...-->look(vi.)

10.send her away...-->her(pron.)

11.pull down...-->pull(vt.);down(adv.)

pull one's leg 开玩笑

You are pulling my leg.你开我玩笑

12.make up...--->make(vt.)up one's mind 习惯用法不换,语法上可换

13.ask for...-->ask(sb.)for sth. 其实是省略 sb.故不可换

14.throw away...-->throw(vt.)...away...

宾语的位置和词性取决于施加动作的动词

vt.+adv.+宾语(n.)

vt.+宾语(n./pron.)+adv.

vi+prep.+宾语(n.)

look at her;at (prep)

put him off;off(adv)

词组当中的练习, 短语 be interested in 不能用 at on 等代替

如果不能接收, 就记住——放弃

如果已经说过, 还没有明白, 就要执著弄懂

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题

5 Someone had told the police that thieves would try to steal the diamonds. This happened _____ the plane arrived.

a.before b.after c.when d.as soon as

5.had done.——两个动作先后发生(一个动作结束, 另一个动作才发生)用过去完成时

before: 在……之前 as soon as: 一……就

8 The detectives were _____ a valuable parcel of diamonds.

a.expecting b.waiting c.expecting for d.expecting to

8.expect, wait

I expect so. I expect your letter. expect somebody to do

wait for

expect somebody to expecting

9 The parcel was valuable. It was _____ .

a.worth b.worthy c.precious d.value

9.valuable.....precious value: 名词

worth 后面一定要加动词 something is worth...

The book is worth reading.(动名词)

The book is worth three dollars.

Worthy adj n.....be worthy of(固定搭配)

This book is worthy of being read [to be read].

这本书值得一读.

acts worthy of punishment

应该受处分的行为

Worthless adj.....something is worthless(后面不加任何东西)

10 The thieves wanted to _____ the diamonds.

a.rob b.steal c.take from d.take to
10.加 something 做宾语的一定是 steal

【Key structures】 关键句型

Exercises D

- 1 As my father _____ (leave) the house, the postman _____ (arrive).
- 2 Tom _____ (work) in the garden while I _____ (sit) in the sun.
- 3 As I _____ (walk) down the street, I _____ (meet) Charlie.
- 4 While he _____ (read) the letter, he _____ (hear) a knock at the door.
- 5 While mother _____ (prepare) lunch, Janet _____ (set) the table.
- 6 She _____ (drop) the tray when I _____ (speak) to her.

- 1.As: 正当 将要走 be doing was leaving ...arrived(两个瞬间动词同时发生可能性很小, 应具体分析, 故用进行时态表将来)
- 2.was working...was sitting
- 3.was working...met
- 4.was reading...heard : hear 是不用进行时态的
- 5.set the table 摆桌子 was preparing...set
- 6.dropped...was speaking

§ Lesson 8 The best and the worst 最好的和最差的

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★competition n. 比赛, 竞赛

race : car race

match : football match

contest : baby contest 更广泛

beauty contest 选美

暗地里的竞争—competition

game : 游戏, 运动

★neat adj. 整齐的, 整洁的

neat=tidy adj / v tidy (up) the room 整理房间

★path n. 小路, 小径 亦作 pathway

★wooden adj. 木头的

★pool n. 水池(人工的)

swimming pool 游泳池

pond 天然的 《golden pond》—金色池塘

good bad 比较级—than

最高级—of all

He is the tallest of all. He is the tallest in the room.

the+ -est

more interesting the most interesting

1、三个或者是三个音节以上——多音节

比较级的构成：more+原级 最高级的构成：the most+原级

2、单音节的词用 er

3、双音节 以 y 结尾的双音节词去 y 后 +ier(大多数情况)

clever cleverer more clever

slowly more slowly

often more often

fun: 快乐 more fun 美国人用

无规律：good well(better best) bad badly(worse worst) many much(more most) little(less least) far (farther further, farthest furthest) old(older elder, oldest eldest)

farther: 距离上的远和更远 further: 程度 further more(更有甚者)

older: 比...大 elder: 做定语修饰其他名词 elder sister (年长的)姐姐

She is older than somebody

【Text】

Lesson 8 The best and the worst 最好的和最差的

First listen and then answer the question. 听录音，然后回答以下问题。

Why is Joe's garden the most beautiful one in the town?

Joe Sanders has the most beautiful garden in our town. Nearly everybody enters for 'The Nicest Garden Competition' each year, but Joe wins every time. Bill Frith's garden is larger than Joe's. Bill works harder than Joe and grows more flowers and vegetables, but Joe's garden is more interesting. He has made neat paths and has built a wooden bridge over a pool. I like gardens too, but I do not like hard work. Every year I enter for the garden competition too, and I always win a little prize for the worst garden in the town!

参考译文

乔·桑德斯拥有我们镇上最漂亮的花园。几乎每个人都参加每年举办的“最佳花园竞赛”，而每次都是乔获胜。比尔·弗里斯的花园比乔的花园大，他比乔也更为勤奋，种植的花卉和蔬菜也更多，但乔的花园更富有情趣。他修筑了一条条整洁的小路，并在一个池塘上架了一座小木桥。我也喜欢花园，但我却不愿意辛勤劳动。每年的花园竞赛我也参加，但总因是镇上最劣的花园而获得一个小奖！

【课文讲解】

Joe Bill the writer

the most beautiful the largest the worst

Joe's garden is the most beautiful.

Bill's garden is the largest.

The writer's is the worst.

比较的东西都是同类的事物 joe's 的 "s" 不能省略

Bill's garden is larger than Joe's.

enter for: 报名参加，强调报名 take part in 真正的参加

enter for the exam

win: 赢 won--won I win. I lose(输了)

win something I win the book. I win the gold cup

win 后面往往是奖品

win a prize: 赢得了一个奖
win a prize for: 因为...而获奖
win 不能接对手
defeat+对手 I defeat you.

【Key structures】 关键句型

最高级的标志 : of in
in+地点 of+范围

Exercises D (用 of 或 in 填空)

- 1 Which is the longest river _____ the world?
- 2 This is the finest picture _____ them all.
- 3 This stereo is the most expensive _____ all the ones in the shop.
- 4 He is the best boxer _____ our town.

1.in 2.of 3.of 4.in

【Special Difficulties】 难点

Everyone knows him

Exercises A

- 1 Everybody (believe) (believes) he will win.
- 2 I heard a noise and went downstairs. I found that everything (were) (was) in order.
- 3 Everyone (try) (tries) to earn more and work less.

1.believes 2.was 3.tries

Exercises B(必要时填上 for)

- 1 He is very ill. No one is allowed to enter _____ his room.
- 2 Will you enter _____ this week's crossword competition?
- 3 Many athletes have entered _____ the Olympic Games this year.
- 4 No one saw the thief when he entered _____ the building.
- 5 I have entered _____ the examination but I don't want to take it.

enter/enter for

1...enter his room

enter 直接使用表示进入; enter for : 表示报名

2....enter for this week's...

crossword 文字游戏

3...entered for the Olympic Games...

athletes : sportsman 运动员, 体育家

4....entered...the building.

5....entered for the examination...

enter+地点名词

enter for+表示比赛、竞赛、考试的名词

【Multiple choice questions】 多项选择题

3 Bill Frith's garden is larger than Joe's. It is _____.
a.larger garden b.a large garden c.large garden d.largest garden

3. ...It is...

It 指代前一句的主语, Bill Frith's garden

两者比较, 不可能出现最高级

garden 可数名词

garden 单数 : a garden

garden 复数 : gardens (不可能有第三种情况)

It is a larger garden.

可数名词 + a/an 或者 -s

6 The writer is fond of gardens. _____.

a.They like him b.They like to him c.He likes them d.He likes

6.....C

be fond of: like

I like sth.

I love sth.

I enjoy sth.

I am fond of sth.

8 Joe wins every time. He always _____ Bill Frith.

a.wins b.beats c.gains d.earns

8.....B

对手关系不能用 win

defeat v.击败

beat v.打败; 打

gain: get sth.

earn: 挣得 : earn money

9 Joe grows more flowers. More flowers _____ in his garden.

a.grow b.grow tall c.grow up d.grow big

grow vt.: grow sth; grow flowers...种植

grow vi.: sth.grow; flowers are growing; ...生长

in the garden 地点状语

grow tall/grow big 变得...; 一般不加形容词

grow up: up adv.表示向上; 只和人连用, 表示人的长大

10 Joe's garden is interesting. Joe is _____ in gardening.

a.interesting b.interest c.interestingly d.interested

10...D

sth.is interesting.....是令人感兴趣的

be interested in....(对自己感兴趣)对---感兴趣

11 The writer doesn't like hard work. It's _____ to look after a garden.

a.a hard work b.a hard job c.hard job d.hardly a job

it 作形式主语; 真正的主语是 to look after the garden

hard work 繁重的工作

work 不可数名词/job 可数名词

a hard work 错

a hard job

hard job 错

hardly a job : hardly adv.几乎不

Have you understood me?

Sorry,I have hardly understood you.

12 Every year the writer enters for the garden competition _____ .

a.very b.also c.and d.either

12....B

very 不单独使用

and 并列连词, 不放在句子末尾

either 也, 表否定

also 表示也, 可以放在句子末尾

often 可以放在句子末尾

§ Lesson 9 A cold welcome 冷遇

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★welcome n. 欢迎; v. 欢迎

a cold welcome 冷遇

welcome to+地点

welcome to China

welcome to my home/welcome home/welcome back

You are welcome./welcome adj.

You are welcome to+地点

★crowd n. 人群

person

people

crowd :in the crowd 在人群中

I spotted him in the crowd 我在人群中一眼就认出了他

a crowd of people 没有次序的人群, 拥挤的人群

a group of people 有次序的人群

crowd v.拥挤, 挤满

a large crowd of people 一大群人/crowds of people 许多人, 人山人海

★gather v. 聚集

people gathered 人们聚集在一起, 尤指自发性的聚集

★hand n. (表或机器的)指针

hand n.手

minute hand/second hand/hour hand

second hand 二手的, 旧的

wait me a moment/wait me a few seconds(for a few secs.)

secs.:seconds 的缩写

★shout v. 喊叫

call out 大声喊叫

cry out 大声哭喊

scream 尖叫

★refuse v. 拒绝

★laugh v. 笑

【Text】

Lesson 9 A cold welcome 冷遇

First listen and then answer the question.听录音, 然后回答以下问题.

What does 'a cold welcome' refer to?

On Wednesday evening, we went to the Town Hall. It was the last day of the year and a large crowd of people had gathered under the Town Hall clock. It would strike twelve in twenty minutes' time. Fifteen minutes passed and then, at five to twelve, the clock stopped. The big minute hand did not move. We waited and waited, but nothing happened. Suddenly someone shouted. 'It's two minutes past twelve! The clock has stopped!' I looked at my watch. It was true. The big clock refused to welcome the New Year. At that moment, everybody began to laugh and sing.

参考译文

星期三的晚上, 我们去了市政厅。那是一年的最后一天, 一大群人聚集在市政厅的大钟下面。再过 20 分钟, 大钟将敲响 12 下。15 分钟过去了, 而就在 11 点 55 分时, 大钟停了。那根巨大的分针不动了。我们等啊等啊, 可情况没有变化。突然有人喊道: “已经 12 点零 2 分了! 那钟已经停了!” 我看了一下我的手表, 果真如此。那座大钟不愿意迎接新年。此时, 大家已经笑了起来, 同时唱起了歌。

【课文讲解】

A cold welcome 冷遇

cold 冷的, 寒冷的, 冷淡的

cold fish 冷漠的人

lucky dog 幸运的人

My brother is a cold fish.

What does "a cold welcome" refer to ?

refer to : 指……

On Wednesday evening

in the evening

wednesday 修饰 evening

Town Hall 市政厅

the last day of the year 一年中的最后一天

a large crowd of the people 一大群人

had gathered 强调事件的时间是过去的过去

It 指 clock

strike v. : strike the clock 敲钟/clock strike 钟自己响

knock at the door

Listen,the clock is striking.

strike twelve 数字表示敲击的次数

in twenty minutes' time : 20 分钟之后

in 表示在段时间以后

根据时态判别 in 表示的含义

would strike 过去将来时, 从过去看未来

We will finish class in half an hour.

minutes'名词所有格

It will leave in...minutes'time

in twenty(minutes'time)名词所有格可省略

my mother's ,Kit's,Tom's

名词所有格可以用来表达时间

an hour's time

名词以-s 结尾或者本身是以-s 结尾的复数名词, 所有格加 '

名词所有格表示时间或距离

How far is the school from here?

3 minutes' walk.

pass 过了

to 没到

...minutes pass...前半小时

25 minutes passed eight

...minutes to ...后半小时

a quarter to nine/15 minutes to nine

时刻指点时间, 时间指段时间

时刻前的介词用 at

at five to twelve 作时间状语

一般过去时 the clock stopped

顺序句式...,the clock stopped at five to twelve.

An hour passed and then,he arrived.

...minutes later 几分钟以后

some time passed and then,sth happened.

big minute hand 大分针

waited and waited 等啊等啊, 强调动作的重复

walked and walked ,run and run

but 然而, 表转折

nothing happened

happen vi.事情做主语, 事情发生

what happened?

someone shouted 有人大声喊

It's two minutes past twelve!

I go to school at seven o'clock.时间状语

It's nine o'clock; 现在 9 点了(不强调在那一刻)

The clock has stopped! 现在完成时, 强调过去动作导致的结果.

I have had my breakfast. 我已经吃过早餐了

I have...

I read a book...

I looked at my watch.

It was true... 这是一个事实

It was true that+从句

refuse to do sth. 拒绝去做某事

I refuse to leave. 我拒绝离开

I refuse to move. 我拒绝移动

at that moment : just then 就在那时

at the moment: now 现在, 此刻, 在此时

过去时 began to laugh and sing.

【本课重点】

1...minutes passed and then, sth. happened.

2. What happened? Nothing happened.

3. It was true.

【Key structures】 关键句型

When did you arrived?

I arrived at ten o'clock.

at/in/on/others

when...?

in the morning; in the afternoon; in the evening

on Friday; on 15th; on Wednesday evening; on fine afternoon 有修饰词用 on

in a week; in January; in Feb.

in summer; in spring; in autumn; in winter

in 1992; in 1999

at night; at noon; at five to twelve; at ten o'clock

until 直到……时候 (prep coin)

I can't enter for the sports meeting until tomorrow.

from..to...

Everyday we have English class from 8:30 to 11:30

关于时间表示方法 : What's the time?/What time is it?

整点 : A o'clock

A 点 B 分 : ① A B ② B past A

A 点 15 分 : ① A fifteen ② fifteen past A ③ a quarter past A

A 点 30 分 : ① A thirty ② half past A

A 点 B 分 : (B>30) ① A B ② (60-B) to (A+1)

A 点 45 分 : ① A forty-five ② a quarter to (A+1) ③ fifteen to (A+1)

during 在……期间

in the holiday: 强调这段时间其中某一点时间, 并不表示自始至终

during the holiday 强调假期的从头到尾

He enjoyed himself during his holiday.

I was caught in an accident in the holiday

Exercises B

1 He has gone abroad. He will return _____ two years' time.

2 _____ Saturdays I always go to the market.

3 I never go to the cinema _____ the week.

4 He ran a hundred metres _____ thirteen seconds.

5 I can't see him _____ the moment . I'm busy.

6 My birthday is _____ November 7th I was born _____ 1974.

7 The days are very short _____ December.

8 We arrived at the village late _____ night. We left early _____ the morning.

9 I shall not hear from him _____ tomorrow.

1.in; 2.on; 3.in 没有强调自始至终 4.in 5.at(at the moment=now) 6.on;in 7.in; 8.at;in
9.until

【Special Difficulties】 难点

not...any and no...

any 用于否定句和疑问句中, some 用于肯定句(或要求得到肯定回答的疑问句)

Do you have any friends?

I don't have any friends.

not 用在非实义动词后面, 实义动词前面.

not any=no adj.用在名词前面

I have no friends.

Exercise B

He hasn't any hobbies. ---->He has no hobbies.

He does not go anywhere.--->He goes nowhere

He does not see anybody.--->He sees nobody.

He is not interested in anything--except food!---->He is interested in
nothing --except food

【Multiple choice questions】 多项选择题

4 The people _____ under the Town Hall clock.

a.were b.was c.is d.be

4.A

people: 人们, 做主语是一定是复数

police, cattle 是复数

8 How many times did the clock _____ ?

a.hit b.beat c.knock d.strike

8.D

敲门用 knock

敲钟用 strike

hit 轻和 strike 重(hit hard)在一定的的时候可以互换, 一般表示打一下

beat 连续不断的打 beat drums 敲鼓

12 It refused to welcome the New Year. It _____ .

a.denied it b.wanted to c.didn't want to d.wished to

deny: 否认, 拒绝去承认, 后面一般加名词

refuse: 拒绝

§ Lesson 10 Not for jazz 不适于演奏爵士乐

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★jazz n. 爵士音乐

a kind of music

★musical adj. 音乐的

music student : the student who learned music

musical student : 有音乐天赋的(当与人连用时)

★instrument n. 乐器

instrument=musical instrument

★clavichord n. 古钢琴, 不是现代的 piano

a kind of instrument

★recently adv. 最近

recently=lately

★damage v. 损坏

★key n. 琴键

key to the door

Do you know the key(答案)to the question?

key(关键)structure

★string n. (乐器的)弦

★shock v. 使不悦或生气, 震惊

跟人的情绪有关的动词的宾语往往是“人”(以sth为主语)

The news shocks me 这个消息使我震惊

凡是能够用“人”做宾语, 又是表示人的情绪活动的动词, 有两个形容词形成 :

1.令人……; + -ing 2.感到…… + -ed

It shocked me.

It is shocking.

I'm shocked.

get a shock n.

sb.get a shock

surprise 好事坏事都可以, 只要你没有料到 I want to give you surprise.

shock 必指坏事, 令人不悦, 生气的

★allow v. 允许, 让

1、allow doing

Smoking is allowed.=people allow smokeing

2、allow sb. to do sth

sb.be allowed to do sth.

You are allow to smoke(被动语态)

Allow 常用于被动语态, 习惯上用被动

You are not allow to enter the room if you don't take the card with you

★touch v. 触摸, 碰

【Text】

Lesson 10 Not for jazz 不适于演奏爵士乐

First listen and then answer the question.听录音, 然后回答以下问题.

What happened to the clavichord?

We have an old musical instrument. It is called a clavichord. It was made in Germany in 1681. Our clavichord is kept in the living room. It has belonged to our family for a long time. The instrument was bought by my grandfather many years ago. Recently it was damaged by a visitor. She tried to play jazz on it! She struck the keys too hard and two of the strings were broken. My father was shocked. Now we are not allowed to touch it. It is being repaired by a friend of my father's.

参考译文

我家有件古乐器, 被称作古钢琴, 是 1681 年德国造的. 我们的这架古钢琴存放在起居室里. 我们家有这件乐器已经很久了, 是我祖父在很多年以前买的. 可它最近被一个客人弄坏了, 因为她用它来弹奏爵士乐. 她在击琴键时用力过猛, 损坏了两根琴弦. 我父亲大为吃惊, 不许我们再动它. 父亲的一个朋友正在修理这件乐器.

【课文讲解】

be done (被动语态)

call sb.sth.称某人为什么

sb.be called

be made

1、be made in +地点

2、be made of/be made from(看不出原料/多种原料):由……制造(材料)

The ring is made of gold.

It is made from plastic.

3、be made into:被……制成

The gold is made into a ring.

is done:被动语态的一般现在时

was done:被动语态的一般过去时

使用那一个不取决于动词, 而取决于该句话的时态

只要见到 ago,一定使用过去时

主动语态的主语变到被动语态中要在前面加 by

play: 1.跟球类连用, 直接+球类; 2.跟乐器连用, +the+乐器, 演奏乐器而非音乐

play music on + 乐器, 一定要用 "on"

hard: 修饰动作程度的重和深

汉语中习惯用主动形式, 英语中习惯用被动形式

be+动词的 ing 形式: 进行时态

be+done: 被动语态

be being done: 被动语态的现在进行时

be 动词有多少种时态, 被动语态就有多少种

have been done

will be done

can be done

had been done

is/am/are/was/were/ done

I will make a cake./Tomorrow the cake will be made.

The cake has been made.

The cake was made.

The cake had been made.

强调对象是人用主动, 强调对象是物用被动, 被强调的部分永远做主语

双重所有格/双重属格: 名词+of+名词所有格(名词性的物主代词)

只有一张照片 my photo

很多照片中的一张 a photo of mine

It happened to a friend of mine.

【Special Difficulties】 难点

Exercise A

1 Is your watch made _____ gold?

2 These knives were made _____ Sheffield.

3 This cake was made _____ sugar, flour, butter and eggs.

of 2.in 3.from

Exercise B(改写以下斜体部分)

1 He borrowed one of my records.

2 She showed me one of John's pictures.

3 It was one of her ideas.

4 One of your letters was found on my desk.

5 Some of their friends came to see me.

1.He borrowed a record of mine.

2.She showed me a picture of John's

3.It was an idea of hers.

4.A letter of yours was found on my desk.

5.Some friends of theirs came to see me.

双重属格结构:

"a friend of my father"

"my father's friend(s)"只有一个(很多)朋友

"a friend of my father's" ✓

强调很多当中的一个或几个的时候, 选用双重属格结构

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题

7 We are not allowed to touch it. We _____ touch it.

a.mustn't b.mustn't to c.haven't to d.don't have to

7....A

"we are not allowed to touch it."不被允许

肯定结构中 must 和 have to 是一个概念

否定结构中 must 和 have to 就不一样了

mustn't: 不准, 不可以

have to 的否定: 不必(have 实意动词).....don't have to

You don't have to go to school.

You mustn't go to school.

9 It's kept in the living room. That's where we _____ it.

a.have b.hold c.lift d.carry

9....A

keep(kept,kept): 保持; 保存

keep sth.+地点: 在某地放...(状态)

put: 放(动作)

That's where

That's 后面+以特殊疑问词引导的从句

That's why: 那就是...的原因

That's where: 那就是...地点

lift: 举起

carry: 扛着, 背着, 抱着

hold: 拥有, 持有, 握着

have: 拥有

10 The visitor damaged it. She _____ it.

a.hurt b.pained c.broke d.destroyed

10....C

"damaged".....可以修复

destroy.....无法修复

pain.....有身体的疼痛

hurt.....hurt oneself/身体的某个部位/feelings: 受伤, 伤害

身体的某个部位+hurt: ...疼痛

My hand hurts.

My leg hurts.

Hurt my leg.

broke——打破, 打断, 打碎

I broke my leg.

§ Lesson 11 One good turn deserves another 礼尚往来

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★turn n. 行为, 举止

behavior : 行为, 举止

pay attention to your behavior

turn : 对人有影响力的行为

★deserve v. 应得到, 值得

He deserves praise. 他应该得到表扬

You deserve the best. 你应该得到最好的

1、deserve + n.

promotion : 提升

He deserved a promotion.

2、deserve to do: 应该...

She deserved to be punished.

Good work deserves good pay.

★lawyer n. 律师

lawyer's office : 律师事务所

★bank n. 银行

rob the bank : 抢银行

★salary n. 工资

pay : 工资(salary+wage) 通用

salary: 工资(月薪, 年薪)……有固定工作或管理阶层

wage: 工资(按小时, 周计算的)……不稳定的工作

bonus : 奖金, 分红

collect: 搜集, 领取 collect salary/wage : 领工资

★immediately adv. 立刻

at once : 立刻, 马上

right now : 现在

right away : =at once, immediately 立刻, 马上

【Text】

Lesson 11 One good turn deserves another 礼尚往来

First listen and then answer the question. 听录音, 然后回答以下问题.

Who paid for Tony's dinner?

I was having dinner at a restaurant when Tony Steele came in. Tony worked in a lawyer's office years ago, but he is now working at a bank. He gets a good salary, but he always borrows money from his friends and never pays it back. Tony saw me and came and sat at the same table. He has

never borrowed money from me. While he was eating, I asked him to lend me twenty pounds. To my surprise, he gave me the money immediately. 'I have never borrowed any money from you,' Tony said, 'so now you can pay for my dinner!'

参考译文

我正在一家饭馆吃饭，托尼·斯蒂尔走了进来。托尼曾在一家律师事务所工作，而现在正在一家银行上班。他的薪水很高，但他却总是向朋友借钱，并且从来不还。托尼看见了我，就走过来和我坐到一张桌子前。他从未向我借过钱。当他吃饭时，我提出向他借 20 英镑。令我惊奇的是，他立刻把钱给了我。“我还从未向你借过钱，”托尼说道，“所以现在你可以替我付饭钱了！”

【课文讲解】

One good turn deserves another 礼尚往来，善有善报

One bad turn deserves another 恶有恶报

restaurant['restərɒnt; (US) 'restərənt]: 注意读音

work for……强调工作

work in……强调 in 后面的地点

some/several years ago

名词-s, 前面省略了 some

working at a bank 比较稳定

He gets a good salary. 薪水不错

The teachers in the new oriental school can get good salary.

borrow from : 从...借

never=not 前面不需要加助动词

pay back : 还钱

and 连接三个并列的动词

at the same table : 坐在同一张桌子旁边

at table : 吃饭

at the table: 坐在桌子旁边

Would you like to join us?

has never borrowed 潜台词 perhaps, this time he would borrow from me

ask sb. to do 请求某人做...

to my surprise: 真让我惊讶

pay for : 为...而付钱

ask for: 问...要

I have paid for you a dinner.

I have paid 20 dollars for the book. (强调)

It's my treat. 我请客

Let's go dutch. AA 制

This time is your treat. next time is my turn.

【Key structures】 关键句型

Exercises A

a. what is happening now……进行时态

b. what always happens……一般时态

c. what happened……过去时态

d. what has happened……现在完成时态

e.what was happening……过去进行时态

a. He is now working at a bank.(现阶段)

We are learning English.

b.(现在、过去、将来)习惯、反复

He always lent his CD to the others.(过去)

I will visit you.(将来)

I visit you(无论现在, 过去, 还是将来)

c.在过去的时间内, 发生的事情, 不强调对现在的影响和跟其它时间的比较, 叫一般过去式.

过去的过去……过去完成时

有过去发生的动作, 但是还强调对现在的影响……现在完成时

有(yesterday,last night)以前的事情, 没有强调对现在的影响……一般过去时

d.过去的行为对现在产生的影响或者过去的行为一直延续到现在……现在完成时

e.过去某一特定时间发生的动作……过去进行时

Exercises C

1 He usually _____ (get) up at 7 o'clock, but this morning he _____ (get) up at 6 o'clock.

2 So far, we not _____ (have) a reply.

3 While he _____ (write) on the blackboard, the children _____ (talk).

4 I can't come now. At the moment I _____ (type) a letter.

5 As the royal visitors _____ (pass), the people cheered.

D Supply the correct form of the verbs in parentheses.

1.gets...got

2.have not had (have-have had)

so far: up to now 到目前为止 现在完成时

3.was writing were talking

4.I'm typing at the moment……标志着现在进行时; now

5.were passing

Exercises D

The Taj Mahal _____ (build) in the seventeenth century for the emperor Shah Jehan. A few years after he _____ (become) ruler, his wife, Mumtaz-i-Mahal, _____ (die). The Taj Mahal _____ (build) in her honour. Experts _____ (call) in from many parts of the world to construct the domes and to decorate the walls. The Taj Mahal which _____ (begin) in 1632 and _____ (complete) in 1654 _____ (cost) a fortune. Up to the present day, it _____ (visit) by millions of people.

...动词的正确语态填空, 时态

先确定主被动, 然后确定时态

in the seventeenth century……一般过去时的标志

The Taj Mahal……泰姬陵

was built;

became;

died;
was built
in one's honour: 为了纪念某人
were called (call in: 召集)
was begun;
was completed;
cost;
has been visited; (up to the present day=up to now)

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题

4 Tony is working at a bank _____.
a.at the moment b.a year ago c.since last year d.for a year
4.a
at the moment: 现在进行时
since: 自从 点时间
for: 一段 (+段时间)
for three hours; since yesterday; for a day; for three days
since three days ago

8 He gets a good salary. His salary is very _____.
a.good b.well c.fine d.beautiful
8.a
good salary well: 表示好的时候一般用作副词
He is well. (一般指身体好)
fine……天气好, 质量好
beautiful 美丽 漂亮的

10 Tony must pay the money back. He must _____.
a.pay it again b.pay it c.repay it d.pay it once more
10.c
pay back: 还钱
pay something: 付钱 pay again; 再次付钱
pay it : 付钱 once more=again
repay it =pay back

11 There aren't enough chairs here for us all. Please bring _____ one.
a.other b.another c.extra d.a different
11.one……代词, 指代上文的名词 The red one.
a different one
one……指代单数可数名词, 可数名词单数前一定要加'a/an'如: He is a boy
an other

【Special Difficulties】难点

I asked him to lend me twenty pounds.
ask somebody to do something.
want to do something want somebody to do

会用 sb to do sth 的动词 :

ask; want; tell; order; expect; wish; allow; advise; like; teach; prefer...

一定不能说 hope somebody to do 正确用法 : hope to do (希望自己)或 hope that(希望别人)

Exercises A(将括弧内的词按正确的语序排好.)

- 1 The officer ordered (to fire, at the enemy, the men).
- 2 He wants(his wife, this dress, to wear).
- 3 She wants(us, it, to explain).
- 4 I cannot allow (the room, him, to enter).

B Write similar sentences using the following.

1.order somebody to do
...the man to fire at the enemy
.....

Exercises B(模仿以上例句完成以下句子)

- 1 He asked _____
- 2 We prefer _____
- 3 He taught _____
- 4 My mother wished _____
- 5 Do you want _____ ?

1.He ask somebody to do something

He asked his wife to let him in.

2.prefer : 宁可

I prefer him to die.

.....

b.salary wages c.borrow from lend to

Exercises:

- 1 He is a bank manager and he gets a good _____ .
- 2 I _____ him some money and he said he would give it back to me when he got his
- 3 Yesterday he _____ my laptop. I hope he returns it soon.
- 4 The postmen are on strike again. They want higher _____ .
- 5 Workmen's _____ have gone up a lot in the last year.

1.salary;

2.lend salary/wages

3.borrowed (laptop: 手提电脑)

4.wages.

5.wages.

难点 :

...somebody to do something

§ Lesson 12 Goodbye and good luck 再见，一路顺风

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★luck n. 运气，幸运

good luck

bless you 保重

break your leg=good luck

lucky dog 幸运儿

lucky day 幸运日：It's my lucky day. 今天我真幸运

unlucky

luckily adv.

★captain n. 船长

★sail v. 航行

★harbour n. 港口

port air port

★proud adj. 自豪

be proud of：以...为自豪

Parents are proud of their children.

pride n. take pride in 以...为自豪

★important adj. 重要的

importance n.

【Text】

Lesson 12 Goodbye and good luck 再见，一路顺风

First listen and then answer the question. 听录音，然后回答以下问题。

Where is Captain Alison going and how?

Our neighbour, Captain Charles Alison, will sail from Portsmouth tomorrow. We'll meet him at the harbour early in the morning. He will be in his small boat, Topsail. Topsail is a famous little boat. It has sailed across the Atlantic many times. Captain Alison will set out at eight o'clock, so we'll have plenty of time. We'll see his boat and then we'll say goodbye to him. He will be away for two months. We are very proud of him. He will take part in an important race across the Atlantic.

参考译文

我们的邻居查尔斯·艾利森船长明天就要从朴次茅斯启航了。明天一大早我们将在码头为他送行。他将乘坐他的“涛波赛”号小艇。“涛波赛”号是艘有名的小艇，它已经多次横渡大西洋。艾利森船长将于8点钟启航，因此我们有充裕的时间。我们将参观他的船，然后和他告别。他要离开两个月，我们真为他感到自豪，他将参加一次重大的横渡大西洋的比赛。

【课文讲解】

Portsmouth 朴次茅斯(英国港市)

将来时态 early in the morning：一大早

late in the afternoon 傍晚

meet somebody+地点 去某地接某人

I'll meet you at the station.

see somebody off 送行, 目送

in his small boat, Topsail : Topsail is a famous little boat.

1、英文写作中尽量避免用同一个词

2、little……往往倾注了一定的感情 small……没有感情

famous : 好的评价

sailed across : 横渡 the Atlantic : 大西洋

over……过桥

once twice three times……

表示次数的时候, for 一定不能加

I do something twice.

set out : 出发 set off begin something

plenty: enough 而 a lot of : 指客观上的多

plenty of : I have plenty of money.相对多的概念

see--visit Can I see it?

say goodbye to somebody; say hello to; say sorry to

I said hello to him this morning.

You must say sorry to somebody.

be away He has been there. leave……短暂性动词不能和段时间连用

He will leave. 不用段时间

be+形容词(介词短语)——系表结构表状态来代替

arrive …… be here/there

leave …… be away

die …… be dead

join(也是瞬间动词) …… be a soldier/in the army

不是说瞬间动词不能用完成时态, 而是指不能与段时间连用, 一旦要用段时间就要将其变为“系表结构”即“be + 形容词或介词短语构成”。

He has been away for two hours.

He left two hours ago. 点时间

take part in; enter for

I have entered for the meeting, but now I don't want to take part in the meeting.

横渡大西洋的比赛 across the Atlantic 介词短语做定语放在被修饰词的后面

on the desk The book is on the desk.

at the door. the person at the door.

总结

和水面有关, 横渡……across

meet somebody+地点 see somebody off

be away

【Special Difficulties】 难点

一般将来时

be+副词 be in ; Is Tom in? Tom isn't in 在家

be out 出去 be away : 离开 be on : 上映 The film is on.

be back 会来 be up to something: 胜任某件事情, 能够做某件事
be over 结束 Game is over.

set set out set off set up

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题

2 Topsail _____ .

a.will win the race across the Atlantic b.has won the race across the Atlantic
c.will be in the race across the Atlantic d.was in the race across the Atlantic

2.Topsail...C

will...将要完成

has... 已经完成

be in the race : take part in the race 参加比赛

at the race 在比赛场地观看比赛

拜访某地 call at

在某个小地点 at the airport

3 Our neighbour, _____ name is Charles Alison, will sail tomorrow.

a.whose b.whose his c.his d.of whom

3....A

be in the race : take part in the race

§ Lesson 13 The Greenwood Boys 绿林少年

【New words and expressions】生词和短语

★group n. 小组, 团体

group : 指合唱团 如 : Back Street 后街男孩

band n. 乐队 如 : 零点乐队, 只有一个主唱

★pop singer 流行歌手

pop : popular adj. 受欢迎的

pop song(music) 流行音乐

pop star : 歌星

★club n. 俱乐部

night club 夜总会

★performance n. 演出

-mance 名词标志

perform v 演出

★occasion n. 场合

中文 : 在某种场合, 某种条件下, 某种环境中

英文 : occasion = time : 时候

this occasion; on the (this) occasion.

occasionally adv. = sometimes 有时候, 偶尔

on the occasion; occasionally

【Text】

Lesson 13 The Greenwood Boys 绿林少年

First listen and then answer the question. 听录音, 然后回答以下问题.

Why will the police have a difficult time?

The Greenwood Boys are a group of pop singers. At present, they are visiting all parts of the country. They will be arriving here tomorrow. They will be coming by train and most of the young people in the town will be meeting them at the station. Tomorrow evening they will be singing at the Workers' Club. The Greenwood Boys will be staying for five days. During this time, they will give five performances. As usual, the police will have a difficult time. They will be trying to keep order. It is always the same on these occasions.

参考译文

“绿林少年”是一个流行歌曲演唱团。目前他们正在全国各地巡回演出, 明天就要到达此地。他们将乘火车来, 镇上的大部分青年人将到车站迎接他们。明晚他们将在工人俱乐部演出。“绿林少年”准备在此逗留 5 天。在此期间, 他们将演出 5 场。同往常一样, 警察的日子将不好过, 他们将设法维持秩序。每逢这种场合, 情况都是这样。

【课文讲解】

全文几乎都是将来时态

汉译英要学会缩句: 找谓语动词

...are a group of six girls.

at present 目前

up to now/so far 到目前为止

nowadays adv. 目前

be doing 正在做某事

visit v. 拜访、参观; (歌手) 巡演

all parts of the country 全国各地

all parts of the world 全世界各地; 介词用 in

in all parts of the world 在全世界各地

visit + 地点, 表示去某地

They stay in all parts of the world.

某某人到中国访问 visit china

带有职业相关目的 visit some place

The headmasters of the New Oriental school visited Lanzhou. 这里指演讲

将要到达这里 be arriving here

will be doing 将来进行时态; 理解为一般将来时的另一种形式;

将来进行时态的意思往往等于一般将来时态.

We will be acting. 我们将要行动了

...will be coming by train...

...will be meeting them...

and conj. 连接

the young people in the town 镇上的年轻人(介词短语作定语)
 most of the young people in the town 镇上的大部分年轻人
 most of...大多数的
 most of the books; most of the time
 most of + the...(一定要加 'the')
 most of the young people
 most young people
 most students/most of the students.
 tomorrow evening 明天晚上
 ...will be singing...将演出, 避免重复, 使用 sing
 at the Workers' Club 在工人俱乐部
 yesterday evening 昨天晚上
 this evening 今天晚上
 night: last night 昨天夜间; tonight 今天夜间;
 tomorrow night 明天夜间; next night 第二天晚上
 逗留五天...will be staying here for five days
 演出五场...give five performances
 as usual 象往常一样
 The police will have a difficult time...
 have a good time 玩得开心; have a hard time 生活得艰辛
 have a difficult time.日子不象平时那样惬意
 try to do 设法做某事, 尽力做某事
 keep order 维持次序
 ...on these occasion(s)每逢这种场合
 the same 表示情况相同

你为什么迟到?

Why are you late?

What took you so long?

注意同一意思的多种表达方式

【Key structures】 关键句型

将来进行时

用一般将来时和将来进行时所表达的含义是一致的。

一般将来时 : shall/will + 动词原形

1. 表示将要发生的动作或存在的状态.

2. 将来时的其他结构;

基本结构 : shall/will + 动词原形

I : be going to do something 打算做某事; be gonna[美语]

He'll lose.

与打算无关含义的句子, will 与 be going to do 不能互换

be going to 与 will 对比; 下列情况须用 will

I'll be sixteen years old next year.

II : be + to do sth.表示计划安排在某事或用来征求意见

Eg: I am to have a holiday.

III : be about to do sth.即将做某事.

IV : will be doing 表示将要做某事

V : be doing(瞬间动词)表示将来时态

go, come arrive, leave, die, land, join

VI : be 一般现在时表示将要发生

Eg: if it rains,...

【Special Difficulties】 难点

名词所有格 :

(a)在单数名词及不以 -s 结尾的人名后加 's;

(b)在规则的复数名词的 -s 后面加所有格符号 ';

(c)在以 -s 结尾的单数名词后加 -'s;

(d)在以 -s 结尾的人名后面即可以用 's 也可以用所有格符号 ';

in twenty minutes' time

3 minutes' walk(drive) 走路或开车三分钟的路程

how much minced meat...? (碎肉)

I want ten pounds' worth of minced meat.

Exercise 8. how much damage was there?

哪儿有多大的损失?

A. There was a hundred pounds' worth of damage.

《语法精粹》P17 4

4. I want ().

A. a dollar worth candy

B. candy a dollar's worth

C. a dollar's worth of candy

D. a dollar worth's candy

Answer : C is right.

【Multiple choice questions】 多项选择题

5 During this time, they will give five performances. That's what they'll do _____ this time.

a. in b. on c. for d. while

5....in...

during this time: 在这段时间

during 和 in 之间有区别, 但是它们之间却是近义词

during this time=in this time

this time: 这一次

6 The police will have a difficult time _____ .

a.as usual b.as usual c.than usual d.from usual

6.....

as usual: 像往常一样

7 The police _____ expecting the singers to arrive soon.

a.is b.are c.will d.was

7.....b....

the people, the police, the cattle, 复数

8 They are pop singers. So _____ .

a.they are folk singers b.they are public singers

c.everyone likes them d.no one likes them

8...c...

pop=popular: 受欢迎的, everyone likes; folk: 民间的, 民族; public: 公众的

12 It's always the same on these occasions. It's always the same at _____ like this.

a.situation b.conditions c.place d.times

12....d...

on these occasions: 在一个时候

situation: 情况, in the situation

condition: 状态, 条件, in the condition

11 The Greenwood Boys will give five performances. They will give five _____ .

a.recital b.executions c.play d.songs

11....

recital: 朗诵, 演出(对外公开)

execution: 演出(倾向技巧)

play: 戏剧

songs: 歌子

【语法精粹】一般将来时 P11

1."The meeting is scheduled to begin at 7 o'clock"

"But___ c ___a delay."

A.it will be B.there'd be

C.there will be D.there is

schedule: 按计划, delay: 延迟, 拖延和耽误

将来时态: 在 A 和 C 中

it be: 它是, be 动词的后面一旦加名词, 往往认为主语和名词之间是等号关系

there be: 哪儿有(某地有某物), 有某事发生

There will be a meeting. 那儿将开会

There was a fire. 发生大火

2.He'll leave for Paris before you___ c ___next week.

A.will come back B.will be back

C.come back D.came back

before,状语从句的标志

在状语从句中不可能出现将来时，都被一般现在时态取代

3.Our next meeting__ c ____on 1st December

A.has been held B.will hold

C.is to be held D.is holding

be to,将来的标志，是将来还是被动

4.Where__c____a will,there is a way.

A.there will have B.has been there

C.there is D.there has been.

是个谚语，直接记忆，“有志者事竟成”，“哪儿有愿望，哪儿就有路”

where 引导的是地点主语从句

5.It__b____be Wednesday tomorrow.

A.is going to B.will

C.is about to D.is to

一般的情况可以互换，遇上没有办法打算和计划安排的，只能用 will be

be about to: 计划打算; be to: 计划打算; be going to : 计划打算

will,单纯的表将来

§ Lesson 14 Do you speak English? 你会讲英语吗?

要求整篇文章背诵

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★amusing adj. 好笑的, 有趣的

amused: 感到好笑的

amuse v.

动词后面会加人做宾语

The story amused me.

The story is amusing.

I am amused.

interesting: 有意思

The book is interesting.

The book is amusing.

funny: 好笑的, 可以指贬义, 开心的, 令人开心的

interesting/funny story

★experience n. 经历

经验 : 不可数名词: He has a lot of experience.

经历 : 可数名词: He has a lot of experiences.

+s(a/an), 经历; 原形, 经验

experienced: 有经验的

He is an experienced doctor.

★wave v. 招手

wave to sb; 向某人招手

★lift n. 搭便车

be 动词+形容词/介词

be 动词后面不能是名词, 一旦是名词, 就认为主语和后面的名词是等号关系

I am a teacher.(对)

I was a lift.(错)

take a bus/taxi/lift

take a lift: 搭便车

I take a lift.

The student gave me a lift.

give sb a lift: 让某人搭便车

B wants to take a lift.

A will give B a lift.

thumb lift : 拇指便车(向过路车辆竖起拇指表示要求免费搭车)

I want to take a lift.

★reply v. 回答

answer

作为不及物动词是一样的: He answered/replied.

作为及物动词就不一样了: answer sth/reply to sth.

answer the letter: 回信

I will reply to the letter. 回信

★language n. 语言

native language: 母语

mother tongue: 母语(口语)

The native language is Chinese.

My mother tongue is Chinese.

★journey n. 旅行

begin a trip: 开始一个旅行

begin a journey

trip, travel, tour

trip: 短距离旅行或出差(时间或距离上较短)

go on business/go on a trip

travel: 周游(长途)

tour, 为了玩

tourist: 游客

journey: 所有的旅行

go on a journey, 3 days' journey(三天路程)

2 hours' journey

voyage : 旅行(海上)

flight : 空中飞行

journey : 偏重于陆地旅行

trip; travel; tour; journey; voyage; flight

【Text】

Lesson 14 Do you speak English? 你会讲英语吗?

First listen and then answer the question. 听录音, 然后回答以下问题.

Did the young man speak English?

I had an amusing experience last year. After I had left a small village in the south of France, I drove on to the next town. On the way, a young man waved to me. I stopped and he asked me for a lift. As soon as he had got into the car, I said good morning to him in French and he replied in the same language. Apart from a few words, I do not know any French at all. Neither of us spoke during the journey. I had nearly reached the town, when the young man suddenly said, very slowly, "Do you speak English?" As I soon learnt, he was English himself!

参考译文

去年我有过一次有趣的经历。在离开法国南部的一个小村庄后, 我继续驶往下一个城镇。途中, 一个青年人向我招手。我把车停下, 他向我提出要求搭车。他一上车, 我就用法语向他问早上好, 他也同样用法语回答我。除了个别几个单词外, 我根本不会法语。旅途中我们谁也没讲话。就要到达那个镇时, 那青年突然开了口, 慢慢地说道: “你会讲英语吗?”

我很快了解到, 他自己就是个英国人!

【课文讲解】

搭便车 : take a lift

给某人搭便车 : give sb a lift

路程, 旅行 : journey

经历 : experience.

一般有意思, interesting、funny, amusing 倾向于让某人笑出声

I had an amusing experience last year.

Last year [lɑːst jəː, jiə] 读音 : ① 读 “雀” (英音) ② ‘s’后的’t’读’d’后与’j’拼 (美音)

after, 从句的标志, 后面叫时间主从句

when, while, as : 什么时候, until, before, after

简单句中一个谓语, 有从句有主句, 从句一个谓语动词, 主句一个谓语动词

after : 在什么什么之后, 主句的动作发生在从句之后, 从句的动作发生在主句的前面, 从句的动作发生在前, 主句的动作发生在后

如果两个都是过去时, 同时发生, 会用进行时态; 如果一先一后, 发生在前的动作为过去完成时(had done)

after 后面的从句一个变成过去时, 一个变成过去完成时, 一定是从句用过去完成时.

before : 在什么什么之前, 主句发生在从句之前, 主句用过去完成时.

地点做介词短语修饰前面的名词

in the south of

表达方位的表达方式一共有 3 个介词, in, on, to

没有相接的, 是相离的, to

接壤, on

在什么里面, in

drive to : 开车去某地, drive on (on:继续), on 加在动词的后面表示继续

My heart will go on 《我心永恒》

on the way : 在路上, 在途中

wave to sb : 冲某人挥手

I stopped=I stopped the car.

ask sb for sth : 请求某人要求得到什么东西

as soon as : 一...就..., 后面一定要加一个句子(时间主从句), “一” 后面的先发生

As soon as I had received the letter,I ringed/called him back.

只要是状语从句, 一旦遇到将来时, 变为一般现在时

As soon as you arrive,you must call me.你一到就就打我电话

As soon as 强调两个动作几乎是连在一起的

say goodbye,say sorry,say hello,say good morning to him

用某种语言 : in+某种语言

I speak English. I say a word in Chinese.

reply 要想加宾语要加 to (+要回答的内容)

in the same language 在句中作状语, 不是 replay 所应回答的问题(宾语), 故用 in

as soon as : 一...就...

As soon as I had entered the room,I took off my coat at once.

apart from : 除了什么之外, except

except,except for,apart from

1.when except is used at the beginning of a sentence,it is followed by for.

2.apart from 习惯上喜欢放句首, apart from=except=besides

如果认为整体之中做这件事情的人除了整体之外, 还有这个人也做了, 是加号=besides

如果认为整体之中做这件事情的人除了整体之外, 这个人没有做, 是减号=except

All the passengers are millionaire except us. 减号

3.except : 从整体之中减掉, besides ; 如果放在句首, 统一用 apart from

4.except for 含有对整体中的某一个方面不满意

The article is very good except for his handwriting.

except for 可以不放在句首, 强调整体当中某一方面除外, 剩下的整体都不错

Except for his height,he is very excellent.

【Special Difficulties】 难点

I invited everyone except George.

Except for George I invited everyone.

Except for/apart from this,everything is in order.

Exercise

1 (Except)(Except for) a slight headache, I feel all right now.

3 (Except)(Apart from) being a bit too long, the play was very good.

1.except for

3.apart from(Except for)

except for=apart from,喜欢放在句首

except 和 besides 可放句子中间, besides 指在整体上加上, except 要从整体减掉

not at all : 一点点都不,强调

I don't like it. I don't like it at all.

apart from=except(文中)

Apart from my sister,I like everyone.

Apart from a few words,I don't know any French.

一正一反地翻译

neither of ['naiðə, 'ni:ðə]: 注意英音与美音的读音不同

during the journey : 在旅途当中, 自始至终

neither of sb,either of sb

either of sb : 什么当中的任何一个

neither of sb : 什么当中的任何一个都不

either,neither 都是指两个当中的任何一个

如果不只两个人, 就变成 none of

none,neither 一旦出现, 这句话就不会再有 not

I don't like the book,My sister doesn't like it either.

Neither of us likes it.(注意要用单数)

nearly : 将要

when: 要看当时的具体情况, 在这里译为 : 就在此时

I had nearly reached home when I found my mother standing there.

Do you speak English?问的是一个事实 你说英语吗?你是说英语国家的人吗?

Do you swim? 你去游泳吗? Can you swim?你会游泳吗?两者的概念是不一样的注意体会

As I learnt. learn: 知道, 得知

我得知 : I learn; 我知道 : I know(我本来就知道)

As we know,the New Concept English is very good.正如我们所知... ...

As+主语+动词+逗号+句子, As : 正如

As I think,it is the coldest day in the year.

As my mother said/As I heard

As he said,English is easy to learn.

himself,反身代词单独放在句尾, 起强调作用

I read English myself.

总结

as soon as+从句, 表示时间, 一...就...

apart from=except for,放在句首, 除了什么之外

neither of: 两者之间都不, 一旦出现, 这句话里面不会再出现 not

三者或三者以上之间都不 : none of

As I learnt,正如.....

As sb do sth,一定要加逗号, 再加另外一个句子

英语当中的第一句话往往起着概述的作用

有两种方式可以背诵 : 一种是硬背, 另一种是先理解, 然后按照事情的发展顺序背

【Key structures】 关键句型

过去完成时：过去的过去或两个动作都在过去，一个动作在前，一个在后，发生在前的动作为过去完成时
过去完成时一定要以一个过去时态在铺垫，这个动作一定要发生在 had done 之后

until：直到什么时候为止，直到什么时候才

until, 在后面一个从句之前发生了主句

until,主句和从句两个都用一般过去时对(最习惯的一种用法)，主句和从句任何一个用过去完成也是对

I had not understood the problem until he explained it.

4.We hadn't disturbed him until he finished work.

We didn't disturb him until he had finished work.

We didn't disturb him until he finished work.(更习惯于这种用法)

after 后面会加过去完成时，before 后面会加一般过去时

Exercises D (用正确的时态填空)

1 The moment he had said this, he _____ (regret) it.

2 It _____ (begin) to rain before she took a taxi.

3 When all the guests had left, Derek _____ (arrive).

1.The moment 后面直接加从句, The moment = as soon as
一般过去时, regretted

2.before 引导从句用一般过去时，主句用过去完成时
had begun

3.arrived,过去完成是一定要 and 过去的过去有关

【Special Difficulties】 难点

a.ask and ask for

ask sth：问什么什么东西, ask a question/ask sb

ask for sth：要求得到, ask for the answer

c.which of ,either of, neither of ,both of

either of：两者当中的任何一个

neither of：两者都不

which of：那一个, which of the two

both of：两者都

Which of the two do you like?

I want both of them.I want either of them.I want neither of them.

Exercise

2 I liked them very much so I bought(neither of)(both of)them.

4 I(asked)(asked for)a question. I did not(ask for)(ask)an answer.

He could not answer(neither of)(either of)the questions I (asked)(asked for).

2.both of

4.asked,ask for

5.either of,前面有 not, 故只能选 either of , asked

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题

6 I speak a few words of French. I don't know _____ French.

a.man b.much c.plenty of d.a little

6....b...

French 不可数, 不能用 many

plenty of : 足够多的

not much: a little

not a little: much

7 Neither of us spoke. We _____ .

a.neither spok b.either spoke c.both didn't speak d.neither didn't speak

7....c....

neither 不会和 not 连用

either : 任何一个

both : 两个都 we both ; both of us 都对

neither of,不能说 we neither,只能说 neither of us

11 He replied in French. He _____ the writer in French.

a.responded b.answered c.returned d.remarked

11...b...

responded 和 replied 用法一样

replied 后面加宾语一定要加 to, answer 直接加

9 The young man waved to the writer. He _____ him.

a.salute b.greeted c.signalled to d.nodded

9....c...

salute : 军礼, 军人的问候 : The soldier saluted his officer.士兵的问候

greet:

10 He asked for a lift. He was a _____.

a.tram b.hitch hiker c.passenger d.foreigner

10...b...

tramp : 流浪汉

hitch hiker : 搭便车的人

passenger : 乘客, (指要付车钱的那种)

12 The writer had _____ reached the town when the young man spoke.

a.often b.almost c.sometimes d.just as

12. almost=nearly

just as 正当...时候 +从句

§ Lesson 15 Good news 佳音

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★secretary[si'kri:tə] n. 秘书 注意读音

history

secret['si:krit] n v 注意读音与 secretary 的区别

★nervous adj. 精神紧张的

be nervous 事情发生时

worried : 为以后的事情担心

upset: 不安的 (对以前的事情)

★afford v. 负担得起

1、afford sth. : I can afford the coat (东西)

I can afford the holiday. 有时间去

2、afford money/time : I can afford five yuan./I can afford the book.

afford to do sth. : I can afford to buy the book.

(can/can't)afford sth. 前面一般都要加情态动词 "can/can't"

★weak adj. 弱的

★interrupt v. 插话, 打断

(n.)interruption

disturb : 打扰某人

interrupt : 打断某人的话

Sorry to...

【Text】

Lesson 15 Good news 佳音

First listen and then answer the question. 听录音, 然后回答以下问题.

What was the good news?

The secretary told me that Mr. Harmsworth would see me. I felt very nervous when I went into his office. He did not look up from his desk when I entered. After I had sat down, he said that business was very bad. He told me that the firm could not afford to pay such large salaries. Twenty people had already left. I knew that my turn had come.

'Mr. Harmsworth,' I said in a weak voice.

'Don't interrupt,' he said.

Then he smiled and told me I would receive an extra thousand pounds a year!

参考译文

秘书告诉我说哈姆斯沃斯先生要见我。我走进他的办公室,感到非常紧张。我进去的时候,他连头也没抬。待我坐下后,他说生意非常不景气。他还告诉我,公司支付不起这么庞大的工资开支,有 20 个人已经离去。我知道这次该轮到我了。

“哈姆斯沃斯先生,”我无力地说。

“不要打断我的话,”他说。

然后他微笑了一下告诉我说,我每年将得到 1,000 英镑的额外收入。

【课文讲解】

look down upon/on sb : 瞧不起某人

I look down upon my sister.

I look down 往地上看,反义词 : look up

Business is very good! 生意好!

The firm could not afford to pay such large salaries.(此句要求背诵)

collect salary 领薪水

pay salary 支付薪水

large: 一般指东西的数量

so 的后面加形容词或副词

such 的后面加名词, 容许在该名词前面加修饰词

所有的间接引语都是宾语从句

My turn has come.

It is my turn.轮到我了(口语常用形式)

in a ... voice

in a loud(大声)/low (低声)/weak(强调心里不踏实)/strong(理直气壮) voice

a year

以下几个词都可表示“再, 又”的意思, 注意用法 :

1、an extra thousand(作名词看)

再有多少 : 数量+extra+名词

2、two others : two other + 名词

3、two more : two more chairs

4、once more: 再一次

5、another three days : 只有 another 的数词在后面

【Key structures】 关键句型

间接引语(宾语从句) : 是陈述句的间接引语.

一、主从一致 : 主句和从句的时态一致

1.主句的动词为一般现在时, 从句为任意时态

2.主句的动词为一般过去时, 从句为相对应的过去时态

(过去时 : 一般过去时, 过去进行时, 过去完成时, 过去将来时)

一般现在时—— 一般过去时

现在进行时—— 过去进行时

现在完成时—— 过去完成时

将来完成时—— 过去将来完成时

一般过去时—— 过去完成时

二、人称变化

主要是第一和第二人称变化, 设身处地

三、只要属于宾语从句, 引导词 that 可以省略

Exercises B

1 He _____ me that she _____ (come)tomorrow.

2 The gardener _____ that he _____ (cut)that tree down yesterday.

3 I _____ you I _____ (have)never played tennis before.

4 What _____ he _____ that he _____ (do)?

5 When _____ he _____ you that he _____ (buy)this car?

6 He _____ he _____ (cannot)understand me.

- 7 He _____ that he _____ (work) all day yesterday.
 8 He _____ me he never _____ (write) letters to anybody.
 9 Why _____ you _____ that you _____ (be) busy?
 10 He _____ that he _____ (will wait) for me.

后面有“人”用 tell, 否则用 say

1. told; would come
2. said; had cut
3. told; had never had
4. did; say; had done/would do/did
5. did; tell; had bought
6. said; couldn't
7. said; had worked
8. told; had never written
9. did; say; were busy
10. said; would wait

先根据原句填时态, 再把这句话放到整篇文章中检验

【Special Difficulties】 难点

office : 办公室

study : 书房

desk : 课桌

Exercises

- 1 We shall use the spare room in our new house as a _____ .
- 2 Smith works in a lawyer's _____ .
- 3 She felt very _____ before the plane took off
- 4 I can only _____ to pay £100 a week rent.
- 5 Since his illness he has been very _____ . He is always losing his temper.

1. study

2. office

3. nervous

4. afford

5. irritable : Since his illness => 自从他生了病

since + 名词

【Multiple choice questions】 多项选择题

6 _____ turn is it? It's your turn.

a. Whic b. To whom c. Who d. Whose

6.....d...

(书面语) my turn has come, (口语) it is my turn

轮到谁 : whose turn (is it)? who is next?

10 It's your turn _____ .

a. It's your line b. It's your row c. You're next d. It's your chance

10...c...

It's your turn.You're next.

12 The writer would receive an extra £1,000 a year. He would get £1,000 a year _____.
a.less b.more c.over d.up

12....

extra, other, more, another, over

最灵活的是 more, two more eggs, once more

more 可以放数词和名词之间, 甚至可以放在整个名词的后面

extra 和 other 一定放在数词和名词之间, another 一定放在数词前面

over sth: 超过(多余)什么东西, over three years

up: 往上, climb up

【语法精粹】

一般过去进行时: 跟过去的一个时间或动作同时发生

间接引语

如果是现在进行时在直接引语当中变成间接引语, 极有可能选用过去完成时

1. My brother _____ while he _____ his bicycle and hurt himself.

- A. fell/was riding B. feel/was riding
C. had fallen/rode D. had fallen/was riding

fell(跌下来), ride(骑自行车) A

2. He _____ his leg as he _____ in a football match.

- A. broke/played B. was breaking/was playing
C. broke/was playing D. was breaking/played

break one's leg C

3. My father will be here tomorrow.

I thought that he _____ today.

- A. was coming B. is coming
C. will come D. comes A

be coming 表示将要

go/come/leave/arrive 的过去进行时态很有可能表达过去将来时态的含义

跟 go/come/leave/arrive 相连的词一定会用进行时态表示将来时态

4. Jack was going out of the shop when he collided with an old woman who _____

- A. come B. was coming
C. had been coming D. had come

collide: 相撞, 是相对概念 B

5. Mike couldn't come to the telephone when Mr. Smith called her because she _____ in the lab.

- A. had been working B. has been working
C. was working D. worked

§ Lesson 16 A polite request 彬彬有礼的要求

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★park v. 停放(汽车)

parking, stop

stop the car : 车在运动中停下来

park : 停放

parking area : 停车场

★traffic n. 交通

traffic police : 交通警

traffic lights : 交通灯,另义为拐弯口, 红绿灯, 十字路口

first crossing/turning : 叉路口, 拐角

traffic jam : 交通堵塞

in the traffic jam

I spend a lot of time in traffic jam

heavy traffic : 繁重的交通

in heavy traffic : 交通拥挤

I was ordered to drive in heavy traffic.

★ticket n. 交通违规罚款单

★note n. 便条

message : 消息

note : 纸条, 纸钞

make notes : 做笔记

★area n. 地段

area : 场地, 地段(一块地方), 大地点, 小地点都可以

place : 地点

region : 地区(交战, 开火)

In this region, there were a lot of wars. 战火连绵

★sign n. 指示牌

★reminder n. 提示

remind v. : 提示, 提醒

remind sb of sth : An older photo can remind me of my childhood.

You remind me of your mother.

remind sb to do sth:

reminder : 可以指人, 可以指物, 如上例中的 an older photo, you

★fail v. 无视, 忘记

fail v. 失败

1、fail+宾语 : 失败做某事

2、fail in doing sth : 在某些方面失败

He failed./He failed (in) examination. “in” 可省略

3、fail to do : 没有能够在某事

He failed to swim across the river.

4、not fail to do sth.一定能够某事

I can not fail to pass it.

You can not fail to drive it.你一定能够驾驶

If you receive a request like this,You can not fail to obey it.

If you arrived in Beijing ,you cannot fail to find the New Oriental School.

★obey v. 服从

【Text】

Lesson 16 A polite request 彬彬有礼的要求

First listen and then answer the question.听录音，然后回答以下问题。

What was the polite request?

If you park your car in the wrong place, a traffic policeman will soon find it. You will be very lucky if he lets you go without a ticket. However, this does not always happen. Traffic police are sometimes very polite. During a holiday in Sweden, I found this note on my car: 'sir, we welcome you to our city. This is a "No Parking" area. You will enjoy your stay here if you pay attention to our street signs. This note is only a reminder.' If you receive a request like this, you cannot fail to obey it!

参考译文

一旦你把汽车停错了地方，交警很快就会发现。如果他没给你罚单就放你走了，算你走运。然而，情况并不都是这样，交警有时也很客气。有一次在瑞典度假，我发现我的车上有这样一个字条：“先生，欢迎您光临我们的城市。此处是‘禁止停车’区。如果您对我们街上的标牌稍加注意，您在此会过得很愉快的。谨此提请注意。‘如果你收到这样的恳求，你是不会不遵照执行的！’

【课文讲解】

fail, fail to do sth, not fail to do sth : 一定能够做

park : 停放

in the wrong place

wrong : 不合适的, right : 合适的

He is the right person who you are looking for.

They met (A met B) in the wrong place at the wrong time.

You met the wrong person in the wrong place at the wrong time.

真实条件句 : 假设很有可能发生. If it snows

只要是状语从句，一律用一般现在取代一般将来

如果在条件从句中，从句往往是一般现在时，主句仍然为一般将来时

真实条件句中，从句往往为现在时，主句中会用一般将来时或祈使句

If he is sleeping, don't wake him up.

If 引导的叫条件句，without 后面的名词也叫条件

without+n. : 如果没有

Without water,fish cannot live.

however=but,然而

however 常常放在句首或句子中都可以, but 习惯放在两个句子之间

but 转折性语义比较强, however 转折语义比较弱

traffic police : 交通警

sometimes : 有几次, 有时, 偶尔

on my car : 指车的外面

sir,直接称呼的时候不和姓相连

1.表示尊称

2.可以不知道对方姓什么, 只要知道对方是男性就可以

welcome sb to+地点 : 欢迎某人来某地

pay attention to : 注意(思想上)

if.真实条件

You will enjoy your stay here,enjoy : 享受, stay(n.)

I have enjoyed my stay here.我已经在这儿很快乐了

Enjoy your stay here.祝你玩得开心

only a reminder==not a ticket

receive a request like this,cannot fail to obey it

总结

1、主句会有祈使句, 一般将来时, 情态动词

2、without+名词 : 如果没有, 起了条件的作用

without your help/rain

3、however=but,往往一出现, 前后都有标点符号隔开, 后面会加逗号, but 不会

4、对一个不认识的男士, sir; mister 的后面一定要加姓, sir 的后面不能加姓

sir/madam(女士)

5、enjoy your stay here

I have enjoyed my stay here.

5、You cannot fail to obey it: 你一定会遵守

【Key structures】 关键句型

Exercises C

1 If it _____ (rain), I shall take an umbrella with me.

2 You never _____ (pass)this test if you don't work hard.

3 If he _____ (be)here before 10 o'clock, I shall see him.

4 If he plays well, he _____ (get)into the team.

5 If he _____ (enjoy) concerts, why doesn't he come with us?

6 Tell him to wait for me if he _____ (be)not in a hurry.

1.rains,shall do

2.will never pass

3.is

4.will get

5.enjoys, why doesn't 跟第三人称连用, 是一种建议; why not 连在一起表示建议

6.is

【Special Difficulties】 难点

police, 一定会做复数看待

b. pay attention to, care, take care of, look after

pay attention to : 思想上注意, notice : 眼睛上的注意

care : 关心, 在意, I don't care : 我不在乎, who cares : 我不在乎(谁在乎!)

take care of = look after : 照顾, 照料

c. remind and remember

remind : 提醒, remind sb of sth, remind sb to do sth

remember : 记起, 记得

(1) Do you remember? 你想起来了吗? remember sth

(2) remember 记得吗?(可以单独用)

(3) remember to do sth : 记得要去做, remember to send the letter

remember doing sth : 记得已经做了, I remembered sending the letter.

Remember sb to your another : 前者向后者表示问候

Remember me to your mother : 代我向你的母亲问好

送行 : goodbye

Have you enjoy your stay here? I have enjoyed my stay here.

Remember me to your family. 代我向你的家人问好

Today I will meet sb at the airport/station.

Hello, good morning, /afternoon.

Long time no see.

How are you? Fine, thank you, and you? I am fine too, thank you.

Welcome to Beijing.

多看看英文原版影片, 如《与狼共舞》等

Exercise (选择正确的词)

- 1 You can only learn if you(look after)(pay attention).
- 2 Don't forget to(remind)(remember) me about it tomorrow.
- 3 The police(is knocking)(are knocking)at the door.
- 4 Our neighbours will(pay attention to)(look after)our house when we are away.
- 5 (Remind me)(Remember me)to your wife.

1...pay attention...

look after.....look+prep.+ 宾语

pay attention(to sth.) : 注意

只有当你注意的时候, 你才会学到东西.

2....remind...

remind sb.of sth.

remind sb.about sth.

think of = think about : 思考, 考虑

3....are knocking...

4....look after... 照料

5...Remember me... 典型的问候语, “向某人表达问候”

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题

1 Traffic police are _____ .

- a.occasionally very polite b.never very polite
c.always very polite d.seldom very polite

1...

seldom : 很少(否定意思)相当于 “not” 来理解

occasionally=sometimes : 偶尔

hardly : 几乎不(否定意思)

I hardly went there.

6 ‘No Parking’ means _____ .

- a.don't leave your car here b.without parking
c.don't stop d.there's no room to park here

No Parking :

park : 停放(侧重放)

stop : 让运动中的东西停下来

leave sth.here

leave : 离开, 留下来, 丢在某地(一定要加宾语和地点)

I left keys at home.

I left my wallet in the taxi.

7 This note is only a reminder. It's _____ .

- a.nothing b.no one c.nothing extra d.nothing more
only

nothing : 东西, 事情

no one : 人

nothing extra : ×

nothing more : ✓

nothing……不定代词

不定代词的修饰词, 要放在不定代词的后面

anything important : 重要的事情

It is nothing,他什么都不是.

extra 做定语时, 一定要放在被修饰词前面 one extra thousand

two more.../...more 可以放在被修饰词前面或后面

9 You will enjoy your stay. It will _____ you.

- a.amuse b.enjoy c.laugh at d.please

9....d...

enjoy 的典型用法 : 主语从宾语身上得到享受

laugh at(sb.) : 嘲笑某人 ([lɑ:fət])

amuse(sb.) : 让某人笑出来

please(sb.) : 让某人高兴; 取悦

可以直接加人的动词：

shock, surprise, amuse, please, worry

共同特征：和人的感觉相连

be worried about：为...担心

I am worried about my house.

My house worries me. 我的房子让我担心.

§ Lesson 17 Always young 青春常驻

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★appear v. 登场, 扮演

appear：显示, 露面 反义词：disappear(都是不及物动词)

The plane disappeared.

The plane appeared.

The actor appeared.

appear as：扮演...角色

He appeared as a prince.(王子)

on the stage; 在舞台上

appear on the stage as....(扮演的确切表达)

My aunt appeared on the stage as a young girl.

I work as a teacher.(最常用的介绍某人做什么工作的)

She worked as a nurse.

appear：露面, 显得(系动词)后面直接加形容词

He appears nervous.他显得很紧张(看起来)

He appears happy.

I appears tired.

★stage n. 舞台

on the stage：在舞台上

in the stage：在某一阶段(时期)

★bright adj. 鲜艳的

bright red：鲜红色

bright yellow：明黄色

bright blue：宝蓝色

★stocking n. (女用)长筒袜 (棉的, 绒的, 并不是现在的丝袜)

★sock n. 短袜

【Text】

Lesson 17 Always young 青春常驻

First listen and then answer the question.听录音, 然后回答以下问题.

Why doesn't Aunt Jennifer tell anyone how old she is?

My aunt Jennifer is an actress. She must be at least thirty-five years old. In spite of this, she often appears on the stage as a young girl. Jennifer will have to take part in a new play soon. This time, she will be a girl of seventeen. In the play, she must appear in a bright red dress and long black stockings. Last year in another play, she had to wear short socks and a bright, orange-coloured dress. If anyone ever asks her how old she is, she always answers, 'Darling, it must be terrible to be grown up!'

参考译文

我的姑姑詹妮弗是位演员，她至少也有 35 岁了。尽管如此，她却常在舞台上扮演小姑娘。詹妮弗很快又要参加一个新剧的演出。这一次，她将扮演一个 17 岁的少女。演出时她必须穿一条鲜红色的裙子和黑色的长筒袜。去年在演另一个剧时，她不得不穿短袜和一件鲜艳的橘红色的衣服。一旦有人问起她有多大年纪，她总是回答：“亲爱的，长成大人真可怕啊！”

【课文讲解】

actress：女演员：以-ress 结尾的，是女性

actor：男演员：以-or,-er 结尾的，是男性

waiter：男服务员 waitress：女服务员

prince：王子 princess：公主

god:神(God:上帝,注意 “G” 大写)goddess：女神

lion：公狮子 lioness：母狮子

doctor：男医生 woman doctor：女医生

thirty-five years old：三十五岁

must be

must + 动词原形：“不得不，必须：(对现在的)推测”

least……little 的最高级 “至少，最少”

at most…… “最多”

She is fifteen years old. 她五岁了

She must be fifteen years old. 她很可能五岁

She must be at most fifteen years old. 她最多五岁

She must be at least fifteen years old. 她至少五岁

She must be a model.

in spite of：尽管 (“of” 为介词，后面一定会加名词或代词)

in spite of this：尽管如此

In spite of this,I still like school. “school” 前不加 “the” 表示上学，加 “the” 只表示学校

join:参加了某一种团体

take part in :参加某一种活动

attend：出席

join the army：参军

join the party：入党

join us: (口)加入我们(这个团体)中来

join sb./sth.

take part in the race：参加比赛

take part in a play

take part in the party

attend the meeting：参加会议，出席会议

attend the party：出席宴会

attend the class : 上课

Thank you for your attending. 谢谢大家的出席(到来)

Thank you for your listening. 谢谢大家的听讲

This time : 这一次

a girl of seventeen

两种年龄的表达 :

She is eighteen years old.

She is a girl of eighteen.

must do : 1、必须做 =have to; 2、推测

in……(介词)穿着…样的衣服 (+颜色、衣服)

用介词短语取代动词, 避免了一句话中出现两个动词

The boy in green.

in a bright red dress : 鲜红色的连衣裙

long black stocking : 长的黑色长筒袜

last year in another play(表示扮演过很多的角色)

had to : 必须(不能加介词, +动词原形)

bright, orange-coloured dress : 鲜艳的桔黄色衣服

ever==at any time : 任何时候(时间副词)

it must be : 一定(推测)

must + 原形……对现在的推测

it……形式主语, 用不定式做真正的主语

grown up : (形容词短语)成年人

grow up : (人)成长

be grown-up : 作为一个成年人

must be thirty-five years old

当有人问你年龄时, 你可以这样回答 :

It is a secret/It is privacy.

I forget it. / twenty-nine

【Key structures】 关键句型

Must 的用法 :

Must+ 原形…… (1)=have to “不得不, 必须”

(2)(对现在的)推测

在过去时的句子中, 要用 have to 来表示 “必须”

have to……可以有任意时态

She will have to...

She had to...

She has to...

She has/I have had to...

have to……作为实义动词, 否定式为 don't have to

will not have to

didn't have to

对现在的推测 : must do

对过去的推测 : must have done

在 I think, he thinks...的从句中, 一定要用事实说话. (不能说成 “I think he must be a fool.”)

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题

3 She must be at least thirty-five years old. In my opinion she _____ .

a.has b.is c.can d.must

(3)...b...

in one's opinion=I think “就某人看来”,后面一定是事实

in one's opinion 常常取代 I think, I think 太强调个人观点

【Special Difficulties】难点

(a) As:

As a young girl...(介词)"作为"

As I learned,...(as 作代词用) "正如"

As I am busy==because "由于"

As I was leaving the house...==when "当...时"

Do as you are told.(the thing that)叫你怎么做就怎么做(按你被告知的那样去做): as.....方式状语从句的引导词

I work as... "作为...工作"

(b) Dress,Suit,Costume:

dress : "裙子, 晚礼服, 连衣裙" (女式)

suit : "套装" (男式)

costume : "演出服, 民族服装, 某一年代所穿的服装"

(c)Grow,Grow up :

grow : "长"

grow up : "生长, 成长" (指人)

Exercises B. Choose the correct words in the following sentences:

选择正确的词 :

1 Trees take a long time to(grow)(grow up).

2 My father bought a new(suit)(costume)recently

3 She hired a(suit)(costume)for the fancy-dress party.

4 Do you like my sister's new(dress)(costume)?

(1)...grow...

(2)...suit...

(3)...costume...

fancy-dress-party : 化妆舞会

hire : 雇, 租

(4)...dress...

Must: 推测; 必须=have to

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题

1 The story about Jennifer suggests that _____ .

a.she is not too old to appear on stage as a young girl

b.she is too young to appear on stage as a young girl

c.she is the right age to appear on stage as a young girl

d.she is too old to appear on stage as a young girl

(1)...d...

suggest : 暗示

right age : 适合的年龄

too...to... : 太...以至于不能

2 One of these statements is true. Which one?

a.We know exactly how old Jennifer is.

b.We do not know exactly how old Jennifer is.

c.Jennifer is thirty-five years old.

d.Jennifer is over thirty-five years old.

(2)...b...

She must be...推测

exactly:(副词) 确切地 exact words:确切的话 : What's his exact words?

7 She had to wear short socks. It was _____ for her to wear them.

a.certain b.necessary c.important d.impossible

(7)...

it is + a. +to do... 形式主语 “某人做某件事情...”

It is troublesome to learn English. / It is easy to do sth.

It is troublesome for us to learn English.

(for sb.)为逻辑主语

have to do =sth is necessary(adj, necessarily adv)

You have to go home.=It is necessary for you to go home.

8 She often appears as a young girl. She _____ on the stage as a young girl.

a.is presented b.points c.show d.seems

(8).....

appear : 扮演,本意为“出现,显示”

seems : 看起来,似乎

be on show : 展览,演出

show : 显示,给...看

be presented : 出席 ✓(过去的习惯用法)

be present (adj ['prez(ə)nt]) : 出席(反义 : be absent (adj ['æbsənt]) : 缺席)

11 Men usually wear _____ .

a.socks instead of stockings b.stockings instead of socks

c.either socks or stockings d.neither socks nor stockings

(11)...a...

instead of : 代替

sock : 短袜

either...or... : 或者...或者

stocking : 长筒袜(女用)

neither...nor... : 即不...也不...

in stead of 后面的词, 往往是没做或不做的事情

12 She is grown up. She is _____ .

a.very old b.an adolescent c.a teenage d.an adult

(12)....d...

grown [grəʊn] adj.长大的, 成年的, 长满某物的

grown up :adj 成年的,成熟的 n 成年人

grow up; 成长

adolescent ([ædəʊ'lesnt])adj.青春期的(13-16岁), 青春的 n.青少年

adolescent criminal : 青春期犯罪

teenager (['ti:n,eidʒə] n.) : 十几岁的人(10-20岁)男女青少年

adult ([ə'dʌlt, 'ædʌlt]) : 成年人

§ Lesson 18 He often does this! 他经常干这种事!

这一课省略不讲, 自己看.

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★pub n. 小酒店

★landlord n. 店主

★bill n. 帐单

【Text】

Lesson 18 He often does this! 他经常干这种事!

First listen and then answer the question.听录音, 然后回答以下问题.

What had happened to the writer's bag?

After I had had lunch at a village pub, I looked for my bag. I had left it on a chair beside the door and now it wasn't there! As I was looking for it, the landlord came in.

'Did you have a good meal?' he asked.

'Yes, thank you,' I answered, 'but I can't pay the bill. I haven't got my bag.'

The landlord smiled and immediately went out. In a few minutes he returned with my bag and gave it back to me.

'I'm very sorry,' he said. 'My dog had taken in into the garden. He often does this!'

参考译文

我在一家乡村小酒店吃过午饭后, 就找我的提包. 我曾把它放在门边的椅子上, 可这会儿不见了! 当我正在寻找时, 酒店老板走了进来.

“您吃得好吗?” 他问.

“很好, 谢谢.” 我回答, “但我付不了帐, 我的提包没有了.”

酒店老板笑了笑, 马上走了出去. 一会儿工夫他拿着我的提包回来了, 把它还给了我.

“实在抱歉,” 他说, “我的狗把它弄到花园里去了, 他常干这种事!”

have 的用法 :

have dinner, have a cigarette, have coffee, have a holiday, have a good time

have a swim, have a rest

have a pen, have a headache

1、have 做“有，患病”概念时，可作为实义动词，也可作为非实义动词。

疑问句和否定句构成：

实义动词：通过助动词：I don't have a pen/a headache.

非实义动词：直接加 not: I haven't a pen /a headache.

2、have 只能作为非实义动词，如果一个词是以完成时态出现的

I have arrived./I haven't arrived.

3、have 只能作为实义动词

I have a holiday./I don't have a holiday.

【Key structures】 关键句型

Exercises C

In which of these sentences can we put the verb got after have?

三种情况：那些时候 have 可以用 have got 取代

① I have a pen. I have got a pen. “有”

② I have a headache. I have got a headache. “得病”

③ have to == have got to

以上三种情况 have == have got

在下面哪几句话中可用 have got 来代替 have?

1 He had a drink before dinner. (1)...不换...

2 Mrs. Sullivan has a lot of money. (2)...换... 有钱

3 He had to leave early. (3)...换...

4 We have had a long conversation. (4)...不换... 进行

5 My mother has a headache. (5)...换... 患病

6 They had a good time at the party. (6)...不换... have a good/long time: 过的愉快(固定短语)

7 This sock has a hole in it. (7)...换...

8 She has to be patient with him. (8)...换... has to (patient ['peɪʃənt] n.病人, 患者
adj. 忍耐的, 耐心的)

9 I have a bath every day. (9)...不换... have a swim, have a bath

10 This room has four windows. (10)...换...

11 He has a farm. (11)...换...

12 We had a letter from Jill yesterday. (12)...不换... have a letter from == receive a letter from 收到

§ Lesson 19 Sold out 票已售完

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★hurry v. 匆忙

in a hurry(n.): 匆忙

If you are not in a hurry. 如果你不急(时间、动作上的)

If you are not busy. 如果你不忙(行为上的)

in no hurry(n.) : 不匆忙

I am in no hurry. 我不急

hurry up(v.) : 快点

go to : 去

hurry to : 匆匆忙忙地去

He goes to school.=He hurries to school.

come in : 进来

hurry in : 匆匆忙忙地进来

go out : 出去

hurry out : 匆匆忙忙地出去

★ticket office 售票处

★pity n. 令人遗憾的事

pity(n.)

What a pity! 真遗憾!

It is a pity.

It is a pity to be grown up. (it 做形式主语)

It is a pity to steal a bicycle.

I am sorry(a.). 我感到很遗憾.

I am sorry to hear that. 听到这个消息我很遗憾

注意 sorry 与 pity 词性上的区别

★exclaim v. 大声说

shout : 大声喊=cry, call out

★return v. 退回

return to : 回来 return to China/Beijing 回到中国/北京 return to you 退回你

return money : 还钱 =pay back, repay

★sadly adv. 悲哀地, 丧气地

涵盖了所有悲哀

【Text】

Lesson 19 Sold out 票已售完

First listen and then answer the question. 听录音, 然后回答以下问题.

When will the writer see the play?

'The play may begin at any moment,' I said.

'It may have begun already,' Susan answered.

I hurried to the ticket office. 'May I have two tickets please?' I asked.

'I'm sorry, we've sold out,' the girl said.

'What a pity!' Susan exclaimed.

Just then, a man hurried to the ticket office.

'Can I return these two tickets?' he asked.

'Certainly,' the girl said.

I went back to the ticket office at once.

'Could I have those two tickets please?' I asked.

'Certainly,' the girl said, 'but they're for next Wednesday's performance. Do you still want them?'

'I might as well have them,' I said sadly.

参考译文

“剧马上就要开演了，”我说。

“也许已经开演了呢，”苏珊回答说。

我匆匆赶到售票处，问：“我可以买两张票吗？”

“对不起，票已售完。”那位姑娘说。

“真可惜！”苏珊大声说。

正在这时，一个男子匆匆奔向售票处。

“我可以退掉这两张票吗？”他问。

“当然可以，”那姑娘说。

我马上又回到售票处。

“我可以买那两张票吗？”我问。

“当然可以，不过这两张票是下星期三的，您是否还要呢？”

“我还是买下的好，”我垂头丧气地说。

【课文讲解】

at any moment : 在任何时候, 随时

at the moment : =now

at that moment : =just then 就在那时

I will help you at any time. 我随时都会帮你

may+动词原形 “可能”

may (must,can't) have done……对过去的推测

must,can't,may+动词原形, 表示对现在、未来的推测

must : 一定, 很可能 She must be a model.

may : 有可能 She may be a model.

can't : 不可能 She can't be a model.

She must(may,can't) have been a model.

I must have watched TV.

I may have watched TV.

I can't have watched TV.

I hurried to the ticket office. 匆忙地

May I do...? 我可以吗?(用“may”表示“我可以吗?”, 只能与第一人称相连)

have 是最活跃的词, 可以指任何的意思.

have coffee : 喝咖啡

have ticket : 买票 (习惯用法)

I'll have/take sth. 我买...(一般不用“buy”, 习惯用法)

sell out : 卖完了

what a pity! 真令人遗憾!

Can(May) I...? 我可以...吗?

Can you...? 你可以...吗?(第二人称不能用“may”来表示“你可以...吗?”, 只能用“can you....?”)

Could I...? 我现在可以...吗?(在问句中更委婉的说法, 比 can I 更礼貌些)

they 指 tickets

for next Wednesday's performance

用名词所有格来取代时间：“...时间的”

用介词 for, 起修饰作用

ticket for+事情

ticket to+地点

May I have a ticket to Tianjing?

May I have a ticket for the sports meeting?

May I have a ticket? (英文中的问句, 常常起礼貌作用)

May I have your name? 比 “What's your name?” 更有礼貌些

still : 还……可以和任意时态连用

still, yet……都和完成时态连用(原先认为)

want them [wɒnθəm] 注意连读

might as well,may as well+动词原形, “还是…好” (无可奈何)

had better : “最好” +动词原形(积极心态)

I might as well take the umbrella with me.

共有的概念 “推测”

十七课 : 对现在的推测

十九课 : 对现在和过去的推测

不在于 must,may,can't 是什么时态, 而在于后面加的是原形还是 have done.

加原形是对现在的推测, 加 have done 对过去的推测.

may : (1)推测 “可能”

(2) “可以” May I do sth.? 我可以做某事吗?

(3) may,might(can,could) 对语气的强弱

I. 除了 “might” “could” 是 “may” “can” 的过去式的概念外

II. 在表达 “可以… 吗?” 时, 可以用 “might” “could” 替换 “may” “can”, 而区别在于语气上更委婉些

III. 在表示 “推测” 句型中, 并不用 “might” “could” 来表示对过去的推测, 只能是 “推测” 的可能性比 “may” “can” 更小些的意思, must->may->might->can't(推测的可能性语气下降)

may as well=might as well “还是…好”

上述所讲是对现在和未来的推测, 对过去的推测要用虚拟语气

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题

2 The writer _____ .

- a.was very pleased to get tickets for next Wednesday's performance
- b.didn't buy tickets for next Wednesday's performance
- c.didn't want tickets for next Wednesday's performance
- d.wasn't too pleased to get tickets for next Wednesday's performance

2. (d)

be pleased to do 对做什么事感到很开心

文中用了 “might as well”

be pleased to. . 高兴

be too pleased to 太高兴

be not too pleased to

too...to...太怎么样以至于没做(too old to learn 太老而不能学)

not too...to...太怎么样以至于还是做了(not too old to learn 不是太老还可以学)

3 The play may begin at any moment. It _____ .

- a.has begun b.won't begin for a long time
c.hasn't begun yet d.began a long time ago
3.(c)

may+ 动词原形; 对现在或未来动作的推测

- a. has begun 已经完成, 说明已经做了
b. won't begin for a long time 好久都不会开始
c. began a long time ago 过去做了

- 7 I might as well have them. I am _____ to have them.
a.very pleased b.very glad c.not very glad d.delighted
7.(c)

- 9 'What a pity!' Susan exclaimed. Susan was _____.
a.pleased b.glad c.sorry d.amused
9.(c)

§ Lesson 20 One man in a boat 独坐孤舟

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★catch v. 抓到

catch fish, catch thief

catch cold : 染上感冒

catch a bus : 赶车

catch one's breath : 握住呼吸

catch sight of = see : 看见

catch fire : 着火

catch one's eyes : 吸引某人注意力

★fisherman ['fɪʃəmən] n. 钓鱼人, 渔民

★boot n. 靴子

a pair of boots

★waste n. 浪费

You are wasting time.

a waste of

It is a waste of time/money/food.

★realize v. 意识到

I realized that I was wrong.

实现, realize one's dream

【Text】

Lesson 20 One man in a boat 独坐孤舟

First listen and then answer the question.听录音，然后回答以下问题。

Why is fishing the writer's favourite sport?

Fishing is my favourite sport. I often fish for hours without catching anything. But this does not worry me. Some fishermen are unlucky. Instead of catching fish, they catch old boots and rubbish. I am even less lucky. I never catch anything -- not even old boots. After having spent whole mornings on the river, I always go home with an empty bag. 'You must give up fishing!' my friends say. 'It's a waste of time.' But they don't realize one important thing. I'm not really interested in fishing. I am only interested in sitting in a boat and doing nothing at all!

参考译文

钓鱼是我特别喜爱的一项运动。我经常一钓数小时却一无所获，但我从不为此烦恼。有些垂钓者就是不走运，他们往往鱼钓不到，却钓上来些旧靴子和垃圾。我的运气甚至还不如他们。我什么东西也未钓到过 -- 就连旧靴子也没有。我总是在河上呆上整整一上午，然后空着袋子回家。“你可别再钓鱼了！”我的朋友们说，“这是浪费时间。”然而他们没有认识到重要的一点，我并不是真的对钓鱼有兴趣，我感兴趣的只是独坐孤舟，无所事事！

【课文讲解】

fish 一般情况下作为不可数名词用

There are a lot of fishes(表示种类)in the sea.

fish(v.) : 钓鱼, 捕鱼

主语通常由名词和代词充当, 以及动词+ing, 如 eating,reading 等等

for+时间……表示一段时间

for hours=for some hours

without(prepos.)

介词后面一定要加宾语, 介词后面的动词一定要加 “-ing”

动词+ing : 1.做主语; 2.做宾语

anything 用在否定句中

without 作为状语而出现, 表示结果状语

He went out without saying any words.

Without asking for money,the boy went to school.

without 后面的动作是主语来做的

(v.)worry sb. 作动词一定要加人作宾语, 翻译时从后往前翻

The house worried me. / My daughter worried me.

(adj.)be worried about 主语为宾语而感到担心

I was never worried about this. = This does not worry me.

instead of 后面的词一定是有没有做的, 可以放在主句后面

without 强调没有做某件事, instead of 强调这件事没做成而做成了另外一件事

instead of: 我原准备做……但是后来做了……

I went to school instead of staying at home.我没呆在家里而是去上学了

I bought books instead of buying dresses.

less+原形 : A is less ... than B (译为不如) more beautiful / less beautiful

spend+时间+在某地 : 在某地度过……时间

after(conj.)+从句, 从句主语必须是主句的主语才能换成下面一种形式

after(prepos.)+名词/动词的 ing 形式

After I go to school,I learned a lot of knowledge. (用一般式表示一个事实, 不用 “went to”)

After going to school,I learned a lot of knowledge.

With an empty bag [wiðæn'emptɪbæg] 注意连读

with: 带着(状语)

without; 没带 I always go home without anything. 什么都没带回家

give up doing sth : 放弃做某事/stop doing

give up smoking.

be interested in 主语对什么感兴趣

在船上 in a boat

not at all 在否定句中起强调作用

【Key structures】 关键句型

细读下面的例句, 特别注意用斜体印出的以-ing 结尾的词.

a 动名词作主语

Eating is always a pleasure. 吃总是一件愉快的事情.

Watching television is my favourite pastime. 看电视是我最喜爱的业余爱好.

Reading in bed is something I always enjoy. 我总喜欢躺在床上看书

b 动名词作宾语

I am very keen on cycling. 我非常喜欢骑自行车.

She is afraid of staying in that house alone. 她害怕单独住在那间屋子里.

He is capable of doing anything. 他能胜任任何事情.

c Note how these sentences have been joined.

注意在以下例句中如何用动名词将两个短句连到一起.

He sat there. He did not say anything. 他坐在那儿, 他什么话也不说.

He sat there without saying anything. 他默默无语地坐在那里.

He turned off the radio. He left the room. 他关掉了收音机, 他离开了房间.

Before leaving the room, he turned off the radio. 离开房间之前, 他关掉了收音机.

He looked at his watch. He hurried to the station. 他看了一下手表. 他匆忙赶到火车站.

After looking at his watch, he hurried to the station. 他看了一下手表之后, 就匆忙赶往火车站.

Or: After having looked at his watch, he hurried to the station.

I must apologize. I interrupted you. 我得表示道歉. 我打断了你的说话(工作).

I must apologize for interrupting you. 由于打断了你的说话(工作), 我得表示道歉.

Or: I must apologize for having interrupted you.

I must apologize. I did not let you know earlier. 我得表示道歉. 我没有早一点让你知道.

I must apologize for not letting you know earlier. 由于没有早点让你知道, 我得表示道歉.

Or: I must apologize for not having let you know earlier.

He congratulated me. I won the competition. 他向我道贺. 我赢得了这次比赛.

He congratulated me on winning the competition. 在我赢得这次比赛之际, 他向我祝贺.

Or: He congratulated me on having won the competition.

动词+ing(非谓语动词)可以做主语和宾语

b. be keen on, be fond of, be interested in, enjoy + 动词 ing : 喜欢做某事

be afraid of

be up to , be capable of (capable ['keɪpəbl] adj. 有能力的, 能干的, 有可能的, 可以...的)

without, instead of

c. I apologize. 我道歉 (apologize [ə'pɒlədʒaɪz] vi. 道歉, 辩白)

apologize for (not) doing sth. 为什么事情而道歉

thank you for listening/attending

for interrupting you 只强调这件事 (doing)

for having interrupted you 强调这个动作先做了, 强调时间 (having done)

以上两者为时间概念不同

not doing 没做某事

congratulate sb. on doing sth. (congratulate [kən'grætjuleit] vt.祝贺, 庆贺, 恭喜)

Exercises C(用括号中的词来连接下列句子, 如需要可对原句进行必要的改动)

1.He went out of the restaurant. (without) He did not pay the bill.

1.without

without prep.+ doing

He went out of the restaurant without paying the bill.

2.She bought a pair of boots. (instead of) She did not get a pair of shoes.

2.instead of

She bought a pair of boots instead of getting a pair of shoes.

=She bought a pair of boots instead of a pair of shoes.

3.She was afraid. (of) She did not spend the night alone.

3.of

She was afraid of spending the night alone.

4.(After) She heard the news. She fainted.

4.after

after+从句; after prep.+doing

After hearing the news,she fainted. (faint [feint] n.昏晕, 昏倒 adj.虚落地, 衰弱的, 软弱的, 无力的, 微弱的, 暗淡的, 模糊的 vi.昏晕, 昏倒, 变得微弱, 变得没气力)

5.Think carefully. (before) Answer my question.

5.before

Think carefully before answering my question.

在回答我的问题之前, 请仔细考虑.

6.(On) I saw the plane coming towards me. I dashed for cover

6.on

as soon as : 一... 就... : as soon as I entered...

the moment +从句 : the moment I had entered

以上两个主语不一定是同一个人

on (prep.)+doing 两个动作必须是同一个人(即主句主语)

On seeing the plane coming towards me, I dashed for cover. (冲进掩护体 [dæʃ] n.少量(搀加物), 冲撞, 破折号, 锐气, 精力, 干劲 vi.猛掷, 冲撞 vt.泼溅, 使猛撞, 搀和, 使破灭, 使沮丧, 匆忙完成)

【Special Difficulties】 难点

细读以下例句 :

a Interested and Interesting. Excited and Exciting.

Fishing is not interesting. I am not really interested in fishing. (11. 7-8)

钓鱼没意思. 我对钓鱼并不真正感兴趣.

The match was very exciting. The crowd got very excited. 比赛非常激动人心. 观众非常激动.

b It's and Its. It's a waste of time. (11. 6-7)

It's (= it is) cold today. It's raining too. 今天天气冷. 而且正在下雨.

The cat drank its milk. 猫喝了它的牛奶.

This engine has lost its power. 这台发动机已失去了动力.

c Realize and Understand. They don't realize ... (1. 7)

I realized he was mad. 我意识到他疯了.

He didn't realize that he had made a mistake. 他没有意识到他犯了一个错误.

I don't understand English. 我不懂英语.

Exercises(选择正确的词填空)

1.I (realized) (understood) he was not telling me the truth.

I realized...意识到

2.This poem is difficult. (It's) (Its) impossible for you to (understand) (realize) (its) (it's) meaning.

...It's impossible...to understand its meaning / for sb 逻辑主语

its 形容词性物主代词 poem ['pəuim, 'pəuem] n.诗, 象诗一样, 美丽的东西

it's = it is; it 作形式主语

3.There was some (excited) (exciting) news on the radio.

3....exciting news...

excited 感动的

exciting 令人激动的

on the radio 在广播上

Eg. : I got news on the radio/on TV/on the telephone/on the line(在线).

4.He is not an (interesting) (interested) person.

....an interesting person

interested 感兴趣的

interesting 有趣的

5.He is an explorer. He leads an (excited) (exciting) life.

...an exciting life explorer ['iks'plɔ:rə, eks-] n.探险家, 探测者, 探测器

lead a life 过着...日子

lead a happy life

Eg.; He leads a poor life.

excited 感到激动的

exciting 令人激动的

如果 -ed,-ing 做形容词即作定语时, 和被修饰词有关, 如题中, 令人激动的生活而非生活感到激动

6.I am not (interesting) (interested) in other people's affairs.

....not interested in ... affairs.

interested 感兴趣的

interesting 有趣的

be interested in 对……感兴趣

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题

2 The writer enjoys _____ .

a.catching fish b.fishing c.doing nothing d.swimming in the river

2. ...enjoys...C

catching fish 抓鱼

fishing 钓鱼

doing nothing 什么都不做

swimming in the river 在河里游泳

enjoying doing sth / enjoy + n.

I enjoy books.

I enjoy reading books.

6 His bag is empty. He has _____ .

a.a empty bag b.an empty bag c.empty bag d.one empty bag

6. ...He has...B

an empty bag

one empty bag

an 指一个, 强调名词

one 一个, 强调 one, 强调数量

I have a garden.

I have one garden.

强调 empty bag

I sent a letter.

I wrote one word.

7 I am only interested in doing nothing. That's _____ I'm interested in.

a.only b.the one c.all d.the only

7. ...That's...C

(that's/the) only 一般加名词

that+从句, 从句往往以特殊疑问词引导

that's why

that's when

that's all 那就是一切 (That's all said.)

That's all(I heard).

That's all I can remember.

the one 指东西, 不指事情

11 He always goes _____ with an empty bag.

a.to home b.to house c.to the house d.home

11. ...D

go home 习惯用法, 最佳答案

go to the house 语法正确

没有规则与语法相提并论时, 语法为大.

当语法与习惯用法相提并论时, 习惯用法为大.

Where are you going?(更习惯这么说)

Where are you going to?

§ Lesson 21 Mad or not? 是不是疯了

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★mad adj. 发疯

sb is mad.

mad 常用于“为...而疯狂”(着迷)

① be mad about

I'm mad about English.

crazy 为...而疯狂的

② be crazy about

③ go insane (insane [in'sein] adj. 患精神病的, 精神患者的, 极愚蠢的)

'right here waiting for you' 歌词中

I slowly go insane./go crazy/go mad/go ?

go+adj. 变得...

They are going bananas. =go crazy=go mad (变疯了)与“go”相连

★reason n. 原因

as+句子

because+句子

for this reason 由于这个理由、原因

For this reason, I was late.

★sum [sʌm] n. 量

a great many + 可数名词复数

a large ...

a great number of + 可数名词复数

plenty of 足够的

a sum of 一笔(加不可数名词) 注意连读

a large sum of 大量的 (large 指数量的大)

a large sum of money

★determined adj. 坚定的, 下决心的

determine [di'tə:min] v. 下定决心

make up one's mind

decide to do sth.

decision : make a decision :

make a decision to do sth.

be determined to do sth. 下定决心做某事

【Text】

Lesson 21 Mad or not? 是不是疯了?

First listen and then answer the question. 听录音, 然后回答以下问题.

Why do people think the writer is mad?

Aeroplanes are slowly driving me mad. I live near an airport and passing planes can be heard night and day. The airport was built years ago, but for some reason it could not be used then. Last year, however, it came into use. Over a hundred people must have been driven away from their homes by the noise. I am one of the few people left. Sometimes I think this house will be knocked down by a passing plane. I have been offered a large sum of money to go away, but I am determined to stay here. Everybody says I must be mad and they are probably right.

参考译文

飞机正在逐渐把我逼疯。我住在一个机场附近，过往飞机日夜不绝于耳。机场是许多年前建的，但由于某种原因当时未能启用。然而去年机场开始使用了。有 100 多人肯定是被噪音逼得已经弃家远去，我是少数留下来的人中的一个。有时我觉得这房子就要被一架飞过的飞机撞倒。他们曾向我提供一大笔钱让我搬走，但我决定留在这儿。大家都说我肯定是疯了，也许他们说的是对的。

【课文讲解】

Mad or not? = mad or not mad(省略)?

or not 在疑问词的后面，表示是还不是，选择概念

Why do people think the writer is mad?

drive sb. mad 逼某人发疯

drive v. 驾驶，开车

You are driving me mad.

The teacher is slowly driving me mad.

night and day 日日夜夜 ([naɪtəndeɪ] 注意连读)

passing planes 过往飞机; pass v. passing 作定语; 正在经过的(路过)

sleeping baby 正在睡觉的小孩

waiting car 正在等待的车

be built

years ago = many years ago

for some reason 由于某个理由

some + 可数名词单数 : some 表示某一个

some+不可数名词 : 一些 some water

some+可数名词复数 : 一些 some books

some+可数名词单数 : 某一 some book

however 用于句首，句中，用逗号隔开

come into use : into prep.; use n. 投入使用; 主动概念，没有被动式

be used 被动表示 被使用

use [ju:s] n. [ju:z] vt. 注意 n 与 vt 的读音不同

over a hundred ...一百多

must have done 过去发生，推测

must have been done 被动

drive 逼

away from 从某地离开/away 离开某地

their homes 他们的家; house 房子/home 家

by the noise 被噪音

over a hundred people 主语

must have been done 谓语

away from 从某地离开; out of somewhere 从某地出来

one of ... 之一

left : leave 过去分词, 表示被留下来的

left 作定语放在被修饰词的后面, 剩下的……东西

I have a bag left.

There is ten cents left in my pocket. Cent [sent] n.(货币单位)分, 分币

will be done 被动语态的将来时态

knock down 撞到

offer ['ɒfə(r); ɔ:fə(r)] : given, give sb. sth./give sth.to sb.双宾语

双宾语的被动语态 : 主语有两种可能; 以 sb.做主语或以 sth.做主语

被动语态的标志 be done

1、give sb. sth.

被动 sb. be given sth.

2、give sth. to sb.

被动 sth. be given to sb.

用离动词最近的宾语做主语

原文句型结构 sb. be offered sth.

to 不定式表示目的

go away : leave

be determined to do sth.下定决心做某事

Everybody says...

从句 I must be mad

they are probably right.他们也许是对的

probably adv.很可能

文章重点

1. 复杂句型结构 : over a hundred people must have been driven away from their homes by the noise.

2. 双宾语的被动语态 : I have been offered a large sum of money to go away.(表目的)

3. drive sb.; away from somewhere; drive sb. mad

4. passing plane; -ing 作定语, 表示正在

【Special Difficulties】 难点

drive v. 开车, 驾驶 (drove, driven, driving)

drive to 开车去往某地

I drove to Tianjing yesterday

drive sb. mad 逼疯

drive sb. away from 把某人赶走

drive sb. out of 把某人赶出去

drive sb. back 撵回去

home & house

home 带有感情色彩的

house 就是房子

Exercise B

用 house(s) 或 home 填空.

1 It was raining heavily and I was glad to get _____ .

2 The government plans to build thousands of _____ next year.

3 He is very rich. He owns a _____ in the country.

4 Most people like to spend their Christmas holidays at _____ .

1...get home 到家 (home adv./house n. get to 表示到达) 2...of houses... 3...a house... 4...at home (at home 固定短语, 在家)

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题

4 It couldn't be used then. It wasn't _____ to use it.

a.able b.allowed c.impossible d.possible

4.it 形式主语

it+be 动词+形容词+to do

翻译时先译 “to” 后面的句子

D 正确

be able to 强调主语能够做某事, 主语必须是人

it+be 动词+表语, be allowed 不能充当表语.

如将 “it” 改为 “people(人)” 就 A,B 都正确

5 Over a hundred people must have been driven away. _____ they were.

a.I think b.I'm sure c.Certain d.Of course

5.must have been done :

对过去的一种被动语态的推测

must have done : 对过去的一种推测

I'm sure 我肯定: I'm sure she is teacher. (sure [ʃuə] adj.对....有把握, 确信某事, 稳当的, 可靠的 adv.的确, 当然)

I think 我认为

Of course 当然 / certain adj 词性不对, 句子前不应放形容词

9 I have been offered a large _____ of money.

a.amount b.number c.some d.piece

9.a large sum of money

a large number of : 不能加不可数名词

A 正确

amount of

an amount of+不可数 : 一大笔

plenty of : 前面是不加 “a/an”, 切记!

10 I am determined to stay here. I _____ stay here.

a.am will to b.want to c.may d.am going to

10.be going to; 打算、计划

want to : 来自心里的一种想, 喜好

喜欢 I want to

§ Lesson 22 A glass envelope 玻璃信封

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★dream v. 做梦, 梦想

have a dream

dream a dream

have a good dream

sweet

Have a good/sweet dream! 祝你做个好梦!

She is daydreaming. 白日梦

daydream : 思想开小差

dream of doing something : 梦想

think of : 想、考虑

dream of : 梦想

I dreamed of flying in the sky.

I dreamed of finding the gold. / I dream of be a good teacher.

dream on 继续做梦, 痴心妄想(做你的梦去吧! 别痴心妄想了!)

dream boat : 梦中情人, 梦寐以求的(物, 人)

Do you have dream boat ? 你有梦中情人吗?

另 : dream that + 从句

★age n. 年龄

teengager : 十几岁的人

adolenscent [ˌædəʊˈlesəns] n. 青春期(一般指成年以前由 13 至 15 的发育期)

★channel n. 海峡

★throw v. 扔, 抛

threw thrown

throw away 扔掉

【Text】

Lesson 22 A glass envelope 玻璃信封

First listen and then answer the question. 听录音, 然后回答以下问题.

How did Jane receive a letter from a stranger?

My daughter, Jane, never dreamed of receiving a letter from a girl of her own age in Holland. Last year, we were travelling across the Channel and Jane put a piece of paper with her name and address on it into a bottle. She threw the bottle into the sea. She never thought of it again, but ten months later, she received a letter from a girl in Holland. Both girls write to each other regularly now. However, they have decided to use the post office. Letters will cost a little more, but they will certainly travel faster.

参考译文

我的女儿简从未想过会接到荷兰一位同龄姑娘的来信。去年, 当我们横渡英吉利海峡时, 简把写有她姓名和住址的一张纸条装进了一只瓶子, 又将瓶子扔进了大海。此后她就再没去想那只瓶子。但 10 个月以后, 她收

到了荷兰一位姑娘的来信。现在这两位姑娘定期通信了。然而她们还是决定利用邮局。这样会稍微多花点钱，但肯定是快得多了。

【课文讲解】

同位语 My daughter Jane

of one's own age : He is boy of my own age.

with 放在名词后面做定语

I have a bag with books in it. ("in it" 不能省略)

with 放在句子后面做状语用

think of : 考虑 dream of : 梦想

write to : 给某人写信 write (a letter) to me

each other : 相互一往往强调两者之间的相互 ([i:tʃ 'ʌðə] 注意连读)

one another : 强调三或三者以上的相互

will cost will travel

一旦用 cost, 主语一定是物

something cost somebody

more : 即可做形容词, 又可做代词 : give me more 再给我一点

文中的 "more" 为代词 = more money

a little 可以修饰比较级 : 稍微

much more : 多得多

It's a little hotter. It's much hotter.

It's expensive. That is more expensive.

That is a little more expensive.

That is much more expensive.

But they will certainly travel faster.

也可 : but they will certainly travel much faster.

much faster 快的多

【Key structures】 关键句型

Verbs followed by of, from, in and on 后面可跟 of, from, in 和 on 的动词

We can put of, from, in, or on after certain verbs:

of, from, in, on 可以用在某些动词的后面 :

Jane never dreamed of receiving a letter... (11. 1-2)

She never thought of it again. (11. 4-5)

She received a letter from a girl in Holland. (11. 5-6)

Use this list for reference:

以下搭配表可供参考 :

a OF: accuse, approve, assure, beware, boast(or about), complain(or about), consist, convince(or about), cure, despair, dream(or about), expect(or from), hear(or from), be/get rid, smell, suspect, think(or about), tired., warn (or against).

后接 of 的动词 : 控告; 赞成; 让……放心; 谨防; 夸耀; 埋怨; 由……组成; 使信服; 治愈; 丧失……希望; 幻想; 期望; 听到……消息; 摆脱; 闻到; 对……猜疑; 思考; 对……感到厌烦; 警告……有危险.

b FROM: borrow, defend(or against), demand(or of), differ, dismiss, draw(SD 64), emerge, escape, excuse(or for), hinder, prevent, prohibit, protect(or against), receive, separate, suffer.

后接 from 的动词 : 从……借; 保护……使免于; 向……要求; 有别于; 解雇; 从……中得出(参见第 64 课难点); 从……出现; 从……逃出; 允许不……; 阻止; 妨碍; 不准许; 向……提抗议; 接到; 把……分开; 受难.

c IN: believe, delight, employ(ed), encourage, engaged., experienced., fail, help(or with), include, indulge, instruct, interest(ed), invest, involved., persist, share.

后接 in 的动词：信仰；喜欢；从事；鼓励；正做；在……有经验；没有尽到；帮助；包括；沉醉；教导；对……感兴趣；投资；卷入；坚持；分享。

d ON: act, based., call(SD 34), comment, concentrate, congratulate, consult(or about), count, decide, depend, economize, embark, experiment, insist, lean(or against), live, operate, perform(or in), pride(oneself), rely, vote(on a motion; for someone), write(or about).

后接 on 的动词：遵守；在……基础上；拜访(参见第 34 课难点)；评论；集中于；祝贺；商量；依赖；决定；依靠；节约；从事；尝试；坚持；倚靠于……；靠……为生；起作用；扮演；为……感到自豪；依靠；对……表决(投……的票)；写……的事。

Exercise 练习

Supply the missing words(of, from, in or on)without referring to the above lists as far as possible:

用 of, from, in 或 on 填空，尽可能不核对以上搭配表：

- 1 I withdrew a lot of money _____ the bank yesterday.
- 2 I refuse to comment _____ his work.
- 3 The waiter's tip is included _____ the bill.
- 4 He congratulated me _____ having got engaged.
- 5 This warm coat will protect you _____ the cold.
- 6 Did anything emerge _____ your discussion?
- 7 I dreamt _____ you last night.
- 8 You can never rely _____ him to be punctual.
- 9 Nothing will prevent him _____ succeeding.
- 10 Are you interested _____ music?
- 11 I suppose I can count _____ you for help _____ this matter?
- 12 Beware _____ the dog.
- 13 He persisted _____ asking questions.
- 14 I insist _____ your telling me the truth.
- 15 It took me a long time to get rid _____ him.
- 16 Do you mean to say you have never heard _____ Beethoven?
- 17 I separated them _____ each other because they were fighting.
- 18 They can only cure him _____ his illness if they operate _____ him.
- 19 You can depend _____ me.
- 20 I haven't accused him _____ anything, but I suspect him _____ having taken it.
- 21 Whatever made you think _____ such a thing?
- 22 We expect a great deal _____ you, Smith.
- 23 My hands smell _____ soap.
- 24 They differ _____ each other so much.
- 25 He invested a lot of money _____ shipping.
- 26 The film was based _____ a novel by Dickens.
- 27 Don't lean _____ that shelf! You'll regret it.
- 28 She often suffers _____ colds.
- 29 We have embarked _____ a new scheme.
- 30 I believe _____ taking my time.
- 31 Jones was dismissed _____ the firm.
- 32 They began by experimenting _____ rats.

- 33 Please concentrate _____ what you are doing.
- 34 She prides herself _____ her clean house.
- 35 The climber failed _____ his attempt to reach the summit.
- 36 Many people escaped _____ prisons during the last five years.
- 37 We must economize _____ fuel.
- 38 He's never done any work. He lives _____ his mother.
- 39 He was employed _____ a factory before he joined the army.
- 40 And what does this horrible drink consist _____ ?
- 41 I shall certainly act _____ your advice.
- 42 Don't write _____ the desk!
- 43 You should not boast _____ your success.
- 44 You must encourage him _____ his efforts.
- 45 He should be instructed _____ his duties.
- 46 Two or three people were involved _____ the accident.
- 47 Children should be prohibited _____ smoking.
- 48 I can assure you _____ my support.
- 49 Do you approve _____ hunting?
- 50 I despair _____ ever teaching him anything!
- 51 Has this play ever been performed _____ the stage?
- 52 I warned him _____ the danger, but he wouldn't listen to me.
- 53 How much have you borrowed _____ me already?
- 54 He delights _____ annoying me.

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题

- 3 Jane never dreamed _____ a letter.
a.to receive b.to receiving c.of receive d.that she would receive
3.dream of/dream that...

(d)

- 8 We were travelling across the Channel. We went on a _____ across the Channel.
a.sail b.travel c.trip d.run

8. go on a trip 进行旅行

(c)

- 9 Jane wrote her name and address on a _____ of paper.
a.lump b.bar c.tube d.sheet

9.(d)

a lump of paper : 一团纸

a tube of paper : 一桶(管)纸

a bar of : 一条, 一块

a piece of paper/a sheet of paper 一张纸

sheet ([ʃi:t] n.(一)片, (一)张, 薄片, 被单, 被褥) 注意读音与 shit [ʃit] 的区别

- 10 Both girls often write to each other now. They write _____.
a.frequently b.occasionally c.sometimes d.now and again

10.(a)

often = frequently

occasionally(偶尔) = sometimes(有时) = now and again(时而, 不时)

7 The girls write _____ regularly now.

a.to one another b.the one to the other c.each to other d.to other

7.(a)

one another(三者) = each other(两者) 互相

They love each other.

§ Lesson 23 A new house 新居

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★complete v. 完成 (喜欢与建筑工程连用)

finish

complete the building

finish/complete homework

finish/complete doing sth.某事做完了

I finish reading a book.

complete(adj.): 完全的, 完整的

《鲁迅全集》中的“全集”就用“complete”

★modern adj. 新式的, 与以往不同的(真正会译为: 现代的)

现代的 modern history/art: 现代史/ 现代艺术

modernization [ˌmɒdənaɪ'zeɪʃən] n.现代化

★strange adj. 奇怪的, 陌生的(表示因为对一个东西不熟悉而觉得奇怪)

stranger: 陌生人 (注意['streɪndʒə] 应读成['sɪdreɪndʒə])

strange: 奇怪的, 陌生的

be strange to sth. 引申为: 对……不习惯, 对……陌生

★district n. 地区 行政划分的区域, 城市内的, 如北京的海淀区: Haidian District

area 地段

region 地区 地带 (['ri:dʒən] n.区域, 地方, (世界上某个特定的)地区, (艺术,科学等的)领域, (大气, 海水等的)层)

【Text】

Lesson 23 A new house 新居

First listen and then answer the question.听录音, 然后回答以下问题.

Why is the new house special?

I had a letter from my sister yesterday. She lives in Nigeria. In her letter, she said that she would come to England next year. If she comes, she will get a surprise. We are now living in a beautiful new house in the country. Work on it had begun before my sister left. The house was completed five months ago. In my letter, I told her that she could stay with us. The house has many large rooms and there is a lovely garden. It is a very modern house, so it looks strange to some people.

It must be the only modern house in the district.

参考译文

昨天我收到了姐姐的一封信，她住在尼日利亚。在信中她说她明年将到英国来。如果她来了，她会感到非常惊奇了。我们现在住在乡间的一栋漂亮的新住宅里。这栋房子在我姐姐离开之前就已动工了，是在5个月以前竣工的。我在信中告诉她，她可以和我们住在一起。这栋房子里有许多房间，还有一个漂亮的花园。它是一栋非常现代化的住宅，因此在有些人看来很古怪。它肯定是这个地区唯一的一栋现代化住宅。

【课文讲解】

get a surprise : 感到惊奇

to one's surprise

shock : I get a shock.

a beautiful new house

离一个名词最近的词跟该词的关系最密切，冠词肯定是放在最前面的

spare old cloth

Eg: a big red flag 大红旗 (flag [flæg] n.旗, 标记 v.标记)

work 后面要加名词的话一定要加 on

【Special Difficulties】 难点

Exercise(用 it 或 there 填空)

1. _____ is a pity that he could not come.
2. _____ is a bus that leaves in ten minutes.
3. _____ were some men digging up the road outside my house.
4. Look at those clouds. I think _____ will be a thunderstorm.
5. _____ is unusual for him to be late.
6. _____ has been very cold this year.
7. _____ has been no news of him.
8. I am sure _____ will be fine tomorrow.
9. After dinner _____ will be a long discussion on politics.
10. When will _____ be convenient for you to come?

1. It is a pity that...

2. there

3. there : There+be+sb.+doing+地点 : 某地有某人正在做某事(典型句型)

digging up: 挖出, 找出

4. there : 在表示天气的时候, 后面如果是动词或形容词, 用 it, 如果是名词, 用 there be.

It is raining(动词)/It is cold(形容词)

There be +名词 : There is a rain. 那儿有一场雨

thunderstorm ['θʌndəstɔ:m] n.雷暴, 大雷雨

5. it 形式主语

6. it

7. there

8. it

9. there on politics 关于政治 (politics ['pɒlɪtiks] n.政治, 政治学, 政纲, 政见)

10.it

要求背诵 : When will it be convenient for you? 什么时候对你来说最方便?

§ Lesson 24 If could be worse 不幸中之万幸

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★manager n. 经理(用能力, 办事的)

boss : 有钱

manager : 干事

head : 表示 ①重要, ②关系亲密的人物

★upset adj. 不安(事发后)

nervous : (事发前)

★sympathetic [ˌsɪmpəˈθetɪk] adj. 表示同情的

★complain v. 抱怨

complain of/about to sb.(对某人/向某人抱怨)

I complained of my salary to my boss.

★wicked adj. 很坏的, 邪恶的

可用 “evil” 替代

★contain v. 包含, 内装(强调用容器装)

container : 集装箱

contain : 用容器装 The cup contains water./ The bag contains books.

include :

★honesty n. 诚实

honest(adj.)

honestly(adv.)

【Text】

Lesson 24 It could be worse 不幸中之万幸

First listen and then answer the question.听录音, 然后回答以下问题.

Had the writer's money been stolen?

I entered the hotel manager's office and sat down. I had just lost \$50 and I felt very upset. 'I left the money in my room,' I said, 'and it's not there now.' The manager was sympathetic, but he could do nothing. 'Everyone's losing money these days,' he said. He started to complain about this wicked world but was interrupted by a knock at the door. A girl came in and put an envelope on his desk. It contained \$50. 'I found this outside this gentleman's room,' she said. 'Well,' I said to the manager, 'there is still some honesty in this world!'

参考译文

我走进饭店经理的办公室, 坐了下来. 我刚刚丢了 50 英镑, 感到非常烦恼. “我把钱放在房间里,”我说, “可

现在没有了。“经理深表同情，但却无能为力。”现在大家都在丢钱，“他说。他开始抱怨起这个邪恶的世道来，却被一阵敲门声打断了。一个姑娘走了进来，把一个信封放在了他桌上。它里面装着 50 英镑。“这是我在这位先生的房门外捡到的，”她说。“是啊，”我对那位经理说，“这世界上还是有诚实可言的！”

【课文讲解】

The hotel manager's office

telephone number 电话号码，名词可以修饰名词

the village fair : 乡村集市 (the fair of the village/the fair in the village)

feel+(adj.): upset 不安(事发后); nervous : (事发前，过程中)

not any=no

I could do nothing to help you. 我没有办法帮你，我无能为力

I could do nothing for you.

Can you help me?

Sorry, I could do nothing for you.

Certainly.

Of course.

It's my pleasure.

用进行时态取代一般现在时，在英文是一种修辞方法，表示不满，一种感情。

start to do/start doing : 两者无区别

a knock at the door (敲门声) / knock at the door (敲门，指动作)

A girl came in and put an envelope on the desk.

A girl came in with an envelope and put it on the desk.

outside(prep.)(adv.) 文中为介词

gentleman ['dʒentlmən] n. 阁下，先生，有身分的人，绅士，男厕所，男盥洗室

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题

4 He could do nothing. He couldn't do _____ .

a.something b.nothing c.anything d.everything

4...c...

I can do nothing for you.

nothing=not any thing; not any=no

something, 肯定句

nothing 和 not 不可能同时并存

everything

6 Where did she find the money? _____ the room.

a.Outside b.Out of c.Out d.Without

6.

outside adv&prep. He is outside./He is outside the school.

out of : 从...到外面去，一定要和有实在意义的动词连用，get/go/come out of

out : 在...外面，adv 不会加名词

10 He lost his money. His money was _____ .

a.losing b.missing c.going away d.disappearing

10.

lose : 丢失; sb lose sth 人丢失东西

miss : 怀念, 错过, 丢失(missing adj.) My keys are lost/missing.

I lose my book/My book was lost/is missing./be missed.

人丢了只能用 missing : My child is missing.

missing boy 失踪的孩子

go away 离开(人走), something was gone

go : 走

be gone: 不见了, 《Gone with wind》 : 《飘》(随风而逝), My book is gone. 我的书不见了

disappear: 不见了(瞬间), 不及物动词, 没有被动语态, 也很少用进行时态

be disappearing 慢慢的不见了

His money disappeared.

lose sth./sth. be lost

sth is missing

sth is gone.

sth/sb. disappear/disappeared : “dispear” 是不及物动词, 无被动语态.

Unit 2

【Key structures】 关键句型

word order in compound statements 并列句的语序

a Do you remember the six parts of a simple statement?

b We can join simple statements together to make compound statements

and

but : 但是

so : 因此

yet : 然而, adv. Have you finished yet? (“yet” 原来的理解 : 放在句末或句中, 与否定句, 疑问句相连, 并且与现在完成时用得比较多)

yet=but 放在两个句子间, 起转折作用

or: 或者, 否则, Hurry up ,you will be late/Hurry up,or you will be late.

both...and...不但...而且

either...or...要么...要么... ,either you or I

neither...nor..., neither you nor I

not only...but...as well : 不但...而且... (“as well” 可省略)

not only...but also...

§ Lesson 25 Do the English speak English? 英国人讲的是英语吗?

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★railway n. 铁路

railroad : 铁路

railway/railroad station : 火车站

★porter n. 搬运工

★several 几个

some: 一些, 既可以修饰可数, 又可以修饰不可数

several: 只能修饰可数=a number of(一些)

a great number of : 大量的

some time: 一段时间 some time ago 一段时间以前

sometime: 某时 : I will defeat you sometime. (总有一天我将打败你)

sometimes: 有时, 偶尔

some times : (不存在这种说法)

several times : 许多次

★foreigner n. 外国人

★wonder v. 感到奇怪

wonder n. 奇观 : It's a wonder./seven wonders(七大奇观)

wonderful adj 极好的

wonder ① wonder at sth.对...事情感奇怪: I wonder at this.

② want to know 想知道: I wonder

间接引语的疑问句 : 一般疑问句用 if/whether 引导, 特殊疑问句用特殊疑问词引导

wonder+if : 是否: I wonder if you have any spare time.

wonder+特殊疑问词: I wonder what time it is.

所有的从句都用陈述句的句序, 陈述句句序 : 主语在动词前面

I wonder why you are late.

I wonder where you are going.

I wondered where you were going.

Could you tell me how to get to?

I wondered how to get there.

no wonder : 难怪

wonder n. : 奇观

wonderful : 极好的

wonder v.感到奇怪, wonder at

wonder : want to know : 想知道

I wonder if you have friend.

I wonder how many friends you have.

【Text】

Lesson 25 Do the English speak English? 英国人讲的是英语吗?

First listen and then answer the question.听录音, 然后回答以下问题.

Why does the writer not understand the porter?

I arrived in London at last. The railway station was big, black and dark. I did not know the way to my hotel, so I asked a porter. I not only spoke English very carefully, but very clearly as well. The porter, however, could not understand me. I repeated my question several times and at last he understood. he answered me, but he spoke neither slowly nor clearly. 'I am a foreigner,' I said. Then he spoke slowly, but I could not understand him. My teacher never spoke English like that! The porter and I looked at each other and smiled. Then he said something and I understood it. 'You'll soon learn English!' he said. I wonder. In England, each person speaks a different language. The English understand each other, but I don't understand them! Do they speak English?

参考译文

我终于到了伦敦。火车站很大，又黑又暗。我不知道去饭店的路该怎么走，于是向一个搬运工打听。我的英语讲得不但非常认真，而且咬字也非常清楚。然而搬运工却不明白我的话。我把问话重复了很多遍。他终于听懂了。他回答了，但他讲得既不慢也不清楚。“我是个外国人，”我说。于是他说得慢了，可我还是听不懂。我的老师从来不那样讲英语！我和搬运工相视一笑。接着，他说了点什么，这回我听懂了。“您会很快学会英语的！”他说。我感到奇怪。在英国，人们各自说着一种不同的语言。英国人之间相互听得懂，可我却不懂他们的话！他们说的是英语吗？

【课文讲解】

arrive in : 到达, reach, get

When will you arrive?

arrive vi. 不及物动词

reach vt. 后面一定要加宾语

arrive at : 小地点, arrive in: 大地点

When will you reach(arrive in) BeiJing?

get to+宾语 : 到达

When will you get to BeiJing?

How can I get there?

get home: 到家, get there : 到那

home/there 都是副词，副词跟动词连用的时候不需要加介词，“arrive”也一样，但一般不用“reach home/there”，如一定要这样写则把“home”看作名词，“there”当代词看，不作副词看

I arrived at last. 我终于到了

并列的表达方式中前面都是用逗号隔开，最后两个用 and 连接

black : 颜色(建筑物). The room is black.

dark : without light. 没有光线 : It is dark.

the way to : 通往...路

Can you tell me the way to...

I don't know the way to... Can you tell me how to get there?

I don't know the way to the school and where is it?

I know the way.

know sth. well: 很熟悉

I know the boy well.

so : 连词，把并列句连到一起

如果有两个谓语动词，加连词，成为并列

not only...but...as well : 不但...而且...

并列连词，什么东西并列连接什么

I can speak Chinese. I can speak English.

I can speak not only Chinese but English as well.

I not only sing but dance as well.

Not only you but also I will go there. 主语并列(一般不这么用)

not only, 喜欢放在动词的前面

一般遇到实义动词和非实义动词的时候，习惯放在两者之间

I can not only speak Chinese but English as well. (更习惯的说法)

I not only like my mother but my father as well.

however, 可以直接放在句首，也可以放在句子中间

several times 不用 some times

neither...nor... 即不...也不...

I speak neither Japanese nor English.

like that: 作状语, 象那样

each other : 互相

soon, 强调时间上的快

I wonder : 感到奇怪

each(every) person : 每个人

speak English not only very carefully but very clearly.

To learn English well is to study hard.

但在口语中 : To learn English well is study hard. (没 to)

提高口语和听力的方式 :

1. 在读书的时候不能 very clearly, 注意读音规则
2. carefully 随遇而安, 以 understand 为准, 学会重复
3. 多听多说

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题

5 He didn't speak slowly and he didn't speak clearly _____ .

a.neither b.either c.too d.nor

5. ... b

not 和 neither 不会连用

一句话中不允许出现两个否定句

too 是跟肯定句连的、either 是跟否定句连的

8 I repeated my question several times. I repeated it _____ times.

a.much b.a number of c.only a few d.three

8. ...b

several = some = a number of

much 后面不加可数名词

没有 only a few 这个短语

quite a few 相当多的

9 At last he understood. He understood _____ .

a.in the end b.at least c.lastly d.at the finish

9. ...a

at last 最后、最终

in the end

lastly 最新的、最近的一段时间

at least 至少

【Key structures】 关键句型

Exercises C join these sentences with the words in brackets

用括号中的斜体字连接以下句子 :

- 1 I knocked at the door. He did not open it. (but)
- 2 He went on holiday. I went on holiday. (Both...and)
- 3 He must be mad. He must be very wise. (either...or)

1. I knocked at the door, but he did not open it.

一定要加 “but”，一句话只能有一个主语和谓语，要有两个就必须要有连词

2. go on holiday 去度假

Both he and I went on holiday.

3. He must be either mad or very wise.

wise [waɪz] adj. 英明的，明智的，慎虑的，聪明的，博学的，明白的，贤明的，狡猾的

vi. 知道 vt. 告诉，劝导

n. 方法，方式

【Composition】作文

用括号中的词连接下列句子：

1 My sister went shopping. I went shopping. (Both...and)

2 We got very tired. We got very hungry. (not only...but...as well)

3 It was three o'clock. We could not get lunch. We had a cup of tea. (and...so)

1. Both my sister and I went shopping.

go shopping 购物

2. We not only got very tired, but very hungry as well.

3. It was three o'clock and we couldn't get lunch, so we had a cup of tea.

It was.....that 强调结构，这句话是强调时间

【语法精粹】P5

1. They _____ the trip until the rain stopped.

A. continued B. didn't continue ✓

C. hadn't continued D. would continue

until 是前面和后面用一般过去是和过去完成时都对

但是我们在一般情况下两个都用一般过去时

2. The local peasants gave the soldiers clothes and food without which they ___A___ of hunger and cold. (without 在这里表示条件，你知道吗?)

A. would die B. will die C. would be dead D. would have died

这是关于虚拟语气的题

3. It was not until then that I came to know that the earth _____ around the sun.

A. moved B. has moved C. will move D. moves. ✓

只要是真理都用一般现在时

It was that 是强调结构，首先将 “It was...that” 去掉，再将 “not” 移到 “that” 后面的句子中。

分析句子时后半句改为：I didn't come to know that the earth around the sun until then.

until then 是在那个时候之前

His father did not leave until he returned home.

变成强调句形式：It was not until he returned home that his father left.

I don't get up until lunch time.

变成强调句形式：It is not until lunch time that I get up.

4. When all those present (到场者) _____ he begin his lecture.

(重点题)

A. sit B. set C. seated D. were seated ✓

seat 做动词的时候两种情况

1. seat sb 2. somebody be seated

somebody sit down

sit vi.

seat vt.

5. If I had had time, I would have written to you. But in fact I ____ not.

A. have B. would have C. had D. had had

这是虚拟语气题

✓

not only...but...as well 不但...而且...

并列句的连词

neither...nor... 既不...也不...

either ...or... 或者...或者...

both...and... 两者都

II 复数主语：

1. 当主语由 and 或 both...and 连接，通常采用复数谓语动词。

Both the girl and the boy are his friends.

Both you and I are good students.

III 单，复数的灵活运用：

1. 当主语由 neither...nor, either...or, not only...but also 或 or 连接时，谓语动词与 nor, or, but also 后面的词一致，在英语语法中，这被称之为“就近原则”

离动词最近的名词是单数，整个主语就视为单数

离动词最近的名词是复数，整个主语就视为复数

Neither you nor I am a good student.

Neither he nor I am going to the airport.

Both he and I are going to the airport.

Not only Mary but also her parents have gone abroad.

【Key structures】 关键句型

He finished lunch and went into the garden.

and 连接的是两个谓语动词

however 用在句号的后面，单独成句，于前边的句子只有意思上的承接，没有语法上的承接，语法上的承接表转折只能用 but

Both he and I teach English.

He teaches both English and French.

Either you or I must tell him.

Neither he nor I speak English.

Not only wash the dishes but sweep the floor as well.

【Letter Writing】 书信写作

St. 是 Street 的缩略

逗号在地址里表示前者属于后者

grade one 一年级 class one 一班

I am in class 1, Grade 1.

在日期里, 月和日之间不需要逗号, 但在年代之前要有逗号

日期是以序数词出现的

月份一定要是英语字母

February the fourth

the fourth of February

Haidian District, (海淀区)

Beijing,

China. (最后一个地点要打上句号)

【Summary Writing】摘要写作

1. You can write the answer in three whole sentences.

第二单元重点就是把句子用连词连成并列的部分

I arrived at the railway station in London, and I asked the porter the way to my hotel, but He didn't understand me.

§ Lesson 26 The best art critics 最佳艺术评论家

【New words and expressions】生词和短语

两个同样的音连在一起时, 前面的音声去不读. 如: upside down.

★art n. 艺术

art student 艺术系的学生

English student 学英语的学生

student of England: 英国学生

artist ['ɑ:tɪst] 艺术家

artiste [ɑ:'tɪst] 艺人 注意读音的不同

art gallery 艺术画廊 (gallery ['gæləri] n. 长廊, 游廊; 画廊)

black art 巫术 ([blækɑ:t] 注意连读)

★critic n. 评论家

criticise v. 批评, 批判 (主要指批判, 但不完全是责备的意思)

criticism ['krɪtɪsɪz(ə)m] n. 批评, 批判

critical adj. 挑剔的

critically adv. 爱挑剔的

He criticised my painting.

You are critical.

★paint v. 画

draw a picture 用线条画

paint a picture 强调油画

painting

oil painting 油画

Chinese painting 中国国画

Beijing opera 国戏, 京剧

★pretend v. 假装

pretend to do something

When his mother came in, the baby pretended to go to sleep.

pretend that...

★pattern n. 图案

pattern drills

pattern 模式, 典范

★curtain n. 窗帘, 幕布

★material n. 材料

listening material 听力材料

★appreciate v. 鉴赏 = understand and enjoy

enjoy 欣赏

enjoy the music

I like poems.

I love...

I enjoy...得到乐趣

I appreciate... 程度一个比一个深

appreciate something

appreciate doing sth 我很喜欢做某事

I appreciate your help. 我很感激你的帮助

★notice v. 注意到

pay attention to 思想上的注意

notice : 细节上的注意, 往往是别人没注意的东西, 你注意到了, 细节上的东西

I notice the boy.

I notice *the beauty spot*. (美人痣)

★whether conj. 是否

If 在表示“是否”的时候可以被 **whether** 所取代

If 在表示“如果”的时候不可以用 **whether** 取代

If it will rain...(不是条件状语从句, 故可以用将来时 will)

Whether it will rain...

Whether it will rain or not...(可以加 “not”)

I wondered if it will rain.(不加 “not”)

Whether he is mad or not. / whether his mad.

★hang v. 悬挂, 吊

hang hanged hanged 绞死, 吊死

hang hung hung 悬挂

The thief was hanged.

The coat was hung.

★critically adv. 批评地

★upside down 上下颠倒地 两个同样的发音连在一起时，前边的音省去不读

【Text】

Lesson 26 The best art critics 最佳艺术评论家

First listen and then answer the question. 听录音，然后回答以下问题。

Who is the student's best critic?

I am an art student and I paint a lot of pictures. Many people pretend that they understand modern art. They always tell you what a picture is 'about'. Of course, many pictures are not 'about' anything. They are just pretty patterns. We like them in the same way that we like pretty curtain material. I think that young children often appreciate modern pictures better than anyone else. They notice more. My sister is only seven, but she always tells me whether my pictures are good or not. She came into my room yesterday.

'What are you doing?' she asked.

'I'm hanging this picture on the wall,' I answered. 'It's a new one. Do you like it?'

She looked at it critically for a moment. 'It's all right,' she said, 'but isn't it upside down?'

I looked at it again. She was right! It was!

参考译文

我是个学艺术的学生，画了很多画。有很多人装成很懂现代艺术的样子，总是告诉你一幅画的“意思”是什么。当然，有很多画是什么“意思”也没有的。它们就是些好看的图案，我们喜爱它们就像我们喜欢漂亮的窗帘布一样。我觉得小孩子们往往比任何人都更能欣赏现代绘画，他们观察到的东西更多。我的妹妹只有7岁，但她总能说出我的画是好还是坏。昨天她到我房里来了。

【课文讲解】

I am an art student [aɪiæmænɑ:t] 注意连读，增加了[i] 的音

They always tell you what a picture is about.

tell you 后是 what 引导的宾语从句

just 仅仅，表强调

We like them...

them 指 pictures

pretty curtain material 漂亮的窗帘布

In the same way that

In a way 以某种方式

The son walked in the same way that his father walked.

I love you in the same way that I love my father.

I love you just in the same way that I love money.

make an appointment ([ə'pɔɪntmənt] n)

change an appointment

When will it be convenient for you?

I like something.

I like something very much.

I like something better.

I like something best.

I like water best.

I like water better.

I like water very much.

else ① 跟在 anyone, anything 等不定代词的后面 ② 疑问代词如 who else, what else

They can appreciate modern arts best.

better than anyone else 比其他任何人(表示最高级的含义)

The teacher is the tallest.

The teacher is taller than anyone else. (“else” 不能少, 把主语从 “anyone” 中排除, 比中文更严密)

The book is more expensive than anything else.

They notice more.

Whether ...or not= if

The windows in the wall /picture on the wall 注意介词的不同

Isn't it upside down? =It's upside down. 是否定疑问句, 没有否定的意思, 起强调作用, 表达一种情绪

It isn't a fine day.

It is bad weather.

Is it bad weather?

Isn't it bad weather?

作用 **Aren't you lucky?** 你真幸运

否定疑问句起肯定

Isn't it a boy?

【Composition】作文

Rewrite these sentences using the correct verbs and joining words:

改写以下句子, 选用正确的动词和连词:

I (looked at) (watched) the picture (but) (and) I could not (understand) (realize) it. It was in black and white and was (called) (named) 'Trees and snow'. I could see (neither) (not only) trees (or) (nor) snow.

I looked at the picture. 不用 watch 是因为它不是移动的

call 是称之为; name 是给它取一个名字

It was in black and white. 黑白色

【Letter writing】书信写作

信头上是没有名字的

门牌号码应该放在最前边

【Key structures】关键句型

appear 的反义词 disappear

resemble 相似, 类似

和人的情绪相连, 跟人的状态相连, 跟人的思维活动相连的动词都不用进行时态.

Appear, appreciate, believe, feel, forget, hear, like, look, like, notice, remember, resemble, see, think(that), understand 等等

【Speech marks】引号

引号在英文当中第一次出现是单引号，第二次出现是双引号，英文当中的书名号用引号来替代

注意事项：

a The speech marks are above the line. They go outside all other marks like commas(,) full stops(.) and question marks (?).

引号位于一行之上，它们应在句尾其他标点符号——如逗号、句号、问号——之外。

b The speaker's first word begins with a capital letter.

引语的第一个词以大写字母开头。

c Words like 'said' and 'asked' are followed by a comma. We put a full stop after them only when they come at the end of a sentence.

在 said, asked 等词后面用逗号，只有当它们位于句尾时，才在它们的后面用句号。

d When words like 'said' or 'asked' interrupt the speaker, the second half of the sentence begins with a small letter.

当 said, asked 等词置于引语之间时，句子的后半部分以小写字母开始。

e We begin a new paragraph each time a new speaker is introduced.

当一个新的说话人开始讲话时，要另起一个段落。

【Summary writing】摘要写作

5. Do young children appreciate modern paintings better than others or not? Do they notice more or not?(not only...but)

Young children appreciate modern paintings better than others.

They notice more.

not only ...but ...as well.

as well 放在句子结尾，且可以省略

Young children 是共同的部分

Young children not only appreciate modern paintings better than others, but notice more.

not only...but...

连接的是两组谓语动词

7. Had he hung it upside down, or had he hung it the right way up? Did she notice this immediately or not?(and)

or 否则，或者

upside down 与 the right way up 意思相反

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题

4 What is it about? Tell me _____ .

a.what is it about b.what it is about c.what about it is d.what about is it

考特殊疑问句的间接引语是什么

陈述句的间接引语以 that 引导

What time is it?

How old are you?

变成以 He asked me . 形式

He asked me what time it was.

He asked me how old I was.

疑问句的直接引语变间接引语要注意

(1) 特殊疑问句由特殊疑问词引导

(2) 时态.

主句的谓语动词是过去时时, 其从句的谓语动词应为相对应的时态.

(3) 疑问句变成间接引语时, 要变成陈述句语序.

陈述句语序: 主语在动词前边.

(4) 人称的变化

Is it nine o'clock? /He asked me.

if/whether 是否

He asked me if/whether it was nine o'clock.

tell me 要求间接引语

Tell me what it is about.

注意使用陈述句语序.

What about 中 about 是介词, 后接名词或动词的 ing 形式, 不接句子

What about it?

Tell me 后要求陈述句语序

5 She tells me _____ my pictures are good or not.

a.weather b.that c.if d.unless

5.没有一个答案是对的

主句为一般现在时, 从句可以为任意形式

or not 是否, that 表示肯定

直接引语变间接引语的连接词有 3 种:

(1)陈述句中的 that;

(2)一般疑问句中的 if/whether;

(3)特殊疑问句中的特殊疑问词

if 不可以与 or not 连用

unless conj 除外, 如果不(不能用于间接引语连接)

You will fail unless you work harder.你如果不更加努力工作, 你将失败.

6 Do you like my picture? It's _____ .

a.a new b.one new c.new one d.a new one

6.D

A 缺名词

B 缺名词或位置错误

C 缺冠词

one 可以作代词, 还可以作数词

10 Young children often appreciate modern pictures. They _____ them.

a.estimate b.esteem c.value d.understand and enjoy

根据句子意思, 选 D.

9 This curtain material is very good _____ .

a.clothes b.cloth c.substance d.matter

9. B

clothes 衣服 读音省略[θ] 的音

cloth 布

11 They notice more. They _____ more.

a.remark b.observe c.say d.take care

11.

在此句中, notice=observe

12 It's upside down. It isn't _____ .

up b.down c.the right way down d.the right way up

12. D

not the right way down = the right way up

§ Lesson 27 A wet night 雨夜

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★tent n. 帐篷

★field n. 田地, 田野

airfield 飞机场(介词用 on)

in the field 在田野里

in one's field 在...领域

He is an expert in his field. (expert ['ekspɜ:t])

football field 足球场地

★smell v. (smelled or smelt) 闻起来

smell 作半联系动词, 接表语, 接形容词

The food smelt good. (不能说成 “smell well”, “well” 是副词, 身体好才用 “well”)

感官动词

You look fine.

You look better.

You look beautiful.

taste [teɪst] 尝起来

The food smelt good, and it tasted better.

sound 听起来

look taste sound smell feel

feel; (1)感到 I feel ill. (心理感到)

(2)用手的感受, The blackboard felt cold.

★wonderful adj. 极好的

口语中用得更多的是: Great! (与物相连)

Excellent! (与人相连) ['eksələnt] adj. 卓越的, 极好的

She is an excellent teacher.

Outstanding! (人) 好得站了出来

Brilliant! (['brɪljənt] adj. 灿烂的, 闪耀的, 有才气的)

Fantastic!

★campfire n. 营火, 篝火

fire 可数也不可数 (一堆堆的火—可数, 炉子里的火—不可数)

★creep v. (crept; crept) 爬行 (蹑手蹑脚的) 也是平行的爬

climb the tree. climb up or down (上下爬)

crawl : The baby is crawling on the floor. (平行地爬)

creep out 蹑手蹑脚(别人不注意, 偷偷摸摸的)

climb / crawl / creep

★sleeping bag 睡袋

passing plane 正在路过的飞机

动词加 ing 变成形容词作定语有二个意思 :

(1) 正在... : sleeping dog

(2) 用来做... : sleeping bag

listening material

walking stick 拐杖

★comfortable adj. 舒适的, 安逸的

★soundly adv. 香甜地

sleep soundly 睡得很甜

go to bed 上床/go to sleep 睡觉/fall asleep 坠入梦乡/sleep well 睡得很好/sleep deeply 睡得很沉

fall 为半联系动词

fast : fall fast asleep 睡得好香 “fast asleep” 熟睡

★leap v. 跳跃, 跳起

jump : jump up and down 原地跳跃

leap : 跳跃, 有距离(如从沟的这边跳到另一边, 位置变化)

skip : 课文行的跳过去, 单词, 文章 : Let us skip it?

Look before you leap.三思而后行

leap year/month 闰年/月

★heavily adv. 大量地

rain/snow heavily 一般与雨雪连用

smoke heavily 烟瘾重

He smokes heavily.

★stream n. 小溪

★form v. 形成

★wind [waɪnd] v. 蜿蜒 (wound; wound)

wind one's way 蜿蜒而行

The road winds its way.

注意与名词 wind[wɪnd](风)的读音不同.

★right adv. 正好

强调作用

right 做副词时强调后边的形容词，副词，介词短语，不强调动词

可用 just 来替换

just like 正好/just as 正如

后边加代词时只能用 just. 如：just you 就是你了。不能用 “right” 代替

Right here. 就在这儿

“Right here waiting for you”：《在此等候》—歌名

I found my lost watch right in the garden. 我就在花园里找到了我丢失的手表

【Text】

Lesson 27 A wet night 雨夜

First listen and then answer the question. 听录音，然后回答以下问题。

What happened to the boys in the night?

Late in the afternoon, the boys put up their tent in the middle of a field. As soon as this was done, they cooked a meal over an open fire. They were all hungry and the food smelled good. After a wonderful meal, they told stories and sang songs by the campfire. But some time later it began to rain. The boys felt tired so they put out the fire and crept into their tent. Their sleeping bags were warm and comfortable, so they all slept soundly. In the middle of the night, two boys woke up and began shouting. The tent was full of water! They all leapt out of their sleeping bags and hurried outside. It was raining heavily and they found that a stream had formed in the field. The stream wound its way across the field and then flowed right under their tent!

参考译文

傍晚时分，孩子们在田野中央搭起了帐篷。这件事刚刚做完，他们就在篝火上烧起了饭。他们全都饿了，饭菜散发出阵阵香味。他们美美地吃了一顿饭后，就围在营火旁讲起了故事，唱起了歌。但过了一阵子，天下起雨来，于是他们扑灭了篝火，钻进了帐篷。睡袋既暖和又舒服，所以，他们都睡得很香。午夜前后，有两个孩子醒了，大声叫了起来。原来帐篷里到处都是水！他们全都跳出睡袋，跑到外面。雨下得很大，他们发现地上已经形成了一条小溪。那小溪弯弯曲曲穿过田野，然后正好从他们的帐篷底下流过去。

【课文讲解】

注意句型：在...之后

wet 反义词是 dry

汉语与英文只有意义的对等，没有字的对等

wet.... 湿淋淋的

My idea is the same as yours. 我的想法与你一样的

I agree with you. (口语)

I think so. (口语)

You are wet.

英文中表示“湿”的词：

wet/damp 不舒服/moist (湿的程度减少)

moist：稍湿(给人感觉舒服，如湿润)：moist cake 松软的蛋糕 (moist [moist] adj. 潮湿的 n. 潮湿)

damp：让人感觉不太舒服

dreamy eyes: 梦幻般的眼睛

moist eyes 水灵灵的眼睛

humid 指气候比较潮湿

a rainy night... 多雨的夜晚

(My idea is the same as yours./I'm agree with you./I think so.)

late in the afternoon. 傍晚

early in the morning 清早

put up 搭建/强调搭 如搭个草棚等

build 建/强调精心设计并且建造

make a desk

build a car (一般不用 "make a car")

in the middle of 在...中间 (相对两边)

in the center of 在...中心 (相对四面)腹地

in the middle of the river 河中心

midnight 午夜

the mid-autumn day 中秋节

在陆地的腹地用 "center"

as soon as 一...就... /当...

open fire 在野外生的火, 篝火

over 垂直的上面

cook a meal 做一顿饭

表示 "在...之后" 的句式

after+从句/doing

with a bag 带着包

in sweater 穿着毛衣 (sweater ['swetə] n. 厚运动衫, 毛线衫)

After I arrived => After my arrival

When the plane arrived => after the arrival of the plane (P37 summary writing)

After his arrival, we have a party.

After the arrival of the flowers, I took them and went to my girlfriend's

tell story 讲故事

by 在...旁边 near/beside/at/by

① at the door 门边, (紧挨着的)

sit at the table 桌边

② by the river 河边 (不会紧挨着的, 但也不会很远)

③ next to

He sits next to me./who is the next? 表示紧邻着的

④ beside = next to

the next door to my house

⑤ near 在附近

beside/next to 与...相邻

at the door 紧挨着

near the village

next to /beside the village

at the table

by the river

next door 在隔壁

some time later 一段时间之后

some time ago 一段时间以前

a few hours earlier j 几小时前

some time earlier.

put out 人为的熄灭火

be out 火自动熄灭

I put out the fire.

The fire is out.

crept into

in the middle of the night=midnight

at midnight 在午夜

wake up 醒来 主语自己醒

wake sb up 唤醒

begin doing/start doing/begin to do/start to do

leap out of 跳出来

如果强调某东西自动形成, 则可以用主动态, 如果强调某东西是人为的, 用被动态

When I'm getting close to the door,the door opened.(自动门)

The door opened. 强调门自动开

The door was opened.门被打开, 强调人为的

river formed 河流是自动形成

The bus stopped 自动的

The bus was stopped 人为的

wound one's way 蜿蜒而行

flow 流淌

flow/flowed/flowed

fly/flew/flown

grow/grew/grown

blow/blew/blown

right 正好, 恰好, 强调后边的介词短语

【Letter writing】书信写作

先写最小单位

给国外的人写信是才写国名

【Composition】作文

用正确的动词和连词改写以下句子 :

I am very tall(so)(but)I must be careful. Doorways are often low(and)(but)I usually(beat)(knock)my head against them. My head always(hurts)(pains). I have never(met)(recognized)a tall architect. Have you?

Doorways 门栏

so/and/knock/hurts/met

knock/beat

knock 大声地撞

beat 持续的撞击/打

against (prep)相对作用的力 (在政治上叫“反对”)

hurt/pain

身体的某一部位+hurts 某一部疼痛 my hand hurts.

Pain 表示疼痛的名词

I have a pain.

My hand hurts.

I have a pain in my hand.

Meet 遇见 / recognize 认出 (原来熟悉再次认出的概念)

【Special Difficulties】 难点

动词加介词或副词起改变 put 的含义的作用

put up with 容忍

put up ① 搭建 ② 安排住宿

put out...扑灭

put on 穿上

put away 把...收好

Your room is untidy, put your things away.

put off 推延

put down / write down 记下

Exercise(选用正确的带 put 的动词短语)

- 1 Mrs. Bowers told her children to _____ their toys _____ and go to bed.
- 2 You can stay here tonight. We can _____ you _____ in the spare room.
- 3 I'm not ready yet. I haven't _____ my shoes _____ .
- 4 'Open your exercise books and _____ the following, ' the teacher said.
- 5 Father is _____ the fire he lit in the garden.
- 6 When they have _____ that new building, it will spoil the view.
- 7 I have _____ my trip to Japan until next month.
- 8 I am getting a divorce. I can't _____ him any longer.

1.put...away

2.put...up 安排住宿

3.put...on

4.put...down 记下 = write down

5.putting...out

6.put up 搭建 spoil 毁坏

7.put off 推延

8.put up with get a divorce 离婚

【Multiple choice questions】 多项选择题

6 They sang songs by the campfire. They sang songs _____ the campfire.

a.close b.near c.besides d.at

6.b

beside 在...旁边

besides 除...之外

my closest friends

close to 表示离...很近(必须要有 "to")

close to me 离我很近

at the door; at the window; at the table

9 The boys had put out the campfire. The fire wasn't _____ .

a.switched on b.on fire c.on d.alight

9.d

be on 上演, 亮着的(一般指灯亮着的)

What's on in the cinema today?

The lights were on last night.

switch n.开关

v.用开关 The light was switched on. 强调通过开关打开的

on fire 起火 : The house is on fire .房子起火了

alight : 以 a 开头的形容词为表语形容词

The fire was out.火熄灭了

§ Lesson 28 No parking 禁止停车

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★rare adj. 罕见的

rare animal 稀有动物 (animal ['æniməl] n.动物)

rare bird 珍稀鸟类

rare illness 疑难杂症

scarce [skeəs] adj :少有的,表示某个时间段或某个地方少有 : Watermelon is scarce in winter.

scarce [skeəs] adj. 缺乏的, 不足的, 稀有的, 不充足的/ watermelon ['wɔ:təmelən] n.西瓜

rare : 指世界上都少有

coconut ['kəukənʌt] n.椰子

steak [steik] n.(供煎, 烤等的)肉, 鱼, 肉片, 鱼片, 肉排, 牛排

well done : 全熟

medium : 半生半熟的 (medium ['mi:djəm] n.媒体, 方法, 媒介 adj.中间的, 中等的, 半生熟的)

rare : 几乎是生的

★ancient adj. 古代的, 古老的

ancient Egypt 古埃及 ([ˈeɪnʃənt] ['i:dʒɪpt])

antique 古代的, 古玩, 古董, 古老而有价值的 : antique furniture 古董家具

★myth n. 神话故事

fairy 神仙故事

★effect n. 结果, 效果

have an effect 有效果

have no effect 没有效果

have effect on 对...有效果

The advice has no effect on me.

★trouble n. 麻烦

woman/man troubles 女人/男人真麻烦

child troubles 孩子真麻烦

never trouble troubles until troubles trouble you. 永远不要自寻烦恼

Let sleeping dog lie. 不要自找麻烦 (let sb do)

ask for trouble

He is asking for trouble.

I'm sorry to put you in trouble. 我很抱歉给你带来麻烦(口语)

have trouble in doing sth

I have trouble (in) parking the car.

I have a lot of trouble parking the car.

★Medusa n. 美杜莎(古希腊神话中 3 位蛇发女怪这一)

★Gorgon n. (古希腊神话中的)3 位蛇发女怪这一(凡见其貌者都会变成石头)

【Text】

Lesson 28 No parking 禁止停车

First listen and then answer the question.听录音, 然后回答以下问题.

What is Jasper White's problem?

Jasper White is one of those rare people who believes in ancient myths. he has just bought a new house in the city, but ever since he moved in, he has had trouble with cars and their owners. When he returns home at night, he always finds that someone has parked a car outside his gate. Because of this, he has not been able to get his own car into his garage even once. Jasper has put up 'No Parking' signs outside his gate, but these have not had any effect. Now he has put an ugly stone head over the gate. It is one of the ugliest faces I have ever seen. I asked him what it was and he told me that it was Medusa, the Gorgon. jasper hopes that she will turn cars and their owners to stone. But none of them has been turned to stone yet!

参考译文

贾斯珀·怀特是少有的相信古代神话的人之一。他刚在城里买下一所新房子,但自从搬进去后,就和汽车及车主们发生了磨擦。当他夜里回到家时,总是发现有人把车停在他家大门外。为此,他甚至一次也没能把自己的车开进车库。贾斯珀曾把几块“禁止停车”的牌子挂在大门外边,但没有任何效果。现在他把一个丑陋的石雕头像放在了大门上边,这是我见过的最丑陋的头像之一。我问他那是什么?他告诉我那是蛇发女怪美杜莎。贾斯珀希望她把汽车和车主们都变成石头。但到目前为止还没有一个变成石头呢!

【课文讲解】

one of 其中之一

one of the students

believe in 信任; 信仰 (并不只是相信的意思,任何时候都“相信”彻底底的相信即信任)

关系代词: who, whom, which, that

关系代词后面要加从句

先行词是主句和从句共同有的一个词

I have a book that/which he likes. (“book”为先行词 “that/which”为关系代词)

关系代词有两个功能: 一是承上, 一是启下(如上句中的“book”作从句的宾语)

The boy is my brother.

The boy is standing at the door.

The boy who is standing at the door is my brother.

I can do anything I can to help you.

I can do anything that I can do. 我愿意做我力所能及的事情来帮助你

Jasper White is one of those rare people who believe in ancient myths.

who 在这这是关系词, 起承上启下的作用

believe 用在 people 之后应该用复数对待

who 在从句中指代的是单数, 就用单数对待, 在从句中指代的是复数就用复数对待

如果在定语从句中出现了 one of 作为先行词, 它后边的关系代词指代的是后面的复数名词

如果在 one of 前面还有一修饰词 (the) only, 那么后边的关系代词将指代 one 这个词, 才作单数看

He is the only one of those rare people who believes in ancient myths.

one of 直接作主语的时候, 它是做单数看待的

One of the answers is ture.

One of those people is good.

ever since=since

have trouble doing 做...有麻烦

have trouble with sb. 和某人相处有麻烦

I have trouble with my roommate.

in the morning 每天早晨

in the afternoon 每天下午

at night 每天晚上

park a car 停车

because of 由于

because 的后面加句子

because of 的后面加词或动词 "-ing"

be able to 的主语一般都是人, 表示有能力去做

get his car into his garage.

I drove the car into the wall.

I drove the car into the tree.

drive the car into 把车子撞上某地

get sth into 把...弄进

even once : 甚至一次, even 起强调

put up 张贴

put up the pictures on the wall 在墙上贴画

not any = no

on 接触在上面

over 悬挂在上面

one of 后面加可数名词的复数

I have ever seen 做定语从句, 修饰前边的 faces

如果关系词在从句中做宾语, 关系词可以省略, 所以 I 前的 which 被省略

This is the most difficult thing I have ever done.

This is the most terrible news I have ever heard.

有两个结构一定是最高级

1. of+范围 (of all the students)

2. in+地点

He is the tallest in the room.

3. I have ever 从句

hope 的后面加 that 从句

turn sth to 把前者变成后者

turn the prince to a frog (prince [prɪns] n.王子 frog [frɒɡ] n.青蛙 vi.捕蛙)

He was turned to a frog

turn cars and their owners to stone

none of, neither of 做主语时做单数看待

先行词：放在定语从句前面，而且是两句话共同含有的词，还是被定语从句修饰的词

定语从句：句子做定语，一般放在被修饰词后面

四个关系代词：

who; whom; which; that

who 在从句当中做主语或做宾语

whom 只能在从句当中做宾语

which 指物，即可以做主语，又可以做宾语

that 即可以指物，又可以指人，即可以做主语，又可以做宾语

【Special Difficulties】 难点

whose 后面一定要加一个名词，然后这个部分共同做主语或宾语

The boy whose sister is standing at the door is my brother. 妹妹站在门口的男孩是我弟弟

The pilot whose plane landed in a field was not hurt. 把飞机降落在田里的飞行员没有受伤

land 着陆

He is the right person I am looking for.

Pilot ['pailɒt] n. 飞行员，领航员，引水员 vt. 驾驶(飞机等)，领航，引水 v. 驾驶

【Structure】 (58 页)

3. Our neighbour, _____ name is Charles Alison, will sail tomorrow.

(a) whose ✓ (b) whose his (c) his (d) of whom

whose 在这儿等于 his

his 是物主代词，whose 是关系代词

关系代词可以引导定语从句，物主代词不可以引导定语从句

做主语，宾语的关系代词有 who, whom, which, that

只有 whose 做定语

5. His boat, _____ is Topsail, is famous.

(a) whose the name (b) the whose name (c) of whom the name (d) the name of which ✓

冠词和形容词性物主代词不能并存

不会说 of sth the name

而会说 the name of sth

介词后边加的是介词宾语

that 不能直接出现在介词后边

whose name 也对

复习 28 课的语法

定语从句

关系代词可以有四个概念：

1. 代人的，做主语或宾语 who

只做宾语的 whom

2. 代物的，做主语或宾语 which

3.代人的也可以代物的 做主语或宾语 that

4.whose 其代表的东西由其在句子中的成分决定(不一定指人)

The boat whose name is...

翻译练习：

我有一个房子，房子的窗户都破了。

I have a house whose windows are broken.

介词后不可以用 that

I have a book I am interested in.

I have a book that I am interested in.

Exersise(在需要的地方填上 who, which, that 或 whose)

1 The only games _____ I play are football and tennis.

2 He is the only student _____ understands English well.

3 He is a writer _____ books are seldom read.

4 This is the hotel at _____ we are staying.

5 Is this the money _____ you lost?

6 That is the horse _____ won the race.

7 He is the sort of person _____ everyone admires.

The only game...I play are football and tennis.

1.不填 如果要填只能是 that, 在从句中作宾语可省略

先行词如果用 only, 序数词, 形容词最高级修饰, 其后边的关系词只用 that

2.He is the only student...understand English well.

that

3.He is writer...books are seldom read.

whose

4.This is the hotel at...we are staying

which 句中的 "at" 原来在 "staying" 的后边

This is the hotel which we are staying at.

介词后加物的话, 只加 which, 加人的话, 用 whom, 都不可用 that, who 也不能

She is the girl. I stayed with her.

She is the girl who/whom/that I stayed with. (句中 "who/whom/that" 可省略)

She is the girl with whom I stayed.

That is the house. I live in the house.

That is the house in which I live.

5.Is this the money...you lost? 不填

6.That is the horse...won the race.

从句中少主语: which

选 which, 不能用 that

句子中用词避免重复, 句首已有了一个 "that", 故选 "which" 而不是 "that"

谁是那个正在帮助你的人?

Who is the man that is helping you? 不用 "who", 避免重复

7. He is the sort of person...everyone admires.他就是每个人都羡慕的那种人

person 是先行词, 在从句中做宾语

不填

admire [əd'maɪə] v. 赞美, 钦佩, 羡慕

总结 :

在做翻译或阅读时, 先找句子的主干, 剩下的是各修饰成分

考定语从句时, 备选答案更加难以选出, 要仔细分辨, 再复习一下这七道题

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题

6. It is one of the ugliest faces I have ever seen. I've never seen _____

a. an ugly one b. an ugliest one c. the ugliest one d. an uglier one

这是我所见过的最干净的街道了.

This is the cleanest street I have ever seen.

答案 : D

此句是用比较级来表达最高级的概念

better than anything else 最好

The teacher is the tallest in the room.

The teacher is taller than anyone else in the room.

I have never seen a taller one.

I have never bought a more expensive one.

7 _____ of them has been turned to stone.

a. No one b. Not one c. No d. Even one

课文中为 none of

No 是形容词, 后加名词

no one = nobody ("nobody" 指的是人, 它将 "cars" 排除了是不对的)

不定代词后不用 of

可以用的有 : neither of / none of / both of / all of

none of = not one of

9 He is a rare person. You _____ meet such people.

a. often b. never c. seldom d. sometimes

9. C

rarely = seldom 几乎不

rarely ['reəli] adv. 很少地, 罕有地 / seldom ['seldəm] adv. 很少, 不常

10 Not all car owners are good _____ .

a. guides b. conductors c. leaders d. drivers

选 D.

not all 不是所有的

Not all students are good.

Not all children are naughty.

部分否定概念

12 The signs haven't had any effect. They haven't _____ anyone.

a. affected b. effected c. resulted in d. imposed

12. A

have effect 有效果

影响 effect .n.
affect .v.

【Composition】作文

My wife (drives) (leads) a car. She has (driven) (ridden) a car for many years (and) (but) she says that women drivers (do not deserve) (are not worth) their bad reputation. Yet, on the road, she often (criticizes) (judges) other women drivers.

drives/driven/and/do not deserve/criticizes

reputation [ˌrepju(:)'teɪʃən] n. 名誉, 名声

judge [dʒʌdʒ] n. 法官, 审判员, 裁判员, 鉴赏家, 鉴定人, (J-)最高的审判者 vt. 审理, 鉴定, 判断, 判决, 断定, 认为 vi. 下判断, 作评价

§ Lesson 29 Taxi! 出租汽车

【New words and expressions】生词和短语

★taxi n. 出租汽车

taxi driver 出租车司机

take a taxi/take a bus/take a lift

Whose plane landed in the field

★Pilatus Porter

★land v. 着陆 (不及物)

whose plane landed in the field.

★plough v. 耕地

plough .n. 犁

farm 农田

plough [plau] n. 犁 v. 耕, 犁, 犁耕, 费力穿过, 艰苦前进, 在考试中淘汰

★lonely adj. 偏僻的, 人迹罕见的(地方)

lonely (人) 孤独的, 孤僻的/cold fish

She felt lonely 感到, 主观

She is alone. 事实, 客观

alone [ə'ləʊn] adj. 单独的, 独一无二的, 孤独的, 独自的 adv. 独自地

'Home alone': 《独自在家》——小鬼当家中的一部

★Welsh adj.

★roof n. 楼顶 (从外面看)

ceiling 天花板 (从里面看)

raise the roof v. 喧闹, 大声抱怨

hit the ceiling [美口语] 勃然大怒, 暴跳如雷, 怒发冲冠

★block n. 块, 一座大楼

★flat n. 公寓房

a block of flats 公寓楼 (英国)

office block 办公楼 写字楼

apartment 公寓(美国)

a block of apartments

★desert [dɪ'zɜ:t] v. 废弃

desert the house = let the room empty

desert ['dezət] .n. 沙漠, 不毛之地, 注意名词和动词的读音不同

【Text】

Lesson 29 Taxi! 出租汽车!

First listen and then answer the question.听录音, 然后回答以下问题.

Does Captain Fawcett think any trip is too dangerous?

Captain Ben Fawcett has bought an unusual taxi and has begun a new service. The 'taxi' is a small Swiss aeroplane called a 'Pilatus Porter'. This wonderful plane can carry seven passengers. The most surprising thing about it, however, is that it can land anywhere: on snow, water, or even on a ploughed field. Captain Fawcett's first passenger was a doctor who flew from Birmingham to a lonely village in the Welsh mountains. Since then, Captain Fawcett has flown passengers to many unusual places. Once he landed on the roof of a block of flats and on another occasion, he landed in a deserted car park. Captain Fawcett has just refused a strange request from a businessman. The man wanted to fly to Rockall, a lonely island in the Atlantic Ocean, but Captain Fawcett did not take him because the trip was too dangerous.

参考译文

本·弗西特机长买了一辆不同寻常的出租汽车, 并开始了一项新的业务. 这辆“出租汽车”是一架小型瑞士飞机, 叫“皮勒特斯·波特”号. 这架奇妙的飞机可以载 7 名乘客. 然而, 最令人惊奇的是它能够在任何地方降落: 雪地上, 水面上, 甚至刚耕过的田里. 弗西特机长的第一名乘客是位医生, 他从伯明翰飞往威尔士山区一个偏僻的村庄. 从那时开始, 弗西特机长已经载送乘客到过许多不寻常的地方. 一次, 他把飞机降落在一栋公寓楼的屋顶上; 还有一次, 降落在了一个废弃的停车场上. 弗西特机长刚刚拒绝了一位商人的奇怪要求. 这个人想要飞往大西洋上的一个孤岛 -- 罗卡尔岛, 弗西特机长之所以不送他去, 是因为那段飞行太危险了.

【课文讲解】

read the text

captain 船长/机长

called

call sb sth

The instrument was called a clavichord.

be called 被称为

called 在此句中为过去分词

过去分词做定语时是作为被动状态来翻译的, ing 表示正在

I have an instrument. The instrument is called a clavichord.

I have an instrument called a clavichord.

I have a cat called Lucy.

-ing; -ed 是非谓语动词

a ploughed field 被耕过的田

a deserted car park 被废弃的车场

Written English 书面语

spoken English 口语

(colloquialism [kə'ləʊkwɪəlɪz(ə)m] n. 俗话, 白话, 口语 colloquial language 口语)

短语做定语是要后置

a race across the Atlantic

单个的词做定语时可放前边

however 可放在句子前边

that 从句在此处是表语从句

1. 宾语从句中的 that 省略

2. 定语从句中的关系词在从句中做宾语时可以省略.

句型 : The most surprising thing is that...

To my surprise,...

surprising 可以由其它词替换

The most exciting thing is that...

The most exciting thing is that we can win the football match.

The happiest thing is that I can visit/see/(stay with) mother during the Spring Festival. (春节)

(Festival ['festəvəl] n. 节日, 喜庆日, 音乐节, 戏剧节, 喜庆, 欢宴, 欢乐 adj. 节日的, 快乐的)

Captain Fawcett's first passenger... (the first ... : the 不能和所有格及形容词物主代词并存)

from ... to ... 从... 到...

since then/so far/up to now

since then 强调起点

so far/up to now 强调终点

fly sb to... 开飞机送某人去

My friend drove me to Tianjin.

drive sb to ... 开车送某人去

once 一次

on another occasion 还有一次

Once I met him on the street and on another occasion I met him in the library.

once...and on another occasion. 一次.....还有一次

request from 来自某人的请求

request for sth. 要求得到

take sb to school 送某人上学

too 在副词或形容词前表示否定含义

very 强调程度深

too 强调程度大到了人们不愿去做

You are very kind.

very expensive 买得起

too expensive 买不起

dangerous ['deɪndʒərəs] adj. 危险的

【Composition】作文

The plane (not only) (neither) (flew) (threw) close to the river, (but) (or) also flew under a bridge. (Then) (However) it (climbed) (ran) into the air. The people on the bridge (waved) (shook) to the pilot (and) (yet) he did not (notice) (look after) them.

not only/flew/but/Then/climbed(ran 也对, 但没有 climb 表达更确切)/waved/yet/notice

【Special Difficulties】 难点

1、 refuse to do sth 拒绝做某事

deny doing 否认做某事 / deny that + 从句

2、 bring 离说话人越来越近

bring sth here.

take 离说话人越来越远

take there.

fetch 去了再来(双向动作)

fetch the ball

Exercise (选择正确的词)

1. When you go to the kitchen, please (fetch) (bring) me a glass of water.

2. The ball went over the fence and the football player asked a boy to (fetch)(bring) it.

3. When I asked him he (refused) (denied) to tell me.

4. Do you (deny) (refuse) that you have told me a lie?

5. How are you? (Too) (Very) well, thank you.

1. bring / 2. fetch / 3. refused / 4. deny. / 5. very

总结：

① The most surprising thing is that

The most exciting thing about it is that

② Once.....on another occasion

③ 过去分词, 短语作定语

【Multiple choice questions】 多项选择题

3. The 'taxi' is a small Swiss aeroplane _____ called a 'Pilatus Porter' .

a. who is b. whom is c. which is d. whose is

3. 动词的 ing 形式有主动含义, ed 形式有被动含义

(c)

A passing plane = a plane which is passing

4 This is the most surprising thing about it. It is _____ than anything.

a. most surprising b. more surprising c. more surprised d. most surprised

4. (b)

用比较级表达最高级

本句应表达为：It is more surprising than anything else.

"else" 不能省略, 句子才严密

5 He flew a doctor to a Welsh village. _____ he has flown to many unusual places.

a. From then b. By then c. By that time d. Since that time

5. from then: 从... 起 (没有终点), 一般都是 "from....to...."

since then: 从... 起(到现在为止)

by then: 到... 止
by that time
from then on = since then
(d)

9 The ploughed field is ready for _____ .

a.sewing b.sowing c.seeding d.growing

(b)

be ready for/to.... 为....作准备

“seed” 只与播种子相联系，一般作名词，强调把种子种下去，而 sow 只说明把...种下去，并不一定是“种子”

11 Captain Fawcett has flown passengers to many unusual _____ .

a.parts b.pieces c.spots d.sections

11. (c)

spot=place (点, 地点)

part : 部分

a piece of = a sheet of 一张 / a piece of = a bit of 一块

§ Lesson 30 Football or polo? 足球还是水球?

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★polo n. 水球

★Wayle n. 威尔(河名)

★cut v. 穿过

cut oneself

No pains, no gains.

cut one's hair 理发 have a hair cut

cut the tree 砍树 / cut down the tree 砍倒树 / cut the tree down 砍倒树

cut the head off 砍脑袋 (off = away from)

cut off electricity 切断电源

cut sth into pieces 把... 切成小片(碎)

cut across 直着穿过

cut a corner 走捷径

when you learn english, never cut a corner

★row v. 划(船)

go boating 去划船, 强调玩

my brother is rowing. row 强调动作

★kick v. 踢

kick me : 踢我一脚

kickback : 回扣, 佣金

I get a kickback of 2000 yuan.

kick upstairs : 明升暗降: He was kicked upstairs.

well to go (美语) = well done (英语) 做得不错

★towards prep. 朝, 向

★nearly adv. 几乎

★sight n. 眼界, 视域

catch sight of 看见

catch sight of the bird 看见那只鸟

out of sight 在视线之外

in sight 在视线之内

the bird is in sight

out of sight, out of mind 眼不见心不烦

long sighted 眼光长远, 远视眼

somebody is long sighted

short sighted 目光短浅, 近视

【Text】

Lesson 30 Football or polo? 足球还是水球?

First listen and then answer the question. 听录音, 然后回答以下问题.

What happened to the man in the boat?

The Wayle is a small river that cuts across the park near my home. I like sitting by the Wayle on fine afternoons. It was warm last Sunday, so I went and sat on the river bank as usual. Some children were playing games on the bank and there were some people rowing on the river. Suddenly, one of the children kicked a ball very hard and it went towards a passing boat. Some people on the bank called out to the man in the boat, but he did not hear them. The ball struck him so hard that he nearly fell into the water. I turned to look at the children, but there weren't any in sight: they had all run away! The man laughed when he realized what had happened. He called out to the children and threw the ball back to the bank.

参考译文

威尔河是横穿过我家附近公园的一条小河。我喜欢在天气晴朗的下午到河边坐坐。上星期日天气很暖和。于是我和往常一样, 又去河边坐着。河岸上有些孩子正在玩耍, 河面上有些人正在划船。突然, 一个孩子狠狠地踢了一脚球, 球便向着一只划过来的小船飞去。岸上的一些人对着小船上的人高喊, 但他没有听见。球重重地打在他身上, 使他差点儿落入水中。我转过头去看那些孩子, 但一个也不见, 全都跑了! 当那个人明白了发生的事情时, 笑了起来。他大声叫着那些孩子, 把球扔回到岸上。

【课文讲解】

by the river

like to do 一次性的 I like to drink tea.

like doing 习惯性的 I like drinking water.

afternoon+s 表示每逢

as usual : 和往常一样

there be+sb.+doing

towards: 强调离目标越来越远的概念

call out 大声喊

call out to

so that.... : 如此....以致于.... (that 引导的结果状语从句)

so 的后面跟副词或形容词, 如后跟名词时要用 such.(....such +n +that+...)

the teacher speaks so fast that I can't catch the word.

my brother walks so slowly that he can't catch up with me. (赶不上)

the English is so easy that I can learn it well.

there weren't any in sight.

there were not anything in sight.

there was something in sight.

Throw back to : 把....扔回到....

【Composition】作文

The wind(threw)(blew)his hat into the river. He(put)(took)out his hand (and) (but)tried to (reach)(catch)it(so)(but) he could not(so) (but) he(jumped) (fell) into the river(and)(but) got it.

blew 吹 / take out 拿出 put out 扑灭 / catch 接住 抓住 reach 够得着 / but / so / jump 自己跳 (fall 掉进去)/ and

【Summary writing】摘要写作

4.The man in the boat neither saw the ball nor heard people shouting.

6.However,the man was not angry and he threw the ball back to the bank.

but 连接两个句子, 中间可用逗号隔开

however 只是副词, 只表示意思上得转折, 它可以放在句首也可以放在句中, 只是用一个逗号把它和其他的词隔开就可以

【Key structures】关键句型

A, The, Some and Any(KS6)(参见第 6 课关键句型)

a Some and Any. (对比第 9 课难点)

Note the use of some and any in these sentences:

注意以下句子中 some 和 any 的用法 :

Is there any milk in the bottle? 瓶子里有牛奶吗?

There isn't any milk in the bottle, but there is some in this jug. 瓶子里没有一点儿奶, 但是罐子里有一些.

Is there any soap in the bathroom? 卫生间里有肥皂吗?

There isn't any soap in the bathroom, but there's some in the cupboard. 卫生间里没有肥皂, 但橱里有一些.

Are there any nails in that tin? 那个罐头盒子里有钉子吗?

There aren't any in the tin, but there are some in this box. 罐头盒子里没有, 但这个盒子里有一些.

b Names. 姓名

We cannot put a or the in front of names. (KS 6c)

在人名和地名前面不加冠词 a 或 the. (参见第 6 课关键句型 c)

John lives in England. He has a house in London. 约翰住在英国. 他在伦敦有座房子.

But we must put the in front of the names of oceans, seas, rivers, mountain ranges and certain countries:但在海洋、河流、山脉和部分国名前, 一定要用定冠词 the :

Who was the first person to sail across the Pacific? 谁是第一个横渡太平洋的人?

It can get very rough in the Mediterranean. 地中海中可能会非常不平静.

Many great cities are built on rivers. Paris is on the Seine, London is on the Thames and Rome is on the Tiber. 许多大城市都建在河岸上. 巴黎在塞纳河上, 伦敦在泰晤士河上, 罗马在第伯尔河上.

I know a man who has been on climbing expeditions in many parts of the world. He has climbed

in the Alps, the Himalayas, and the Rocky Mountains. 我认识一个参加过世界各地登山探险的人。他曾攀登过阿尔卑斯山、喜马拉雅山和洛矶山。

Instead of saying:

We can say:

除了这种表述方法外：

还可以说：

I went to America last year.

I went to the United States of America last year.

Would you like to go to China?

Would you like to go to the People's Republic of China?

some 和 any

some 在表示邀请的语气中或知道你会肯定回答时取代 any

Do you want some? / Would you want something?

Do you want any drink? 你想要喝点什么吗?(不愿意给别人喝)

would you want some to drink?

Exercises D (在必要的地方填上冠词 a 或 the)

1 _____ refrigerators are necessary in _____ hot countries.

2 Which river is _____ longest, _____ Nile, _____ Amazon, or _____ Mississippi?

3 Heyerdahl crossed _____ Pacific on _____ raft.

4 Why is _____ Britain sometimes called _____ United Kingdom?

5 We sailed up _____ Red Sea and then went through _____ Suez Canal.

1. 不填

refrigerator 冰箱 / necessary 必要的

in hot countries: 指的是炎热的那类国家, 故不用 the

2. the the the the

Nile 尼罗河 Amazon 亚马逊河 Mississippi 密西西比河

3. the a

the Atlantic 大西洋

raft 木筏子 / 如用 “by” 则不用加任何修饰 “by raft”, 用 “on, in” 一般都要加 “the, a/an”

这里指的是这一类, 没特指, 故加 “a”

4. \ the

如果以单个的词作为国家, 基本上不加 the, 比方说 China, America, Britain, 一旦这个词成为缩略形式, 前面就要加 the

5. the the

横渡海峡用 “across”

和运河相连介词用 through. 不用 “across”

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题

4. It cuts across the park. It goes _____ it.

a. through b. over c. round d. along

4. a

round 围绕 along 沿着

across the grass, across 用于从... 的表面穿过

through the tree, through 用于从... 的内部穿过, 如穿墙而过用 through.

over 在... 上方, 与下面没接触

over the bridge, over the mountains, over the hill

over 在用于穿越讲时, 表示穿过弧形

go through the market 穿过市场

7. There weren't any in sight. They _____ .

a.couldn't see b.hadn't seen c.couldn't be seen d.weren't seen

7. C

see 为及物动词, 一般后面一定要加宾语. look 为不及物动词

10 The man in the boat didn't _____ anyone shouting.

a.hear b.listen to c.mind d.take care of

10. a

hear sb doing 听见某人正在做某事

I heard my sister singing.

I heard two boys talking.

§ Lesson 31 Success story 成功者的故事

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★retire v. 退休

He is getting old, He is going to retire. 他越来越老, 他打算退休了

retire=stop working=stop doing this

I'm going to retire next year.

我明年会退出影坛或歌坛

I'm so tired that I'm going to retire now. (retire = go to bed)

★company n. 公司

firm 商行

corporation 责任公司

limited corporation 有限责任公司 缩略形式: Ltd.Co

He works in my business.

他在我的公司工作

★bicycle n. 自行车

★save v. 积蓄

save 挽救

save one's life

He saved my life 他挽救我的生命

save one's face 挽会面子

save money 存钱

西方人不喜欢提钱, 所以用 **save up** 表示存钱

I have saved up for many years: 我已经存了好几年的钱

save it for a rainy day: 未雨绸缪, 为将来需要而做好准备

★workshop n. 车间

workhouse 感化院, 强迫劳动的地方

workshop 工作并且可以拿出来卖, 译为“车间”

★helper n. 帮手, 助手

assistant 助理

★employ v. 雇佣

employee: 雇员

employer: 雇主

trainer 教练

trainee 接受训练的人

grandson n. 孙子

【Text】

Lesson 31 Success story 成功者的故事

First listen and then answer the question. 听录音, 然后回答以下问题.

What was Frank's first job?

Yesterday afternoon Frank Hawkins was telling me about his experiences as a young man. Before he retired, Frank was the head of a very large business company, but as a boy he used to work in a small shop. It was his job to repair bicycles and at that time he used to work fourteen hours a day. He saved money for years and in 1958 he bought a small workshop of his own. In his twenties Frank used to make spare parts for aeroplanes. At that time he had two helpers. In a few years the small workshop had become a large factory which employed seven hundred and twenty-eight people. Frank smiled when he remembered his hard early years and the long road to success. He was still smiling when the door opened and his wife came in. She wanted him to repair their grandson's bicycle!

参考译文

昨天下午弗兰克·霍金斯向我讲述了他年轻时的经历。在退休前, 弗兰克是一家非常大的商业公司的经理, 但他小时候却在一家小铺里做工。他那时的工作是修理自行车, 并且通常是一天工作 14 个小时。他靠多年积蓄, 于 1958 年买下了自己的一个小铺子。20 多岁的时候, 弗兰克曾生产飞机零配件。那时他有两个帮手。几年之后, 小铺子已经发展成了一个雇有 728 人的大工厂。弗兰克回想着他早年的艰难经历和走过的漫长的成功之路, 微笑了。他正笑着的时候门开了, 他的妻子走了进来。她叫他去修理孙子的自行车。

【课文讲解】

He worked in a factory. 他曾经在一个车间里工作

He used to work in a small workshop. 他过去在一个车间工作

used to do 过去常常, 但是现在不做

My teacher used to live there. 我的老师过去住在那(现在不住了)

He lived there. 他过去住在那(不知道现在是否住在那)

She worked as a teacher.

work...as...作为...工作

He used to work as a teacher.

I used to study in this school.

as a boy = as he was a boy

as 在这儿是当...的时候

as a young man 当他年轻的时候

in his twenties, in one's thirties/forties/fifties/nineties

in one's -ies 在某人几十岁的时候

in my fifties 在我五十多岁的时候

In his fifties, he learned the second language.

in the 1980s 在二十世纪八十年代

I worked/(began the job) in the 1990s.

a head of 老板

at that time=just then=at that moment

of one's own 某人自己的

my own book (own 起强调作用, 自己的)

用 of one's own 或 one's own 由被修饰词的位置决定, 如果被修饰名词在前边, 用 of one's own, 如果被修饰名词在后边, 用 one's own

has become 成长为

in a few years 在一些年之后

...factory which employed... : 工厂雇佣....(除了人可以雇佣外, 工厂, 公司也可以这样表达)

hard early years 早年的艰辛

long road to success 通往成功的长路

remember 记得, 回忆起

memory n 记忆 memorize v.

there is a long way to go

my wife came in when i was smiling 强调我妻子进来

I was smiling when my wife came in 强调我微笑(when 不能放在强调的前面)

want sb to do sth 想让某人做某事

main idea: his experiences as a young man

success 不但表示“成功”, 还可以表示“成功者”的概念

success [sək'ses] n 成功; 胜利 / 好结果 / 成功之人; 成功的事

【Letter writing】书信写作

以下的哪一个信头是正确的?

Mr. Bill Howard,	14 Duke St.,	Duke St. 214,
214 Duke St.,	Perth,	14th May, 19__,
Perth,	Western Australia.	Perth,
Western Australia.	14th May, 19 _	Western Australia.

1.F 2.T 3.F

【Key structures】关键句型

He used to work fourteen hours a day.

Do you remember these sentences? (KS7)

你记得过去进行时和一般过去时吗?(参见第7课关键句型)

When I was watering the garden, it began to rain.

As I was getting on the bus, I slipped and hurt my foot.

Now compare them with these sentences:

used to do 与过去进行时，一般过去时：

I used to go to work by bus. Now I go by car. 我过去常乘公共汽车上班，现在开小车去。

He used to be a postman a long time ago. He's a taxi driver now. 很久以前他曾是个邮递员，现在他是个出租车司机。

I have given up smoking. I used to smoke very heavily. 我已经戒烟了，过去我吸烟很厉害。

I used to collect stamps when I was a boy. 当我还是个小男孩时，我常搜集邮票。

My uncle used to live in New Zealand but he's now living in Australia. 我叔叔过去住在新西兰，但他现在住在澳大利亚。

过去进行时出现在 1.一个故事的背景

2.和另外一件事同时发生

Exercises C:

While my wife ____ (work) in the kitchen, I ____ (sit) in the garden. I ____ (look) at cars which ____ (pass) in the street, when a small car ____ (stop) outside my gate and a man ____ (get) out. I was most surprised to see that the man was Ted Hale. We ____ (be) at the same school years ago. In those days, Ted ____ (come) to our house nearly every day and we often ____ (go) out together. We ____ (be) great friends, but one day we ____ (quarrel) and I never ____ (see) him again. As he ____ (get) out of his car, I ____ (call) my wife and we both ____ (hurry) out to greet an old friend.

was working ; was sitting ; looked (was looking) ; were passing ; stopped ; got ; were (used to be) ; used to come (came) ; went (used to go) ; were (used to be) ; quarrelled ; saw ; got (was getting) ; called ; hurried

be surprised to do 非常惊讶地做某事

quarrel ['kwɒrəl] n.吵架，反目，怨言，争吵的原因 vi.吵架，争论，挑剔

【Special Difficulties】 难点

a. experience 经历(可数名词) 经验(不可数名词) experienced 有经验的

b. save save one's life / save one's face / save money / save it for a rainy day 未雨绸缪

c. work and job 1、work 可做动词，job 不可以作名词

2、job 是可数名词，work 不可数

Exercise

1 He is a very (experience) (experienced) doctor.

2 My father enjoys doing (jobs) (works) about the house.

3 I am looking for a new (work) (job).

4 The government is trying to persuade people to (economize) (save) money.

1、experienced 2、jobs 3、job 4、save

economize [i(:)'kɒnəmaɪz] v 经济，节省(能不用就不用，有“节衣缩食”的概念)

save 存钱(多余的钱)

experience [iks'piəriəns] n.vt.经验，体验，经历，阅历

【Composition】 作文

Frank (not only) (neither) (repaired) (made) his grandson's bicycle, (but) (also) went for a ride on it (as well) (both). He (said) (told) me later: 'I (make) (do) aeroplanes, (and) (but) I prefer bicycles.'

not only / repaired / but / as well / told / make
go for a ride/go for a walk 骑车出去/出去散步
ride a car/bicycle/horse
go for a ride on sth (对自行车只能用 “on”)

prefer [pri'fɜ:] vt.更喜欢, 宁愿

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题

1 When he was a young man, Frank ____.

- a. owned a small shop b.made spare parts for aeroplanes
c.made spare parts for bicycles d.worked hard and saved his money

1. d

(a)(b)选项是作为 “he was a young man” 中的一个部分

3 Frank used to work in a small shop. He ____.

- a.doesn't anymore b.still does c.is now d.has never done anything else

3. a

not anymore 不再

I will not make the mistake anymore.

4 He used to work fourteen hours a day. He did this ____ day.

- a.one b.some c.each d.a

4. c

one day 有一天 / some day 某一天 / a 作为计量单位的一部分

I will beat you some day.总有一天我会打败你

every day / each day 每天

8 Frank is the ____ of a business company.

- a.director b.headmaster c.superior d.leader

8. a

leader 起带头作用的人

headmaster [hed'mɑ:stə(r)] 校长

direction [di'rekʃən, dai'rekʃən] 方向

director 管理公司或单位整个事务的人

(director [di'rektə, dai'rektə] n.主任, 主管, 导演, (机关)首长, (团体)理事, (公司)董事, 指挥仪, 控制器)

Frank is a director of a business company

superior 监理

(superior [sju:'piəriə] n.长者, 高手, 上级 adj.较高的, 上级的, 上好的, 出众的, 高傲的)

12 He was still smiling when the door opened and his wife ____.

- a.went in b.entered in c.entered d.entered into

12. c

into 后面一定要加地点

enter 既是及物动词, 也是不及物动词

enter=go in/come in 如 return=go back

go in 与 come in 都可以用 enter 代替, 但 go in(离说话人越来越远) 与 come in(离说话人越来越近) 方向

不一样,文中强调的是“进去”而非“进来”

§ Lesson 32 Shopping made easy 购物变得很方便

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★once adj 曾经, 以前

① long long ago = once 很久以前 ② once 一次

I visited my mother once a month. (一次)

③ once 连接从句, 表示“一旦”

Once you leave my company, you must return the house.

★temptation n 诱惑

temptation to+动词原形

temptation to do sth 什么的诱惑

temptation to steal

resist the temptation to do 抵抗不了什么的诱惑 (resist [ri'zist] vt.抵抗, 反抗, 抗, 忍得住)

I can't resist the temptation to laugh.

★article n 物品, 东西

article 文章 : this is a good article

article/thing 不可相互取代

article 强调的是商店里的一个一个的东西, 是可数名词, 单独的东西, 独立的个体

thing 指任何的东西

cargo ['kɑ:gəu] n.船货, (车、船、飞机等运输的)货物

goods 货物, 商店里的货物的总称

★wrap v 包裹

Please wrap them (up) for me 请替我把他们包好

wrap sth up

pack : 指为了携带, 运输的方便而打包

I will take/get/have it. please wrap them for me / please pack them for me.

★simply adv 仅仅

simply : only/just

★arrest v 逮捕

arrest the criminal

criminal ['kriminl] n.罪犯, 犯罪者 adj.犯罪的, 犯法的, 罪恶的

arrest one's attention 吸引某人的注意

the criminal was arrested.

Sb. be under arrest 某人被逮捕

control/under control 控制/被控制

shopping made easy

make : 1、制造

2、使....怎么样

make the room clean (clean adj 宾补)

make shopping easy

Shopping be made easy(句子)

Made 为过去分词, 有“被”的意思

标题不用句子, 所以标题省略 be

【Text】

Lesson 32 Shopping made easy 购物变得很方便

First listen and then answer the question.听录音, 然后回答以下问题.

Who was the thief?

People are not so honest as they once were. The temptation to steal is greater than ever before--especially in large shops. A detective recently watched a well-dressed woman who always went into a large store on Monday mornings. One Monday, there were fewer people in the shop than usual when the woman came in, so it was easier for the detective to watch her. The woman first bought a few small articles. After a little time, she chose one of the most expensive dresses in the shop and handed it to an assistant who wrapped it up for her as quickly as possible. Then the woman simply took the parcel and walked out of the shop without paying. When she was arrested, the detective found out that the shop assistant was her daughter. The girl gave her mother a free dress once a week !

参考译文

人们不再像以前那样诚实了. 偷窃的诱惑力比以往任何时候都更强烈——特别是在大的商店里. 一名侦探最近注意上了一位穿着讲究的妇女, 她总是在星期一上午进入一家大商场. 有一个星期一, 当这位妇女走进这家商场时, 里面的人比往常少, 因此, 侦探比较容易监视她. 这位妇女先是买了几样小商品. 过了一会, 她又选了商场里最昂贵的一件衣服, 把它递给了售货员. 那售货员以最快的速度为她包好了衣服. 然后, 那妇女拿过包就走出了商场, 根本没有付钱. 她被逮捕后, 侦探发现原来那售货员是她的女儿. 那姑娘每星期“送”她母亲一件免费的衣服!

【课文讲解】

not so...as/not as...as 表示比较, 不如

as...as...和什么一样

as+adj/adv+as+比较对象

as quickly as possible 尽可能快

He is as tall as I.

This case is as light as that one. (轻)

It is as heavy as that one. 这个东西和那个东西一样重

as...as...的否定形式是 not so...as.../not as ... as...

It is not as heavy as that one. 这个东西不如那个东西重

I am not as tall as you.

I am taller than you/you are not as tall as I.

less + 原级=not as...as...=not so...as... 译为“不如”

not as + 原级 + as / less + 原级 + than 意思一样, 区别: 一个用“as”, 一个“than”

I am not so lucky as those fisherman.

they are 与 they were 在用不同时态比

you are beautiful. you were beautiful

you are more beautiful than you were. 你比过去漂亮多了

you look better than you were. (省略句 : You look better.)

It was my car. / Is this your car? 注意它们的区别

I think 想 / I thought 原以为

you were worse 表示 you are better : 你过去更差劲, 表示现在比以前更好了

要表现现在与过去的比较, 有两种方式 :

1、they are 与 they were 或 it is /it was 等在用不同时态比

2、用短语 than ever before

People are not so honest as before = people are not so honest as they once were.

specially ['speʃəli] adv.特别地, 临时地

impulsion [ɪm'pʌlʃ(ə)n] n.冲动

adventure [əd'ventʃə] n.冒险, 冒险的经历 v.冒险

watch : 观察, 监视; 当心(口语中)

watch the enemy (enemy ['enimi] n.敌人, 仇敌, [集合名词]敌军, [喻]大敌 adj.敌人的, 敌方的)

watch sth 当心 : watch your head (威胁)

well-done

well+动词的过去分词

design [di'zeɪn] n.设计, 图案, 花样, 企图, 图谋, (小说等的)构思, 纲要 v.设计, 计划, 谋划, 构思

well-designed 设计得不错

well-educated 有教养的 (educated ['edju:kertɪd] adj.受过教育的, 有教养的)

as usual 象平常

than usual 比平常

be 动词+形容词+for sb to do sth

so it was easier for the detective to watch her. (句中用 "easier" 有潜在的比较含义)

it 是形式主语, for sb.中的 sb 是逻辑主语

The teacher bought a lot of dresses to make her more beautiful.(更漂亮, 不用 "more" 时会让人产生误会)

用 more 是表示对别人的尊重

out of politeness 出于礼貌 (politeness n.有礼, 优雅)

after a little time 过了一会儿

choose [tʃu:z] vt. (chose [tʃəuz]; chosen['tʃəʊzn])

hand...to...递给(比较有权威的人) pass to 一个一个的传递(更常用)

hand in 上交

wrap sth up for sb

as quickly as possible.尽可能的快

She +chose+最高级+and+(并列结构)+handed it to +宾语+定语从句.

handed it to an assistant [hand it tu: ən ə'sɪstənt] 注意 : 前一个以 "o" 结尾, 后一个以 "元音" 开头的, 读时需再在它们之间加一个[w]音, 又如 : my heart go on. [gəʊwɔn]

find out 发现

find/find out

find sth. (sth 是看得见, 摸得着的, 具体的)

I find the pen. (pen 是具体的)

find out 后跟的宾语一般是抽象的

find out the truth 发现真相

free 免费的

fee 交费 : fee parking 收费的停车场

课文读十遍

【special difficulties】难点

a 强调的是后面的名词; one 强调的是 “一个” 的意思

Excise: Put in a/an or one: 用 a/an 或 one 填空 :

_____ day I received _____ postcard from Harry. He invited me to go on _____ excursion. As he was setting out that afternoon, there was only _____ thing to do. I had to send _____ fax. I went to my desk and picked up _____ form. I wrote _____ fax of _____ word: NO.

one/a/an/one/a/a/a/one

【composition】作文

I(came)(arrived at)the office late as usual(so)(but) Mr. Blake(saw)(understood)me(and)(or) he was very angry. ‘This is your last day here, Jones,’ he said. ‘You can(neither)(either) (stay)(sit)here(or)(nor)go home!’

arrive at /so/saw/and/stay/either/or/

come to 一定要介词+地点

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题

4 There were fewer people in the shop than usual. There were _____.

a. as many as usual b.not as many as usual c.as few as usual d.more than usual

answer:B

many not (as) so.....as

7 It was one of the most expensive dresses _____ the shop.

a.in b.of c.from d.to

most expensive ①+地点 用 in

②+范围表示所有的人或(书)当中, 用 of

③I have ever seen/done/heard. (定语从句) 我所看过的, 做过的, 听过的

8 A detective recently watched a well-dressed woman. He _____ her.

a.looked b.looked for c.looked after d.looked at

watch : look at

9 The woman first bought a few small articles. She bought some small _____.

a.things b.pieces c.bits d.parts

article

10 The assistant wrapped it. She _____ it.

a.papered b.turned c.enveloped d.made a parcel of

answer: D

wrapped: 包裹 envelope: 信封

made a parcel of : 制作一个包裹

12 The dress was free. It _____.

a.was priceless b.was worthless c.cost nothing d.was grateful

priceless ['praɪslɪs] adj.无价的, 极贵重的

free, worthless: 不值钱的. Something cost money.

I pay nothing.

grateful ['ɡreɪtful] adj.感激的, 感谢的

§ Lesson 33 Out of the darkness 冲出黑暗

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★darkness n 黑暗

in the darkness 在黑暗中(在没有光线的情况下)

★explain v 解释, 叙述

explanation [ˌekspləˈneɪʃən] n 解释 注意与 “explain [ɪksˈpleɪn]” 的读音不同

Could you give me an explanation 能给我一个解释吗?

Interpret [ɪnˈtɜːprɪt] v 解释, (强调翻译)语言之间的解释

interpreter [ɪnˈtɜːprɪtə] n.解释程序, 解释者, 口译人员, 翻译员, 讲解员, 注释器

interpretation [ɪnˌtɜːpriˈteɪʃən] n.解释, 阐明, 口译, 通译

interpreters [ɪnˈtɜːprɪtɪs] n.女翻译员

★coast n 海岸

bank 河岸, (两边比水面高), 坝, 堤

coast 地理意义上的海岸, 海岸线等, 感觉旁边是岩石, 很陡峭

seashore 海岸, (跟游玩有关系, 为了游玩的)

seaside : 海边

seashore/ seaside 给人的感觉--旁边是沙滩, 可以进行日光浴的感觉

★storm n 暴风雨 (只解释为 “风暴”)

snowstorm 暴风雪

thunderstorm [ˈθʌndəstɔːm] n.[气]雷暴

rain heavily 表示雨下得很大

pour [pɔː, pɒə] v.灌注, 倾泻, 涌入, 流, 倾盆大雨

the rain is pouring. 倾盆大雨

It's raining cats and dogs. 滂沱大雨

★towards prep 向, 朝, 接近

towards 强调 nearer and nearer 强调越来越近

★rock n 岩石, 礁石

rock 表示 huge stone

huge [hjuːdʒ] adj 巨大的, 极大的, 无限的

★shore n 海岸

★light n 灯光

★ahead adv 在前面

asleep, awake, alive, ahead..... a 开头的往往是表语形容词, 不管是作表语形容词(如: alight 点着的, 电亮的), 还是副词, 都放在名词的后面, 一般形容词放在名词的前面

pretty flowers / light ahead 前方的灯光

ahead 的用法:

1、放在被修饰词的后面作定语, 定语后置

2、ahead of 在什么前面: he went ahead of me. 他走在我前面

3、go ahead ①朝前走 ②请随便(回答请求时用)

--Would you mind my using your telephone? or Can I use your telephone?

--Ok, go ahead.

--Can I smoke here?

--go ahead.

--sorry+一个原因(可能是事实, 可能是个借口), 不让别人做(哪怕是一个借口)

★cliff n 悬崖, 峭壁

★struggle v 挣扎

★hospital v 医院

类似于 school

1、前面不加 the, 和它的功能有关系 go to hospital 看病

2、一旦+the, 只表示地点

I am in the hospital.

in hospital 住院 / in the hospital 在医院

如要去医院看老师 go to the hospital / 自己肚子疼 go to hospital (看病)

【Text】

Lesson 33 Out of the darkness 冲出黑暗

First listen and then answer the question. 听录音, 然后回答以下问题.

Why was the girl in hospital?

Nearly a week passed before the girl was able to explain what had happened to her. One afternoon she set out from the coast in a small boat and was caught in a storm. Towards evening, the boat struck a rock and the girl jumped into the sea. Then she swam to the shore after spending the whole night in the water. During that time she covered a distance of eight miles. Early next morning, she saw a light ahead. She knew she was near the shore because the light was high up on the cliffs. On arriving at the shore, the girl struggled up the cliff towards the light she had seen. That was all she remembered. When she woke up a day later, she found herself in hospital.

参考译文

几乎过了一个星期, 那姑娘才能讲述自己的遭遇. 一天下午, 她乘小船从海岸出发, 遇上了风暴. 天将黑时, 小船撞在了一块礁石上, 姑娘跳进了海里. 她在海里游了整整一夜才游到岸边. 在那段时间里, 她游了 8 英里. 第二天凌晨, 她看到前方有灯光, 知道自己已经接近岸边了, 因为那灯光是在高高的峭壁上. 到达岸边后, 姑娘朝着她看到的灯光方向挣扎着往峭壁上爬去. 她所记得的就是这些. 第二天她醒来时, 发现自己躺在医院里.

【课文讲解】

happen: 不及物 sth. happen to sb

What happened to

nearly 将近 nearly a week 快一个星期了

句型：① sometime later...

Three days later, my mother returned 强调某人做某事(简单句)

② ...passed and then...

Three days passed and then my mother returned. (came back) 并列句, 既强调某人做某事, 又强调时间(有多久)

③ Three days passed before my mother returned 强调时间(这么久的时间, 时间状语从句, 后面是从句)

be able to 强调有能力, 且能够成功(还强调成功)

can 只表示能力

I can swim across the river 我能游过这条河, (但没有游过, 不知道能不能成功)

I was able to swim across the river.

.....explain what..... what 引导的宾语从句

set out : set off = begin a journey

be caught in+灾难

I was caught in a rain 我遇上了一场雨

As soon as he left, it began to rain

he was caught in a rain when he left 他刚一离开, 就下雨了

遇上人用 meet, 遇上灾难用 be caught in a earthquake (earthquake ['ə:θkweik] n 地震)

towards evening 天越来越晚

struck 强调的往往是猛烈的撞击 struck hard

to : 强调朝那个方向去, 但没有强调越来越远

towards : 表面也翻为朝那个方向去, 但强调距离越来越远

spend sometime +地点

cover a distance of

the red army covered a distance of 25000... 两万五千里长征

light ahead 前方的灯光 ahead 放在被修饰词的后面

high up on the cliff adv+adv+介词短语

on doing=as soon as=the moment

as soon as=the moment 后面要加句子

on 后面一定要加动词 ing, 承认动词是由主句主语做的

.....up the cliff towards the用两个介词起到动词的作用 up : 往上(preposition)

that's all she remembered. all 作为先行词, she remember 修饰 all 作定语从句, 省略 that

That was all I wanted to say 那就是我想说的全部

That was all I can do for you=I can do nothing else for you

find + 宾语 + 宾补 : find the books tidy 发现书摆放得整齐, found the room clean

宾补可以由形容词或介词短语充当

I found the books in order. / when I woke up, I found myself in bed.

总结 :

① time passed before

...a day later...

time passed and then

② was caught in a storm (习惯用被动)

③ cover the distance of

④ 介词后面+ing, after doing, on doing

重点单词 : ahead; hospital

【Key structures】 关键句型

和时间相连的介词 : in, at, on, from...to..., until, after, before

和地点相连的介词 : from...to...

into : 进、入 tell him go into my house (离房子近用 “in” , 离房子远用 “into”)

只强调到哪里, 不一定强调到里面去, go to

out of : 从...出来, 离开 away from

leave for : 动身到某地, yesterday my father left for Tianjin

head for/to : 前往

leave for 强调 leave, head for 强调去

set out for 动身到某地

towards 强调越来越近

at : 含有一种瞄准的概念, aim at, fire at(瞄准开火), throw at ; threw to the bank

to 强调目标; towards 强调越来越近 the ball was coming towards me.; at 瞄准, 方向性

【Special difficulties】 难点

pass / past 词性的区别

词与词的区别 : 1、意思上的区别 2、词性上的区别 3、细节上的区别

pass 只有动词的概念, 其他由 past 承担(余下的词性都用 past)

I pass the garden. / I go past the garden. / I go and pass the garden

Next / other

next day 第二天; the other day = few days ago (几天前)

the other day 出现一定是过去时

next day 有可能是过去式, 有可能是将来式

Exercise 练习

Choose the correct expressions in the following: 选择正确的表达方式 :

1 I tried to telephone you(the other day)(the next day). You must have been out.

2 Have you(past)(passed)your driving test?

3 On the first day all went well. But on the(next) (other)day there was a storm.

4 The crowd cheered as the soldiers marched(past)(passed).

1. the other day 2. passed (have done)

3. next on the first day all went well, 第一天都不错 4. past (march:行军;long march:长征)

【Multiple choice questions】 多项选择题

5 How _____ was the shore? Eight miles.

a.away far b.far from c.far away d.long

far from +(必须)地点

how far away...? (away 可省略)

what's the distance...?

6 That was all she remembered. She couldn't remember _____.

a.some more b.anymore c.no more d.none more

not any more = not any longer = not any further 不再

no ; none 不会和 more 连用, some 不会出现在否定句中

12 That was all she remembered. She couldn't _____ very much

a.remind b.memorise c.recollect d.mindSentence

remind 提醒 / memorise [ˈmeməˈraɪz] 记住 / **recollect** [ˌrekəˈlekt] 回忆 / mind 介意

4 She swam to the shore_____ the night in the water.

a.having spent b.having spending c.when spending d.had spent

4、(a)

只有谓语动词才有时态

句子中如果没有连词, 但有两个动词, 要把其中一个动词变成非谓语动词

从语法上讲 a, c 都对

when 是连词的标志

when +doing : 1、主语要跟主句的相同, 2、谓语动词含有 be doing 结构 (两个条件必须满足)

when standing there I found the book very interesting.

when standing there.....(省略了 I was)

She swam to the shore after spending the whole night in the water.

§ Lesson 34 Quick work 破案 “神速”

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★station n (警察)局 (一定是与军方, 警方有关系的)

post office 邮局 / police office 警局

bureau [ˈbjʊəˈrəʊ, ˈbjʊərəʊ] 局 :

communication bureau 交通局 (communication [kəˌmjuːniˈkeɪʃn])

I went to the police 我去警察局

★most adv 相当, 非常

只有加 “the” 时译为 “最”, 加 “a” 或什么也不加时译为 “非常”, “相当” (“very” 的概念)

a most interesting / I was most surprised.

【Text】

Lesson 34 Quick work 破案 “神速”

First listen and then answer the question.听录音, 然后回答以下问题.

How long had the police taken to find his bicycle?

Ted Robinson has been worried all the week. Last Tuesday he received a letter from the local police. In the letter he was asked to call at the station. Ted wondered why he was wanted by the police, but he went to the station yesterday and now he is not worried any more. At the station, he was told by a smiling policeman that his bicycle had been found. Five days ago, the policeman told him,

the bicycle was pinged up in a small village four hundred miles away. It is now being sent to his home by train. Ted was most surprised when he heard the news. He was amused too, because he never expected the bicycle to be found. It was stolen twenty years ago when Ted was a boy of fifteen !

参考译文

丹·鲁宾逊焦虑了整整一个星期。上星期二他收到当地警察局的一封信，要他到警察局去一趟。丹奇怪警察为什么找他，但昨天还是去了，结果他不再担心了。在警察局里，一位面带笑容的警察告诉他，他的自行车找到了。那位警察对他说，那辆自行车是5天前在400英里外的一个小村里发现的，现在正用火车给他运回家来。丹听到这个消息后，惊奇万分，但又感到非常好笑，因为他从未指望那辆自行车还能找到。这是20年前丹还是一个15岁的孩子时被人偷走的！

【课文讲解】

quick: 动作的快; fast: 速度的快; soon: 时间快

have a quick meal / quick freeze 速冻

all week 用现在完成时

local new 当地新闻 / local police 当地警察局

local color 当地色彩, 地方色彩 / local people 当地人

native ['neitiv] n 土著人 adj 土生土长的

local call 市话

call at(some place) 拜访某地 / call on 拜访某人

ask/tell/expect/want/allow/request/order sb to do sth 请求某人做某事

you was wanted to do sth.

he was told that/to do (被动) / someone told him that... (主动)

sb. was told: 某人被告知; 有人告诉 sb : I was told that yesterday you did sth wrong.

not.....any more = no more 不再, 再也不

I don't talk to you any more. 我不再会对你谈话了

I will talk to you no more.

I walked no more .我不再走了

five miles away 这一类结构可以直接做定语, 放在被修饰词后面

home 前一旦加修饰词(如 "this"), 则其为名词

the school is five miles away. 学校在五里外 / The school five miles away... 五里外的学校

I live in a house which is five miles away. = I live in a house five miles away.

His home : home 前一旦加修饰词(如文中的 his), 则其为名词

.....expected the bicycle to be found. 被动语态

I want my mother to wash clothes. / I want the clothes to be washed. (不关心谁洗, 被洗)

【letter writing】书信写作

In the address we usually write 'St.' for 'Street' ; 'Rd.' for 'Road' ; 'Sq.' for 'Square' ; 'Ave.' for 'Avenue' ; 'Pl.' for 'Place' . We write words like 'Lane' and 'Drive' in full.

在地址中我们通常使用缩略形式, 如 : "St." (Street); "Rd." (Road); "Sq." (Square); "Ave." (Avenue); "Pl." (Place), 而有些词则不用缩略形式, 如 "Lane" 和 "Drive" .

pics. [piks] : pictures / secs. [sek; sɛk]: seconds wait secs 等几秒钟

td.co. / wto

【Special difficulties】难点

call on 拜访

call (sb) up 给某人打电话

一旦一个词可以省略而意思不改，这个词可能是副词，如“up”是副词

如果宾语是代词，后面的词组由动词和副词组成，代词一定会放在中间

call on you/call you up

go to the pictures 去看电影

call off 取消 / call out 大声喊 / call at 去了某地+地点 / call in 召集

Exercise 练习 用恰当的词填空：

- 1 I called_____ you five times yesterday. Were you out?
- 2 It's too late to go to the pictures. Why don't we call the whole thing _____?
- 3 We called _____to him but he could not hear us.
- 4 I called _____ the post office on my way to work.

1、on call you up 不能说成 call up you / on (prep) call on you

2、go to the pictures 去看电影 call the whole thing off

3、call out

4、call out 去了邮局，不一定译成“拜访邮局”

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题

1 Dan was worried because _____.

- a. he received a letter b. the police wanted him
c. he went to the station yesterday d. he didn't know why the police wanted him

answer: d

8 All the police at the station are _____ men.

- a. topical b. local c. native d. neighbourly

answer: b

local: 当地的; native: 自己在这里(祖祖辈辈都在这里)

topical adj: 时事问题的; 热门话题的; 题目的 / neighbourly: 邻居的

§ Lesson 35 Stop thief! 捉贼

【New words and expressions】生词和短语

★while n 一段时间

while = some time 一小会儿

wait for a while 等一会儿

隔了一会儿 after a while

★regret v 后悔 pt pp regretted

1、regret sth

you will regret it 你会后悔的，你一定会后悔的

2、regret to do: 很遗憾要去做

3、regret doing 很遗憾已经做

I regret to tell you a bad news 我很遗憾要告诉你一个坏消息 (还没说)

I regret telling him the news 我真后悔告诉他这个消息

I regret to steal your money

4、regret that

遗憾 : pity、sorry、regret

pity n. it's a pity / sorry adj. I am sorry / regret v.

★far adv 非常

比较级前可以加修饰词, 表示程度

多一点点用 a little, 多很多用 much

far=much, 修饰形容词或副词的比较级, 注意 most 是修饰形容词或副词的, 而不是比较级

★rush v 冲

rush(用腿)冲 run 跑(速度很快)

★act v 行动

take action 采取行动

act! (口语) 行动!

★straight adv 径直

go straight on 径直往前走

★fright n 害怕

frighten ['fraitn] vt.使惊吓 vi.惊恐

frightening : 令人感到可怕的 / frightened : 自己感到可怕的

frightful=terrible adj 可怕

your handwriting is frightful 你的字真糟糕 / cold is frightful 寒冷是可怕的

一个动词能够加 ing/ed, 证明这个动词跟人的情感有关, 他的宾语就会是人

This doesn't worry me. / You frighten me.

get a fright 得到惊吓的感觉, 类似 get a surprise

I get a fright 我吓了一跳 / you give me a fright 你吓了我一跳

give sb sth

give: 给人带来感觉, 如 : give me a pleasure/an excitement/a fright

★battered adj 撞坏的

batter [bætə] n.击球手 v.打坏, 猛击

动词+ed : 被

battered : lose one's shape 被撞变形的(shape['ʃeɪp] v n)

damaged : 被刮坏的

destroyed car 车子被损害不能修 / damaged car 车子坏了, 但能修 / battered car 车变形

battered bag 破旧不堪的包("battered" 与软的东西连用时, 表示用旧了, 破旧不堪的)

★shortly adv 很快, 不久

★afterwards adv 以后

shortly afterwards 不久以后=soon

shortly=soon; afterwards=later 后来, 以后
soon: 不久以后 (可直接用)

【Text】

Lesson 35 Stop thief! 捉贼

First listen and then answer the question. 听录音, 然后回答以下问题.

How did Roy stop the thieves?

Roy Trenton used to drive a taxi. A short while ago, however, he became a busdriver and he was not regretted it. He is finding his new work far more exciting. When he was driving along Catford Street recently, he saw two thieves rush out of a shop and run towards a waiting car. One of them was carrying a bag full of money. Roy acted quickly and drove the bus straight at the thieves. The one with the money got such a fright that he dropped the bag. As the thieves were trying to get away in their car, Roy drove his bus into the back of it. While the battered car was moving away, Roy stopped his bus and telephoned the police. The thieves' car was badly damaged and easy to recognize. Shortly afterwards, the police stopped the car and both men were arrested.

参考译文

罗伊·特雷顿原是开出租汽车的, 然而就在前不久, 他开上了公共汽车, 也并不为此而感到后悔. 他发觉自己的新工作令人兴奋得多. 最近, 当他正开车在凯特福德街上行驶时, 看到有两个小偷从一家商店里冲出来, 奔向等在那里的一辆汽车, 其中一个提着一只装满钞票的提包. 罗伊行动迅速, 开车直冲窃贼而去. 拿钱的那个小偷吓得把提包都扔了. 当那两个小偷企图乘车逃跑时, 罗伊驾驶他的公共汽车撞在了那辆车的后尾上. 当那辆被撞坏的车开走后, 罗伊停下车, 给警察挂了电话. 小偷的车损坏严重, 很容易辨认. 没过多久, 警察就截住了那辆车, 两个小偷都被抓住了.

【课文讲解】

he used to drive a taxi, but now he doesn't drive a taxi any more

a short while ago=a short time ago 不久以前

however

1、可以放句首, 可以放句中

2、如果一个词两边有逗号, 证明这个词是插入语

you will regret it

find 可以用一般现在时态, 可以用进行时态

he is finding his trip very exciting

far more exciting 更有趣

along 沿着

a waiting car : 正在等候的车子

see sb do sth 看见某人做某事(强调全过程) / see sb doing 看见某人正在做某事

I see them dance (看了全过程) / I see them dancing (只看了一部分)

hear sb doing/hear sb do

如果全过程用 do, 过程中的一瞬间用 doing

另外还有类似的词有 : smell, feel, hear, watch, notice 等

full of 装满 : I have a cup full of tea.

at: 强调瞄准概念

with 一旦出现在名词后代词后就做定语, 出现在动词之后做状语

he came in with a book.(作状语) / the boy with a book came in.(作定语)

get a fright 吓了一跳

such...that.../so...that... 如此...以致于

so+形容词(副词)+that.../such+(修饰词或形容词)+名词+that

一旦有名词, 就认为形容词修饰的是名词, 前面的词也修饰的是名词

drop/fall : 掉

sb drop sth, drop vt(及物).由于不当心抓什么没抓住掉下去

fall vi(不及物) : sth fall 从上往下落

drop the money / the money fall

The chalk is falling./ I drop the chalk. (chalk [tʃɔ:k] n.粉笔, 白垩 vt.用粉笔写, 和以白垩)

as = when: 当.....时候

get away = run away 逃跑

by car /in the car

drive into 撞

stopped his car/the car stopped(与当时说话时的视觉概念有关, 一个是人为停, 一个是自己停下来)

damaged : 毁坏

....and easy to recognize = and the car was easy to recognize (用主动表被动含义)

用不定式放在形容词后面, 主动表被动含义

too...to.../ ...enough to....

stop 拦住车子

both men = two persons

stop the car

1、the driver stop the car

2、其他人 stopped the car : 拦车

stop thief 捉贼

捉, 抓 catch

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题

1 Roy Trenton _____.

- a. prefers driving a bus to driving a taxi b. prefers driving a taxi to driving a bus
c. is sorry he isn't a taxi driver d. is glad he didn't change his job

prefer ...to...更喜欢这个东西(和后面的东西比), 宁可也不

be sorry 遗憾

prefer+名词 更喜欢

I prefer tea to water

prefer+名词+to(prepos.)+名词(如为动词则+ing)

I prefer drinking tea to drinking water

prefer to(不定式的标志)+动词原形 : 更喜欢

rather than : 不喜欢, 而不是 (prep) (rather['rɑ:ðə; (US) 'ræðər])

he prefers to drive bus rather than drive a taxi.

I prefer to have an apple rather than have an orange.

3 Roy Trenton used to drive a taxi. This means he _____ a taxi.

- a. has stopped driving b. is used to driving
c. got used to driving d. still drives

used to(不定式的标志) 过去做现在不做

used to do 过去常常做现在不做了("to" 为 prep)

be used to doing sth / get used to doing sth 习惯于

I am(not) used to getting up early 我习惯起早

be used to do sth 被用来

the knife is used to cut the paper 刀被用来切纸

the boy is used to swimming in the river 那男孩习惯在河里游泳

the boy used to swim in the river 那男孩过去在河里游泳

4 He noticed two thieves _____ out of a shop.

a. to come b. are coming c. in coming d. come

answer : d

see sb. doing : 看见某人正在做某事; see sb. do : 看见某人做某事

hear : 听见

notice sb. doing / notice sb. do ; watch sb. doing / watch sb. do

b. are coming : 没有主从一致, 应为 : was coming 就对

7 The car was easy to recognize, so it wasn't _____ difficult for the police to catch the thieves.

a. much b. very c. many d. too

answer: d

too...to...: 太...以至于不能... / ...enough to...: 足以用来做某事

many 应加+名词 / much, very 一般不会与 to 连用

8 He hasn't regretted it. He _____ it.

a. isn't sorry about b. doesn't pity c. isn't pleased with d. doesn't laugh about

answer: a

be sorry about: 为什么感到遗憾(抱歉) / be pleased with: 对什么感到满意 / laugh at : 嘲笑

laugh about: 什么原因而笑

b. pity 不对是由于词性不对

11 The thief dropped the bag. He _____.

a. let it b. left it c. fell it d. let it fall

answer: d

drop vt(及物) 抓什么而没抓住 : sb drop sth. / fall vi(不及物): 什么东西往下落 : Sth fall

Let sb. do : 让某人做某事

Let : 听之任之

Make: 又强迫的意思

1、 My father makes me play football.(强迫)

2、 My father lets me play football.(听之任之, 随他去)

重点说明 :

It's easy to recognize

the apple is sweet enough to eat

如果一个不定式的前面是一个形容词, 如果主句的结局是系表结构+to, 不定式当中常用主动表被动, 在不定式的表达方式当中, 动词的宾语如果刚好是这句话的主语, 这个宾语一定不能出现

the apple is too sour to eat.(sour adj ['sauə(r)] 酸的)

.....to answer the question 这个小孩足够聪明以至于能回答这个问题, “the question” 不是主语故一定要出现

the question is easy enough to answer.

文中 “...easy to recognize(car)” 因 car 是主语, 所以不能出现

在不定式当中, 也许有可能用主动表达被动含义, 及物动词后面一般加宾语(这个宾语就是这句话的主语就不加), 又如: the clothes are too comfortable to wear.

【Special difficulties】难点

so/such 如此

such...that.../so...that...如此以致于

so+形容词(副词)+that.../such+(a, an 修饰词或形容词)+名词+that

一旦有名词, 就认为形容词修饰的是名词, 前面的词也修饰的是名词

如果名词是可数名词单数才要加 a 和 an, 反过来如果是可数名词单数, 前面一定要加 a 或 an

Exercise 练习 用 so, such 或 such a 填空:

- 1 He ran _____ quickly that I could not catch him.
- 2 Whoever told you _____ thing?
- 3 You should not make _____ many mistakes.
- 4 You should not say _____ things.
- 5 This picture is _____ beautiful that I shall hang it in my room.
- 6 It was _____ good book that it was bought by a film company.
- 7 It was _____ extraordinary exhibition that I went twice.
- 8 He is _____ lazy boy that he never does anything.

1、so 2、such a 3、so 4、such 5、so 6、such a 7、such an 8、such a

如果形容词是表示数量的(many, much, little, few), 一律用 so

there is so little time left that we must hurry.

there is such a little(小) bird that I can't see it. (“little” 不会和可数名词连用, 如连用不会译成 “数量少”, 而应译为 “小”)

he is so lazy a boy/he is such a lazy boy.

如果有几个以上的形容词共同修饰一个名词的时候, 冠词放在第一位, 这句话中冠词不放在第一位, 说明 “a” 与 “boy” 有关系, “lazy” 从意思上与 “boy” 有关系, 但从强调点上与 “boy” 没关系, 它的强调点在 “lazy” 上

such+冠词+形容词+名词/so+形容词+冠词+名词

§ Lesson 36 Across the Channel 横渡海峡

【New words and expressions】生词和短语

★record ['rekɔ:d] n. 记录 record [rɪ'kɔ:d] vt

如果同一词音节落在第一个音节的重音, 肯定是名词, 重音落在第二个音节肯定是动词

recorder [rɪ'kɔ:də(r)] 录音机

如 present n adj ['preznt] v ['prɪznt] / desert n ['dezət] v [dɪ'zɜ:t]

break the record 破记录 / set up a new record 创记录

hold the record 保持记录 / keep the record 保持记录

equal['i:kwəl] adj.相等的, 均等的, 胜任的, 平静的, 合适的, 不相上下的

n.相等的事物(或数量), 对手, 匹敌, 同辈

vt.等于, 比得上等号, 等于

equalize the recorder 平记录 (equalize ['i:kwəlaiz] vt.使相等, 补偿)

★strong adj 强壮的

as strong as horse 象牛一样壮(马)

strong wind 大风 heavy rain 大雨

strong girl (暗示不是很瘦, 结实)

strong mind 意志坚强

out of sight, out of mind 眼不见, 心不烦

sturdy ['stɜ:di] adj. : 结实的, 强健的

robust [rə'bast] [rəʊ'bast] adj. : 身体结实 (“乐百事” 英文名)

strong swimmer :

strong + 运动员 : 获胜把握比较大, 强有力的(“强有力的对手” 中的 “强有力” 就用 “strong” 表达)

swimmer : 确切的意思为 : 游泳者, 游泳的人

athlete ['æθli:t] n : 运动员(运动会上常说的运动员)

swimming athlete 游泳运动员 (这里的 “-ing” 以为 “用来”)

★swimmer n 游泳运动员, 游泳者

★succeed v 成功

success n 成功, 成功的人

successful adj 成功的

succeed in doing sth / be successful in doing sth

fail v fail to do sth

failure ['feiljə] n. 失败, 失败者, 缺乏, 失灵, 故障, 破产, 疏忽, <美>不及格

★train v 训练

train sb to do sth (教, 而且有让人形成某种技能) / teach sb to do sth (只是教, 会不会不管)

trainer 教练 / training center 训练中心

★anxiously adv 焦急

anxiousl adj

★intend v 打算

① be to/② be about to/③ be going to: 表将来

④ intend to do sth=be going to do sth 打算做某事

⑤ plan 计划 : plan to do sth 计划作某事

⑥ mean to do sth 打算做某事 : what do you mean to do(intend to do)

⑦ aim to do sth 打算做某事

aim [eim] n 目标

I am going to have a company. / I intend to have a company.

⑧ I will do sth=I intend to do sth

plan to do / mean to do / aim to do / hope to do / want to do 这类词本身没有将来时态, 本身就表示

将来, 用一般现在时表示将来时

★solid adj 固体的, 硬的

the ice is solid 冰很硬

ballet dancers/football player (ballet ['bæleɪ, bæ'leɪ] n. 芭蕾舞, 芭蕾舞剧, 芭蕾舞乐曲)

1 work as+地点

2 工作怎么样

(1) interesting/boring/exciting (bore [bɔ:(r)] v n 使烦扰)

(2) 人对工作的喜欢程度, she/he likes the job very much.

channel 海峡

the Channel=the English channel (当 “C” 大写时, 一定是指 the English channel)

across 横渡, across the Channel

【Text】

Lesson 36 Across the Channel 横渡海峡

First listen and then answer the question. 听录音, 然后回答以下问题.

What is Debbie going to try to do?

Debbie Hart is going to swim across the English Channel tomorrow. She is going to set out from the French coast at five o'clock in the morning. Debbie is only eleven years old and she hopes to set up a new world record. She is a strong swimmer and many people feel that she is sure to succeed. Debbie's father will set out with her in a small boat. Mr. Hart has trained his daughter for years. Tomorrow he will be watching her anxiously as she swims the long distance to England. Debbie intends to take short rests every two hours. She will have something to drink but she will not eat any solid food. Most of Debbie's school friends will be waiting for her on the English coast. Among them will be Debbie's mother, who swam the Channel herself when she was a girl.

参考译文

黛比·哈特准备明天横渡英吉利海峡。她打算早上 5 点钟从法国海岸出发。黛比只有 11 岁, 她希望创一项新的世界纪录。她是一个游泳能手, 很多人认为她一定能成功。黛比的父亲将乘一条小船同她一道出发。哈特先生训练她的女儿已经多年了, 明天他将焦急地注视着女儿游过这段漫长的距离到达英国。黛比计划每两小时休息一下。她将喝些饮料, 但不吃固体食物。黛比的大部分同学将在英国海岸等候她。他们当中还会有黛比的母亲, 她本人还是个姑娘时, 也曾横渡过英吉利海峡!

【课文讲解】

at five o'clock in the morning 先说小单位, 再说大单位

hope 希望: hope to do: 希望自己做 / hope that+从句: 希望别人做

she hope to set up a new world recorder.

feel (that), 宾语从句中的 that 可以省略

must + 动词原形 表示一定, 一种推测

be sure to do: 一定能够, 肯定语气比 “must” 强

sure [[ʊə(r), ʃʊə(r)] adj. 对...有把握, 确信某事, 稳当的, 可靠的 adv. 的确, 当然

Are you sure? 你肯定吗? sure 肯定

be sure of(对某件事情, 名词做宾语)

be sure to do(对某件事情动词有把握)

be sure that(对某件事情, 某人做某事有把握)

I am sure that I can do sth=I am sure of sth=I am sure to do sth.

I am sure of my success. / I am sure to succeed.

I am sure that I can succeed. (be successful)

...with her 同她一道

by boat / in a boat 乘船

for years 几年

will be doing

as=when

she swims the long distance to England.

swim + 距离 : 游过多长距离

will be watching sb anxiously as... : 当...的时候人们会密切(焦急)关注

anxiously ['æŋkʃəs] adj.

the war broke out 战争爆发

broke out 发生; 爆发

all the world will be watching anxiously as the war broke out.

'meet the parents' —— 《再见岳父母大人》影片名

we will be watching anxiously as you went (go) out.(电影中的一句台词, 表示“牵挂”)

plan to / intend to

have(take) a break(rest) 休息 / take short rests 休息短时间

every two hours

I will plant another tree every three trees. 每隔三棵树我会再种一棵

something to drink : 可以喝的东西, 不定式作定语

have something to eat/read/do

most/most of

most 直接用 : most of + the : Most young people / Most of the young people

will be waiting

I will be right here waiting for your

on the coast 在海边

among [ə'mʌŋ] prep.在...之中, ...之一

among them 在他们当中

oneself 放在动词或一句话的后面, 往往起强调的作用

定语从句中的关系词往往指代的含义是前面的先行词

限定性定语从句/非限定性定语从句

如果有逗号的是非限定性定语从句, 没有逗号的是限定性定语从句

限定性定语从句可以用, 非限定性定语从句不可以用的是 that

限定性定语从句少了后面的句子, 这句话意思不完整, 非限定性定语从句前面的句子完整, 后面的句子起着补充说明的作用

非限定性定语从句一旦有逗号隔开, 后面的句子和前面的句子关系不紧密, 起补充作用

among : 在...之间(三者或三者以上)

between them : 左右各一个人 : among them 很多人之中

Among them will be Debbie's mother, who swam the Channel herself when she was a girl.

倒装句 : 地点+will+名词

常见的倒装句：here you are / here is my ticket

among them will be Debbie's mother

全部倒装：地点(介词短语或副词)+动词+名词

倒装句型中如果主语是名词，放在动词后面，如果是代词，放在动词前面，如 here you are.

【Key structure】 关键句型

She is going to swim across the Channel tomorrow. 将来时(KS12) (参见第 12 课关键句型)

Instead of saying:

We can say :

除了这种表述方法外：

还可以说：

I shall travel by air.

I am going to travel by air.

He will sell his car.

He is going to sell his car.

They will move to a new house.

They are going to move to a new house.

I intend to write to him.

I am going to write to him.

She means to ask for an explanation.

She is going to ask for an explanation.

We can often use going to in place of shall or will in simple statements and questions. We cannot use going to in sentences like this one :

在陈述句和疑问句中，我们常常可用 going to 来替代 shall 或 will. 在类似下列的句子中我们不能用 going to :

You will enjoy yourself if you travel by sea. 如果你乘船旅游，你会玩得很开心的。

be going to 一定强调计划和安排，顺理成章的不用 be going to
tomorrow will be Tuesday.

在运动场上常用的口语：

well to go / well done / yea / yeah

bingo ['biŋgəu] int.(因出乎意料的成功而表示兴奋的叫声)瞧!

go 加油

【Special Difficulties】 难点

Words often confused 经常容易混淆的词

a Watch, Look at, Follow.

Watch (something happening) 观看 (正在发生的事情) : Tomorrow he will be watching her anxiously. (11.6-7)

Look at 看 : Look at the blackboard. Look at your book. Look at this picture. 看黑板. 看你的书. 看这幅画.

Follow (go after) 跟随 (走在后面) : I followed my mother into the kitchen. 我跟着母亲走进厨房.

b Solid, Firm, Stable.

Solid (not liquid) 固体的 (非流体的) : She will not eat any solid food. (1.9)

Firm (not loose) 稳固的 (不松动) : I've fixed that hook. It is firm now. 我把鱼钩固定好了，现在它很牢固.

(not doubtful) (无疑) : He gave me a firm refusal. 他断然拒绝.

(not lenient) 严格的 : You must be very firm with that child. 对那个孩子你一定要非常严格.

Stable (often describing character) 坚定的 (常用来形容性格) : He is a very stable person. 他是一个性格坚定的人.

watch/look at/follow

watch something happening

look at : 看

follow : 跟随, follow me

solid/firm/stable

solid : 硬的(固体)

firm : 稳固的(不松动的),不会更改的

stable ['steɪbl] adj. : 坚定的(性格)

firm/stable

firm(人) : 下定决心, 不会改变主意 firm decision

stable(人) : 稳重的, 可靠的

Exercise 练习 用上面的词填空 :

1 I came to a _____ decision and I will not change my mind.

2 I stood on the bridge and _____ the boats passing by.

3 May I _____ your photograph album? 4 The ice in the pond is so _____ that you can walk to it.

5 I tried to persuade him but he remained _____.

1. I came to a firm decision and i will not change my mind

come to a decision/make a decision

come to a conclusion 得出结论 (conclusion [kən'klu:ʒən] n.结束, 缔结, 结论)

2. watch the boats

watch sb doing sth. (句型结构)

watch 得出结论直接加宾语, 及物动词

by 这里是 adv, 在附近

3. look at

4. so solid 如此的坚硬

enough to do 足以做某事

the ice in the pond is solid enough to walk on. (不加 "it", 见 35 课, "it" 不能出现)

the ice in the pond is so solid that you can walk on it

the room is clean enough to live in

the room is so clean that we can live there

5. I tried to persuade him but he remained firm. (不改变主意的用 "firm")

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题

3 She is sure to succeed. Many people feel sure _____ it.

a. to b. for c. in d. of

answer: D

sure of+n

sure to do

sure that ...

4 He will be watching her anxiously _____ she swims the long distance to England.

a. though meanwhile b. meanwhile c. while d. during

answer: C

as 由于, 当.....时候

as(当.....时候)=when, while

during prep.介词, 后面不会加句子

though meanwhile : 虽然, 用转折的意思, 而本句中没有转折的意思

meanwhile=at the same time 同时

meanwhile 不是连词 (=meantime) n.其间, 其时 adv.其间

however adv 然而

连词连接两个句子 : 副词只能修饰句子或动词, 起修饰作用

8 Debbie hopes to _____ a new world record.

a. do b. make c. build d. fix

8 set up a recorder

make a recorder 破记录

9 She is sure to succeed. She's sure to be _____.

a. successful b. success c. succession d. a succession

9 succession 继任者 (succession [sək'seʃən] n.连续, 继承, 继任, 演替, [农业] 轮栽, 连续性)

successful adj

success n

be +adj 系表结构

be+n 前者=后者 (前者和后者是等号关系)

§ Lesson 37 The Olympic Games 奥林匹克运动会

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★Olympic adj. 奥林匹克的

Olympic games 奥林匹克运动会, 简称 : The Games (一般大型运动会用 "games")

★hold (held held) v 召开

have a meeting 召开会议 / hold a meeting 召开会议 / hold a party 召开宴会

hold 习惯用被动, 被动 : the meeting will be held

the Olympic games will be held in China in 2008. (two thousand eight)

★government n 政府

★immense adj 巨大的

big, large 大的

huge [hju:dʒ] adj. (体积的) 巨大的, 极大的, 无限的

great 大的, 伟大的

immense [i'mens] 极大的, 无边的, 一望无际的

the universe is immense. (universe ['ju:nivə:s] n. 宇宙, 世界, 万物, 领域)

immense ocean

fantastic [fæn'tæstik] (建筑等) 表惊叹, 还可表示好极的, 宏伟的

great man 伟人 big man 大人物 large man 大块头

huge (体积) 巨大, 庞大

big 一般的大 / large 数量的大, 尺寸的大 / great 伟大的, 重要的

★stadium n 露天体育场

playground 操场

sports field 运动场, 体育场 sports 各种各样的运动

gymnasium [dʒim'neiziəm, gim'nɑ:ziəm] n. 健身房, 体育馆 体育

gym : [dʒim] =gymnasium 体育 n. 体育馆, 体操

篮球场 gym ; 足球场 stadium

★standard n 标准

high standard 高标准

Olympic standard 意为体育最高标准(运动会中的最高标准)

★capital n 首都

capital adj 另义 : 大写的, 重要的

★fantastic adj 巨大的

★design v 设计

designer 设计师

well-designed 设计不错

【Text】

Lesson 37 The Olympic Games 奥林匹克运动会

First listen and then answer the question. 听录音, 然后回答以下问题.

When was the last time this country hosted the Olympic Games?

The Olympic Games will be held in our country in four years' time. As a great many people will be visiting the country, the government will be building new hotels, an immense stadium, and a fine new swimming pool. 'They will also be building new roads and a special railway-line. The Games will be held just outside the capital and the whole area will be called 'Olympic City'. Workers will have completed the new roads by the end of this year. By the end of next year, they will have finished work on the new stadium. The fine modern buildings have been designed by Kurt Gunter. Everybody will be watching anxiously as the new buildings go up. We are all very excited and are looking forward to the Olympic Games because they have never been held before in this country.

参考译文

4 年以后, 奥林匹克运动会将在我们国家举行. 由于将有大批的人到我们国家来, 所以政府准备建造一些新的饭店、一个大型体育场和一个新的奥运会标准游泳池. 他们还将修筑一些新的道路和一条铁路专线. 奥运会就在首都郊区举办, 整个地区将被称作“奥林匹克城”. 工人们将在今年年底前把新路铺好; 到明年年底, 他们将把新体育场建成. 这些巨大的现代化建筑是由库尔特·冈特设计的. 大家都将急切地注视着新建筑的建成. 我们都非常激动, 盼望着奥运会的到来, 因为在这个国家里还从未举办过奥运会.

【课文讲解】

4 years later 四年后

the olympic games will be held in our country...

as/because 引导原因

a large number of people/a great many people 大批的人

be visiting the country

be building 建设

an immense stadium 一个大型体育场

a new Olympic-standard swimming pool 一个高标准的游泳池

be building 修建

special railway-line 专线铁路

outside the capital 市郊

Olympic city 奥林匹克城

by the end of this year 到今年年底前

by 完成时的标志, 表示到.....为止

现在完成式 : 到现在某一点时间为止

过去完成式 : 到过去某一点时间为止

将来完成式 : 到将来某一点时间为止, 某个动作已经发生

will have done

by the end of next year 到明年年底前

by the end of next year, they will have finished/completed the work
on the new stadium.

work on...的工程

modern buildings 现代化建筑

fantastic 巨大的

...have been designed by... 已经设计好了, 用现在完成时

Everybody will be watching anxiously...人们都将密切注视

as the new building go up

as 随着, 引导从句, 状语从句不用将来时态, 不能用 "...will be built"

be built 强调建造

go up 拔地而起

be excited 激动的

look forward to+n./ doing 期待(很高兴的), 一定要加名词或动词 "-ing", 与 "expect" (期待)的区别,
"expect" 没有高不高兴的成分

look forward to your letter

because they never been held before in this country

before adv 在此之前

将来完成时 will have done (till, until)

I will have finished it until/till tomorrow.

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题

4 By the end of next year they will have finished the new stadium. This means they will finish it
_____ the end of next year.

a. at b. before c. after d. long before

by the end of next year

by: 到.....为止, 在.....之前, 不迟于 = before

long before : 在之前很久

7 We are looking forward to the Olympic Games, _____ they have never been held before in this
country.

a. for b. why c. because of d. due to

7. because : 强调后面的是原因

because of : (介词短语), 不会加句子

why——不能直接做连词

due to : (介词短语)由于 + 名词

His success is due to his hard work

12 We are looking forward to the Games. So we will be _____ when they begin.

a. pleased b. unhappy c. sorry d. impatient

12. look forward to : 期待(高兴)

expect : 期待

be pleased : 感到高兴地, 令人满意地 / be pleased to do sth : 乐于做某事

impatient [im'peɪʃənt] adj.不耐烦的, 急躁的, 不耐心的

5 The buildings have been designed by Kurt Gunter, so the designs _____.

a. are not complete yet b. are now complete

c. will be completed soon d. haven't been completed yet

5. 完成的概念

be complete.(adj)

complete : (adj)完全的 (v)完成

are now completed / are complete 都可以

【Special Difficulties】 难点

Study these sentences.

细读以下的例句 :

a Hold. The Olympic Games will be held in our country. (1.1)

This verb may be used in the sense of 'conduct', 'observe' or 'celebrate'.

这个动词可以用来表示“进行”、“纪念”或“庆祝”的意思。

A festival is held at Edinburgh every year. 节日庆典每年在爱丁堡举行一次。

We are going to hold a meeting tomorrow to discuss the subject. 明天我们准备开一次会来讨论这个议题。

The next conference will be held in Geneva. 下次会议将在日内瓦举行。

b Look.

The verb look has a different meaning in each sentence : 动词 look 在每句话中有不同的含义 :

Look forward to (expect with pleasure) 盼望 (高兴地期待着) : I am looking forward to the summer holidays. 我正盼望暑假的到来。

Look out (be careful) 当心 (注意) : Look out! A bus is coming. 当心点, 公共汽车来了。

Look up (get information from a reference book) 查阅 (从参考书中获取资料) : I don't understand this word. I shall look it up in a dictionary. 我不懂这个词的词义, 我要查一下字典。

(visit) 拜访 : Don't forget to look me up when you return. 回来时别忘了来看我。

a、hold(会议, 宴会)

b、look

look forward to+名词/动词的-ing

I look forward to your letter. / I look forward to receiving your letter.

look out : 当心(正发生的) / be careful 事情发生之前

look out of the windows 窗外

“威胁” 用 “watch” watch your head 当心你的头

look up : 查阅 , 拜访

look up words in the dictionary 查字典

look up sth in the book 查参考书, look up message in the book

look sb up 拜访 (visit), 习惯上用于拜访某人

He did not look up from his desk. (lesson 15 P68)

Exercise 练习 用 hold 或 look 的正确形式填空 :

- 1 We shall be _____ a party tomorrow. I am _____ it very much.
- 2 _____! You nearly **knocked that jug over!**
- 3 They say he is very famous. I shall _____ him _____ in ‘Who's who’ .
- 4 The students' union _____ an interesting debate on capital punishment yesterday.
- 5 My friend Ingrid lives in Stockholm. Why don't you _____ her _____ when you're there?
- 6 Examinations will be _____ next week. I'm not _____ them.

1.holding.....looking forward to.....

be + 动词-ing

2. **knock over** : 撞到

3. 'Who's Who' : 《名人大全》

4.held.....

debate on : 辩论

debate [di'beɪt] v. 争论, 辩论 n. 争论, 辩论; union ['ju:njən] n. 联合, 合并, 结合, 联盟, 协会

口语过程三步 : 1、dialogue(对话) 2、discussion(讨论) 3、debate(争论)

capital : 首都, 大写

capital punishment : 极刑 (punishment ['pʌnɪʃmənt] n. 惩罚, 处罚, 惩处)

国外的极刑 : **hot seat** 电椅

5.look (he) up.....

look(sb) up : 拜访, 看看, 在英文中并不一定是很正式的, 只是去看看的意思

6.held.....looking forward to.....

hold an exam : 举行考试 / **take the exam** : 接受考试

【Composition】作文

Rewrite the following sentences using the joining words in parentheses :

用括号中的连词来改写以下句子 :

- 1 My brother is going to the Olympic Games. I am going to the Olympic Games. (Both...and)
- 2 We bought tickets a long time ago. We shall be leaving soon. (and)
- 3 We shall see the Games. We shall visit many parts of the country. (not only...but...)

1 Both my brother and I are going to the Olympic Games. “both...and...” 作复数看

2 We bought tickets a long time ago and (we) shall be leaving soon.

3 We shall not only see the Games but visit many parts of the country as well.

§ Lesson 38 Everything except the weather 唯独没有考虑到天气

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★except prep 除了

except /except for /besides /apart from

★Mediterranean n (the ~)地中海

Mediterranean [ˌmedɪtə'reɪnjən] n.地中海 (=Mediterranean sea, 位于欧, 亚, 非三大洲之间), 地中海沿岸的居民 adj.地中海的, 地中海民族的

★complain v 抱怨

complain to sb : 向某人抱怨 / complain of/about : 抱怨某事

★continually [kən'tɪnjuəli] adv 不断地

continue [kən'tɪnju:] v.继续, 连续, 延伸

continuously [kən'tɪnjuəsli] : 连续不断地 / continually : 连续地, 频繁地(时断时续)

the baby cry continually.

★bitterly adv 刺骨地

bitterly cold : 刺骨地寒冷: It's bitterly cold.

chilly : 寒冷的

bitterly disappointed : 彻底的失望: I am bitterly disappointed.

disappoint [ˌdɪsə'pɔɪnt] vt.使失望

★sunshine n 阳光

也可直接用 “sun” 表示阳光

a drop of : 一缕

a drop of sunshine 一缕阳光

【Text】 要求背诵课文

Lesson 38 Everything except the weather 唯独没有考虑到天气

First listen and then answer the question.听录音, 然后回答以下问题.

Why did Harrison sell his house so quickly?

My old friend, Harrison, had lived in the Mediterranean for many years before. He returned to England. He had often dreamed of retiring in England and had planned to settle down in the country. He had no sooner returned than he bought a fine house and went to live there. Almost immediately he began to complain about the weather, for even though it was still summer, it rained continually and it was often bitterly cold. After so many years of sunshine, Harrison got a shock. He acted as if he had never lived in England before. In the end, it was more than he could bear. He had hardly had time to settle down when he sold the house and left the country. The dream he had had for so many years ended there. Harrison had thought of everything except the weather.

【课文讲解】

dream of : 想, 梦见(梦想)

think of : 想(思维的活动), 考虑

settle down : 定居

no sooner...than : (关联词)一...就...

同义 as soon as, the moment, on doing

had no sooner done...than 一般过去时, 固定用法 (时态结构 : 完成时态 + than + 一般过去时)

he had no sooner arrived than he called me up.

no sooner 放在句首就要倒装 : No sooner had he arrived than he called me up(倒装)

almost immediately : 几乎马上, 很快地 (时间上的快, 常用于写作)

for : (连词)表示因为(解释说明, 附加的)=because 因为(一定要说的)

even though--从句的连词, "即使"(让步状语从句)

even though I came here, my mind was absent 尽管我人来了, 但我还是心不在焉

for+并列句, 做主句

so many years : 这么多年

after + ...

after it rained for days = after so many days of rain 在这么多天雨之后

after seven years of hard work, he was successful

after ten years of staying in abroad, he decided to return and settle down

get a shock : 吓了一跳, 吃了一惊

as if+句子 : 似乎, 好像

过去完成时, 虚拟语气, 与事实相反, 后面的条件是假的

he acted as if he was poor. (as if 后是真真假, 应根据上下文来看)

my leg hurts as if it was broken.

even though--even if

as if-- as though

in the end, it was more than he could bear 他再也不能忍受 (口语常用)

It was more than I could understand.

I can't afford it = it was more than I can afford.

hardly...when...: 还没来得及...就...; 用法同 no sooner ... than

hardly had sb done (hardly 在句首, 要倒装)

have time to do sth : 有时间做某事

I have no time to talk with you. 我没时间和你说话

I have time enough to have coffee. 我有足够的时间喝咖啡

knock out : 打晕, 击倒

he had hardly opened his eyes when he was knocked out.

The dream he had had for so many years ended there. 句子主干 : the dream ended

He had had the dream for so many years. (the dream 作宾语, 是先行词)

except : 除...外, 减号关系

【Letter writing】书信写作

The Date: The following months of the year are usually written in full: March, April, May, June and July. The remaining months are often written as follows: 'Jan.', 'Feb.', 'Aug.', 'Sept.', 'Oct.', 'Nov.', and 'Dec.' .

日期 : 每年下列月份写出全称 : 3 月, 4 月, 5 月, 6 月和 7 月. 剩余的月份写成 : Jan. (1 月); Feb. (2 月); Aug. (8 月); Sept. (9 月); Oct. (10 月); Nov. (11 月)和 Dec. (12 月).

【Key structures】关键句型

过去完成时

no sooner...than...

hardly...when...

【Special Difficulties】 难点:

Words often confused and misused 经常容易混淆和误用的词

Study these sentences: 细读以下的例句 :

a No sooner...than (一……就); hardly...when (几乎未来得及……就……)

He had no sooner returned than he bought a house. (11.3-4)

He had hardly had time to settle down when he sold the house. (1.9)

b Country (国家, 乡间) and Countryside (农村).

He had planned to settle down in the country. (1.3)

He sold the house and left the country. (1.9)

The countryside around Vienna is very beautiful. 维也纳周围的乡村非常漂亮.

c Continuously (连续不断地) and Continually (频繁地).

It rained continually. (1.6) (i. e. At frequent intervals.) 天频繁地下雨.

The river flows under this bridge continuously. (i. e. It does not stop at all.) 河水不停地从桥下流过.

a. no sooner...than...

hardly...when...

b. country(国家, 乡间)

countryside(农村)景色 seaside

in the country : 在乡下住

Exercises 练习

A Join these sentences using no sooner than:

用 no sooner than 连接下列句子:

1 I had left the house. It began to rain.

2 We had hung the picture on the wall. It fell down.

No sooner...than...

No sooner 放在 had done 中间, than 放在两大句子的中间, 不需要逗号

B Choose the correct words in the following sentences:

选用适当的词填空 :

1 The sea moves (continuously) (continually).

2 He borrows money from people (continuously) (continually).

3 The Robertsons do not live here anymore. They now live in the (countryside) (country).

1 continuously 2 continually 3 country The Robertsons 表示一家人

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题

5 It was more than he could bear. He couldn't bear it _____.

a. more b. longer c. any longer d. no more

5. not any more / not any longer / not any further 不再

not more = less 比...少 / not longer 不是更长

4 He acted _____ he had never lived in England before.

a. as though b. like c. as d. even if

4. as if = as though 作宾语

act as if/though 习惯用法

as if 是宾语从句

as 后面可以加句子, like 后面加词, as if 加在后面只能作状语

even if 即使

11 He_____ as if he had never lived in England before.

a. made b. did c. conducted d. behaved

11. do as I did 按我所做的做

seem as if 看起来象什么 / act as if 行为象什么一样 / look as if 看起来象什么一样

conduct 可以做动词, 表示行为, =behave

但 conduct 为不及物动词, 如果作及物动词, 加 oneself

他表现的很好, he conducted himself well

he behaved (as) well

【Summary writing】摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 60 words.

回答下列问题, 将答案组成一个段落, 不要超过 60 个单词.

1 Where had the writer's friend, Harrison, spent many years? What did he want to do? What did he buy? (but...so...)

2 Was the summer that year very good, or was it very bad? What did he complain about? (and)

3 Did Harrison sell the house in the end or not? Did he leave the country or not? (Harrison not only.. but also)

【Composition】作文

Rewrite the following sentences using the joining words in parentheses:

用括号中的连词改写以下句子:

1 He bought an old car. It was in a very bad state.(but)

2 The engine was worn out. The gearbox was full of sawdust. (The engine...not only...but...as well)

3 He could not drive it. He could no sell it. He could not even give it away. (neither...nor...nor)

1. in a bad state 状态不太好

though 虽然, even though 即使=even if

这些词出现在两句之间, 就不再加 but

2. worn out 破旧不堪的 wear wore worn

engine ['endʒɪn] n.发动机, 机车, 火车头 / gearbox ['giəbɒks] n.变速箱

sawdust ['sɔ:dʌst] n.锯屑, 木头屑子

saw [sɔ:] n.锯 v.锯 / dust [dʌst] n.灰尘, 尘土, 尘埃 vt.掸掉...上的灰尘, 撒糖于糕上

not only 出现在句首要倒装, 一般不会放在句首

the engine was not only worn out but the gearbox was full of sawdust

3. He could neither drive it nor sell it nor even give it away.

He could neither drive it nor sell it even nor give it away. (这样写更好)

Neither do sth nor do sth nor do sth 既不能也不能更不能

§ Lesson 39 Am I all right? 我是否痊愈?

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★operation n 手术

★exchange n (电话的)交换局

exchange [iks'tʃeɪndʒ] vt. 交换, 调换, 兑换, 交流, 交易 n. 交换, 调换, 兑换, 交流, 交易

★successful adj 成功的

★inquire v 询问, 打听

inquire sth of sb 从某人那打听

inquire about sth

★following adj 下一个

第二天 the next day, the following day

第二个星期 the next week, the following week

★certain adj 某个

some+可数名词单数时表示某个(某一个)

certain 后面的东西不能定

a certain boy / two certain boys

certain 根据它前面的数量来定

某一个 a certain+n : a certain patient = some patient

某两个 two certain +n(复数) : two certain patient

for some reason 由于某个理由

★patient n 病人

★called n 打电话的人

★alone adj 独自的

alone 强调人孤单一个

'home alone' -- 《独自在家》

leave me alone 我烦着呢, 别理我 / leave him alone 让他一个人呆会儿

★relative n 亲戚

【Text】

Lesson 39 Am I all right? 我是否痊愈?

First listen and then answer the question. 听录音, 然后回答以下问题.

Why did Mr. Gilbert telephone Dr. Millington?

While John Gilbert was in hospital, he asked his doctor to tell him whether his operation had been successful, but the doctor refused to do so. The following day, the patient asked for a bedside tele-phone. When he was alone, he telephoned the hospital exchange and asked for Doc-tor Millington. When the doctor answered the phone, Mr Gilbert said he was in-quiring about a certain patient, a Mr John Gilbert. He asked if Mr Gilbert's operation had been successful and the doctor told him that it had been. He then asked when Mr Gilbert would be allowed to go home and the

doctor told him that he would have to stay in hospital for another two weeks. Then Dr Millington asked the caller if he was a relative of the patient.' No,' the patient answered, ' I am Mr John Gilbert.'

参考译文

当约翰·吉尔伯特住院的时候，他问医生他的手术是否成功，但医生拒绝告诉他。第二天，这位病人要了一部床头电话。当房里只剩他一个人时，他挂通了医院的交换台，要求与米灵顿医生讲话。当这位医生接过电话时，吉尔伯特先生说他想询问一个病人的情况，是一位名叫约翰·吉尔伯特的先生。他问吉尔伯特先生的手术是否成功，医生告诉他手术很成功。然后他又问吉尔伯特先生什么时候可以回家，医生说他在医院还必须再住上两个星期。之后，米灵顿医生问打电话的人是否是病人的亲属。“不是，”病人回答说，“我就是约翰·吉尔伯特先生。”

【Key structures】 关键句型

He said that...He told me...He asked...直接引语和间接引语(KS15) (参见第 15 课关键句型)

'I am very tired,' he said. “我非常疲劳,” 他说。

What did he say? 他说了什么?

He said that he was very tired. 他说他非常累。

He told me that he was very tired. 他告诉我他非常累。

'Are you tired?' she asked. “你累吗?” 她问道。

What did she ask? 她问了什么?

She asked if (or whether) you were tired. 她问你是否感到疲劳。

'Will Jack arrive tomorrow?' Tom asked. “杰克明天能到吗?” 汤姆问道。

What did Tom ask? 汤姆问了什么?

Tom asked if (or whether) Jack would arrive the next day. 汤姆问杰克第二天是否能到。

'When will Jack arrive?' Tom asked. “杰克什么时候到?” 汤姆问道。

What did Tom ask? 汤姆问了什么?

Tom asked when Jack would arrive. 汤姆问杰克什么时候到。

'Have you ever been abroad?' Catherine asked. “你出过国吗?” 凯瑟琳问道。

What did Catherine ask? 凯瑟琳问了什么?

Catherine asked if(or whether) you had ever been abroad. 凯瑟琳问你是否出过国。

'Why didn't you write to me?' Jane asked. “你为什么不给我写信?” 简问道。

What did Jane ask? 简问了什么?

Jane asked why I hadn't written to her. 简问为什么我不给她写信。

如果直接引语是问句，变为间接引语时，主句不说 He said, 而用 He asked told 可以跟问句连，还可以跟陈述句连

祈使句：唯一不以从句方式表达的

tell sb to do sth : the teacher told me (not) to open the door.

ask sb to do sth

以 that 引导的是陈述句

【课文讲解】

be in hospital : 住院

'has my operation been successful?'

词汇重点：

1、certain 前加数字表某几个

2、following 取代 next : the next day = the following day

3、alone 表示单独的, 客观事实上的, 注意与 lonely 的区别

a+人名前面, 表示某一个拥有这个特征的人, 如 : He is a Leifeng. 表示具有雷锋的特征

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题

7 He will have to stay in hospital. That's what he _____.

a. has done b. must do c. must be doing d. must have done

a、has done 已经做的 / b、must do 必须做的 / c、must be doing

must 后面+原形, +be doing, +have done 属于推测句型的三种结构

must+v(原形) : 1、=have to 不得不

2、很可能, 对现在或者将来的推测

must be doing 对说话的当时的正在进行的行为的推测 : He must be sleeping./ He must be making the notes.

must have done 对过去的事情的推测 : He must have made the notes.

must have been doing 对过去的正在进行的动作的推测 : He must have been sleeping.

11 He was alone. He was _____.

a. on his own b. lonely c. with himself d. unique

11、on one's own = alone

of one's own 某人自己的

12 He inquired about a patient. He wanted _____.

a. informations b. information c. knowledges d. knowledge

12、knowledge ['nɒlɪdʒ] n. 知识, 学问, 认识, 知道, <古>学科

information 信息, 不可数名词 : a piece of information 一条信息

message 可数名词, 如手机短信

3 John Gilbert was in hospital. He was taken _____ hospital last week.

a. at b. in c. to d. on

3、take sb to hospital 送某人去医院

5 _____? A bedside telephone.

a. For what did he ask b. What did he ask

c. For what did he ask for d. What did he ask for

5、for what 因为...在疑问句中=why : For what did he ask? 他为什么要?

ask for 要求得到

§ Lesson 40 Food and talk 进餐与交谈

【New words and expressions】生词和短语

★hostess n. 女主人

actor 男演员 / actress 女演员

host 男主人

host(v.)作为主人, 主办

★unsmiling adj. 不笑的, 严肃的

unsmiling: un+smiling 不笑的, 但并不一定表示“严肃”

serious ['siəriəs] adj. 严肃的, 认真的, 严重的 : my father is serious.

★tight adj. 紧身的

the shoes are small/tight(夹脚, 很紧)

tights [taɪts] n. 贴身衬衣, 紧身衣, 女用连裤袜

tight jeans 紧身牛仔裤

★fix v. 凝视

fix(没有凝视的概念), ① 固定 ② 修理 : fix the picture on the wall

fix one's eyes on sth 盯着..., 目不转睛

习惯用被动, 表达为 : one's eyes be fixed on sth

all the eyes were fixed on the blackboard 所有的眼睛都盯着黑板

★globe n. 地球

globe 球状物, 如地球仪 / earth 地球

global adj : 全球的 : global problem 全球性的问题

global -- 《阁楼宝》一种灭蟑螂的药名

★despair n. 绝望

despair [dis'pɛə] n. 绝望, 失望, 令人失望的人(事物) vi. 绝望

disappoint [,disə'pɔɪnt] vt. 使失望

in despair 绝望的

sb./sth. is the despair of...

the boy is the despair of his parents. 那男孩的父母对他感到绝望了

This boy is his mother's despair. 这个男孩使他妈绝望了.

the examination was the despair of me./ the examination was my despair. 我对考试已经绝望了

【Text】

Lesson 40 Food and talk 进餐与交谈

First listen and then answer the question. 听录音, 然后回答以下问题.

Was Mrs. Rumbold a good companion at dinner?

Last week at a dinner party, the hostess asked me to sit next to Mrs.

Rumbold. Mrs. Rumbold was a large, unsmiling lady in a tight black dress. She did not even look up when I took my seat beside her. Her eyes were fixed on her plate and in a short time, she was busy eating. I tried to make conversation.

'A new play is coming to "The Globe" soon,' I said. 'Will you be seeing it?'

'No,' she answered.

'Will you be spending your holidays abroad this year?' I asked.

'NO,' she answered.

'Will you be staying in England?' I asked.

'No,' she answered.

In despair, I asked her whether she was enjoying her dinner.

‘Young man, ’ she answered, ‘if you ate more and talked less, we would both enjoy our dinner!’

参考译文

在上星期的一次宴会上，女主人安排我坐在兰伯尔德夫人的身旁。兰伯尔德夫人是一位身材高大、表情严肃的女人，穿一件紧身的黑衣服。当我在她身旁坐下来时，她甚至连头都没有抬一下。她的眼睛盯着自己的盘子，不一会儿就忙着吃起来了。我试图找个话题和她聊聊。

“一出新剧要来‘环球剧场’上演了，”我说，“您去看吗？”

“不，”她回答。“您今年去国外度假吗？”我又问。

“不，”她回答。

“您就呆在英国吗？”我问。

“不，”她回答。

失望之中我问她饭是否吃得满意。

“年轻人，”她回答说，“如果你多吃点，少说点，我们两个都会吃得好的！”

【课文讲解】

have dinner 不加 “a”，而 “at a dinner party” 中的 “a” 并不修饰 “dinner” 而是 “party”

ask sb to do sth 祈使句

next to：与……相邻 / sit next to me 坐我旁边

unsmiling：bad mix 很难与人融合

the new film is coming to the cinema. / A new play will be on at ‘the globe’ 即将上映

the film will be on 那部电影即将要上映

‘Are you enjoying your dinner?’

用虚拟语气：

1、与现在事实相反，从句使用一般过去时，主句使用 would+动词原形

if you ate more and talked less, we would both enjoy our dinner

if it rained, it would not be hot 如果下雨，就不会这么热

if you help me, I will be grateful 如果你帮我，我会感激你（正常语气）

if you helped me, I would be grateful 如果你帮了我，我会感激你（可惜你没有帮我，我不会感激你）

if it rained, I would not go. (会去的)

if it rains, I will not go. (不一定会去) 正常语气

【Key structures】 关键句型

If you ate more and talked less, we would both enjoy our dinner!

a Do you remember these sentences: (KS16)

你还记得这些句子吗？(参见第 16 课关键句型)

在以下条件句中，主句中用将来时或祈使句，而从句中则用现在时。

It he is out, I'll call tomorrow.

If have time, I'll be writing to him tomorrow.

You'll miss the train if you don't hurry.

Please don't disturb him if he is busy.

If he is working I'll not disturb him.

b Now study these sentences carefully:

细读以下句子：

在这一类条件句中，if 从句谈论想像的情况，主句则推测想像的结果。在从句中要用动词的过去时，这并不表明过去的某一特定时间或过去某一动作，因此常被称作“非真实的过去”，整个条件句也被称作非真实条件句。如果 if 从句中的动词是 be，那么应该在第一和第三人称单数名词之后用 were。

If you went to the exhibition you would enjoy it. 假如你去看展览, 你会喜欢的.

If you saw him now you wouldn't recognize him. 假如你现在见到他, 你会认不出来的.

Would he get annoyed if I told him about it? 假如我把此事告诉他, 他会烦恼吗?

If I **were** in your position, I would act differently. 假如我处于你的位置, 我会采取不同的作法.

He would help you if he **were** here. 假如他在这儿, 他会帮你的.

If you could make him change his mind, you would save him a lot of trouble. 假如你能使他改变主意, 你会使他免了许多麻烦.

Exercise 练习 用正确的动词时态填空 :

1 He would enjoy this if he _____(be) present.

2 She can do better if she _____(try).

3 If you play with matches, you _____(burn) your fingers.

4 If you broke this window, you _____(have to) pay for it.

5 If you _____(lose) your way, you would have to ask a policeman.

6 If you _____(not apologize), he will never speak to you again.

7 If he _____(be) clever, he would not have any difficulty.

8 What would you do if you _____(win) a lot of money?

9 If I were you, I _____(not be) so confident.

10 If you _____(can) help me, I would be grateful.

1、were 2、tries 3、will burn (**play with matches** 玩火柴; finger ['fɪŋɡə] n.手指(尤指大拇指以外的手指), 指状物, 指针 v.用手指拨弄, 伸出)4、would have to 5、lost 6、don't apologize 7、were 8、won 9、would not be (confident ['kɒnfɪdənt] adj.自信的, 确信的) 10、could (grateful ['ɡreɪtful] adj.感激的, 感谢的)

【Special Difficulties】 难点

make progress 取得进步 / **do business** 做生意 / **do one's best** / **make the bed** 铺床

do some shopping / **make a speech** / **make ... mistake** / **make up one's mind**

do one's homework / **do ... a favour** / **do ... job** / **do ... work** / **do exercise**

make ... promise / **make conversation**

Exercise 练习 用这两动词的正确形式填空 :

1 He _____a mistake and I told him to _____the exercise again.

2 He _____business in Australia and _____a lot of money.

3 I know you are _____your best but you are not _____very much progress.

4 After I had _____the beds, I went out and _____some shopping.

1、made do 2、does makes (make a lot of money 挣钱) 3、doing making 4、made did (go shopping, do some shopping 购物; shopping 不可数名词)

【Composition】 作文

Rewrite the following sentences using the joining words in parentheses:

用括号中的连词改写以下句子 :

1 She refused to answer any questions. She did not ask any questions. (not only... but... either)

2 She was not interested in the theatre. She was not interested in travel. (neither...nor) 3 She

liked eating good food. She did not like talking about it. (but)

- 1、she not only resused to answer question but she did not ask any question either.
she not only resused to answer question but ask no question either.

but...as well 可以加肯定也可以加否定 / but...either 只能加否定

as well, either 在此句中可省略

- 2、She was interested in neither the theatre nor travel.

She was interested neither in the theatre nor in travel.(更好, 介词短语的并列)

- 3、She liked eating good food but she did not like talking about it.

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题

- 4 She asked me to sit next to Mrs. Rumbold. '_____next to her,' she said.

a. Please to sit b. To sit c. Please sit d. Please sitting

ask sb to do sth 祈使句, 以动词原形为标志

- 5 I took my seat beside her. I _____ beside her.

a. sat b. seated c. was sitted d. was seating

5、sit down

seat 一定要加宾语, 如果后面没宾语, 就用 seat 的被动语态(及物动词): seat yourself / be seated

sit 是主动, 没有被动语态, 后面不能加宾语(不及物动词)

- 9 Her eyes were fixed on the plate. She _____it.

a. was glancing at b. was staring at c. was thinking about d. was stuck to

glance at : 扫了一眼 (glance [glɑ:ns; (US) glæns])

stare at : 盯着看 (stare [steə(r)])

stuck to : 粘在...上面

look at, see, watch (看活动的), watch TV / watch sb doing

notice : 强调的是眼睛的注意, 看一些别人不太注意的事情

fix one's eyes on=stare at

I glanced at it but I didn't pick it up

glimpse of / have a glimpse of : 瞥了一眼 (glimpse [glimps] n.一瞥, 一看 v.瞥见)

sight: catch sight of 看见= see

I can catch sight of the bird.

be in sight

read : 阅读(看与文字有关的东西)

read loudly, read aloud 大声朗读, 汉语中的读

从头来看—look at / go through : 浏览

- 12 Are you enjoying your dinner? Is it _____?

a. enjoying you b. amusing you c. entertaining you d. giving you pleasure

12、enjoy sth : 表示在后者当中得到了一种享受

sth amuse 好笑 /entertain sb 娱乐

entertain [,entə'tein] vt.娱乐, 招待, 接受, 怀抱 vi.款待

entertainment [entə'teinmənt] n.款待, 娱乐, 娱乐表演

enjoy 主语是人 enjoy oneself

amuse,entertain 后面会加人

§ Lesson 41 Do you call that a hat? 你把那个叫帽子吗?

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★rude adj. 无礼的

polite

以 p 开头的形容词的否定前缀 im

impolite 不礼貌的, 表示没有注意到礼节性的问题, 所以显得有些无礼貌

rude : 强调故意的 / cheeky 无礼, 没礼貌的, 表示小孩对长辈 : Don't be cheeky! 不得无礼!

naïve [na:'i:v] adj. 天真的

★mirror n 镜子

look up sth in the dictionary 查字典 / look at oneself in the mirror 照镜子

his novel is a mirror of his time 他的小说就是他那个时代的真实写照

mirrot ...的写照,...的真实反映

★hole n 孔

hole in+地点

★remark v 评说

主要指说, 当 say 来理解

★remind v 提醒

remind sb of sth / remind sb to do sth

reminder

★lighthouse n 灯塔

【Text】

Lesson 41 Do you call that a hat? 你把那个叫帽子吗?

First listen and then answer the question. 听录音, 然后回答以下问题.

What kind of shopping does the writer enjoy, do you think?

‘Do you call that a hat?’ I said to my wife.

‘You needn't be so rude about it,’ my wife answered as she looked at herself in the mirror.

I sat down on one of those modern chairs with holes in it and waited. We had been in the hat shop for half an hour and my wife was still in front of the mirror.

‘We mustn't buy things we don't need,’ I remarked suddenly. I regretted saying it almost at once.

‘You needn't have said that,’ my wife answered. ‘I needn't remind you of that terrible tie you bought 10 yesterday.’

‘I find it beautiful,’ I said. ‘A man can never have too many ties.’

‘And a woman can't have too many hats,’ she answered.

Ten minutes later we walked out of the shop together. My wife was wearing a hat that looked like a lighthouse!

参考译文

“你把那个叫帽子吗？”我对妻子说。

“你说话没必要这样不客气，”我的妻子边回答边照着镜子。

我坐在一个新式的满是网眼儿的椅子上，等待着。我们在这家帽店已经呆了半个小时了，而我的妻子仍在镜子面前。

“我们不应该买我们不需要的东西，”我突然发表意见说，但马上又后悔说了这话。

“你没必要这么说，”我妻子回答说，“我也不必提醒你昨天买的那条糟糕透了的领带。”

“我觉得它好看，”我说，“男人有多少领带也不会嫌多。”

“女人有多少帽子也不嫌多。”她回答。

10 分钟以后，我们一道走出了商店。我妻子戴着一顶像灯塔一样的帽子。

【课文讲解】

need

call sb sth / call that a hat

be rude / be rude about sth 对事很粗鲁 / be rude to sb 对人很粗鲁

don't be rude to me 别对我这么粗鲁

needn't : 不必

on the chair 在椅子上

with holes in it 作定语

Jane put a piece of paper with her name and address on it into a bottle. (lesson 22)

he has been there

We had been in the hat shop for half an hour.

bookstore 书店 drugstore 药店，名词修饰名词，一般用单数

must 表示必须 / mustn't 不能、不准

need 的否定形式 : needn't 不必 / don't need 不需要

remark = say

regretted doing sth 后悔已经做

needn't have done 原本不必做，但是做了，强调过去的动作不必做

you needn't have bought it 你原本不必买的

remind sb of sth

needn't do : 现在的动作也不必做 : you needn't have come. / you needn't come.

never...too...=not...too...无论...也不为过

A man can never have too many ties. 再多的领带对一个男人来说也不为过

I can never thank you too much : 感激不尽

drinking water can never be too clean 饮用水越干净越好

a wife can never complain too much 妻子怎么罗嗦也不为过

need : 需要

needn't : 非实义动词(助动词，系动词，情态动词)，属情态动词，无时态变化，也没有人称

don't need : 实义动词有任意一种时态，有人称变化

need I...?(情态) / do I need...? 实义动词

情态动词后面一定要加动词原形

在实义动词后面再加一个实义动词，就在后面加 to do

need I go out? / do I need to go out? 我需要出去吗?

情态动词后面不能直接用名词做宾语

实义动词后面可以直接加名词，故 need 后面如是名词，则这个 need 为实义动词

we don't need things(名词)...

you don't need to be

例：He_____follow me .

a doesn't need b needn't to c didn't need to d needs

answer: C

1、情态动词，无时态和人称 2、情态动词的疑问句和否定句都直接加 **not** 或提前 3、情态动词后面只能加动词原形

needn't have done：过去不必做，但是做了

mustn't 不准

can't：不可能(没有这个能力做)

you don't...：事实：you don't speak English.

附加: lesson 44 的关于 need 的另一种情况:

needn't 可以回答 **must** 开头的疑问句,只能用在肯定句中,可以直接加动词-ing

need doing: 需要做,需要被做

① 这里 **need** 属于实义动词, 动词 **ing** 相当于名词来理解

② 有时态和人称变化,否定式为: **don't need doing**

③ **need doing** 表达被动含义, 如: **Your shoes need washing.** 你的鞋子需(被)洗了

另外:**want doing** :也是用主动表示被动含义

它们的主语一定是物, 不是人: **Your hair needs cutting.**

need to be done---主语是人,也可以是物

【Key structures】 关键句型

Must, Have to and Need

a Do you remember these sentences? (KS17)

你还记得以下句子吗?(参见第 17 课关键句型)

I must leave now. I have (got) to leave now. He must be a fool.

b Now study these sentences:

仔细阅读以下句子：

I need a new hat. I must buy one. 我需要一顶新帽子。我必须买一顶。

He needs a haircut. He must have one. 他需要理发。他一定要理发。

I won't buy that. I don't need it. 我不会买那个，我不需要它。

c

Instead of saying: 除了这种表述方法外：

We can say: 还可以说：

You needn't wait for me.

You needn't have waited for me.

You don't have to wait for me.

You didn't have to wait for me.

d Now compare mustn't and needn't in these sentences: 对比 mustn't 和 needn't:

You mustn't make a noise. The children are asleep. 你不应吵闹，孩子们都睡了。

You needn't drive so quickly; we have plenty of time. 你不必开得那么快，我们有足够的时间。

Or: You don't have to(haven't got to) drive so quickly; we have plenty of time.

You mustn't smoke in a theatre. It is forbidden. 你不应该在剧场里抽烟，这是不允许的。

You needn't come with us if you don't want to. 如果你不想去，你不必和我们一道去。

Or: You don't have to (haven't got to) come with us if you don't want to.

must 可能等于 have to 表示必须，不等于 have to 时表示推测

1、对现在和将来加原形

2、对正在 be doing

3、对过去 have done

4、对过去正在 have been doing

needn't = don't have to / needn't have done = didn't have to

Exercises 练习

用 mustn't 或 needn't 填空：

1 You _____leave your car here. Can't you see the 'No Parking' sign?

2 I _____go to bed late tonight. I have to get up early tomorrow.

3 You _____finish your soup if you don't like it.

4 You _____push. There's plenty of room on the bus.

5 You _____read in bed. It's bad for your eyes.

1、musn't 2、musn't 3、needn't (finish 这里指“喝完”) 4、needn't (room 指“空间”) 5、musn't
be bad for 对什么有害 / smoking is bad for your health 抽烟有害你的健康

【Special Difficulties】 难点

Words often confused 经常容易混淆的词

Remark, Observe, and Notice.

Study these examples: 细读以下例句：

'We mustn't buy things we don't need,' I remarked. (1.7)

'We mustn't buy things we don't need,' I observed. “我们不应该买我们不需要的东西，”我评论说。

He observed me carefully. (He looked at me.) 他仔细地看着我。

Did you notice how she was dressed? 你注意到她的穿戴了吗？

observe：仔细地看

Exercise 练习 用 remark 或 notice 填空：

1 'That's a nice picture,' he _____.

2 No one _____me when I entered the room.

3 He made a lot of rude _____about the hat she was wearing.

4 He failed to _____that I had changed the furniture round.

1、remarked 2、noticed 3、remarks 4、notice

remark/notice

notice：看 / remark：说

make rude remark(粗话) / call one's name：骂人 / say F words (F 指 fuck)

fail to do：没有能够 / 表示强烈地肯定：not fail to

I had changed the furniture round. 我已经把周围的家具都换了

you can not fail to notice it

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题

3 Do you have to buy this hat? No, I _____. It isn't necessary.

a. mustn't b. won't c. needn't d. don't need

do you have to...?yes, I do / No, I don't

have to 必须

do you have to...? No, I don't have to do sth

mustn't 不准 / don't have to 不必

must=have to 必须

英文中要么助动词之后所有的东西都省略, 要么省到不定式标志, "don't need to" 也对

would you like to do sth? yes, I'd like to. (to 不能省略)

no, I don't/no, I don't need to.

do you want to go to school? yes, I do. / yes, I want to.

would you like to see the menu? yes, I'd like to(后接动词)

would you like some bananas? yes, I'd like(后接名词)

Do you need the hat? No, I don't need. 不能为 "I needn't", 情态动词不能直接接名词 "hat"

7 A man can never have too many ties. It's _____.

a. unable b. impossible c. improbable d. incapable

can never : 不可能=can't

unable : 不可能, be able(unable) to do sth. (unable ['ʌn'eɪbl] adj. 不能的, 不会的)

impossible : 不可能

improbable, : 不太可能/ probably 很有可能

incapable : 没有能力 : be capable of / be incapable of

incapable [in'keɪpəbl] adj. 无能力的, 不能的

8 She looked in the mirror and saw her _____.

a. reflection b. idol c. imagination d. picture

reflect: 发射, reflection : 反射地东西

reflection [rɪ'flekʃən] n. 反射, 映象, 倒影, 反省, 沉思, 反映

idol ['aɪdl] n. 偶像, 崇拜物, 幻象, [逻辑] 谬论

imagination [ɪ'mædʒɪ'neɪʃən] n. 想象, 空想, 想象的事物, 想象力, 听觉

picture : 照片, 图象

11 His wife was wearing a hat. She _____.

a. was dressing it b. was putting it on c. had it on d. was carrying it

wear/dress/put on/have on 穿

wear (状态)

dress, dress sb : 给某人穿衣服, 强调动作

put on(动作)

have sth on(状态) (have 让...东西; on 在...上面; have...on 让...东西在...上面)

in a green coat

she is in a green coat

be in+衣服(状态)

12 It looked like a lighthouse. It _____ a lighthouse.

a. appeared similar b. resembled c. matched d. likened

match : 与...相配

liken ['laɪkən] vt. 把...比作 : compare, liken sth to another thing 把前者比作后者

we liken the hat to a lighthouse

resemble [rɪ'zembəl] vt. 象, 类似 : a resemble b

appear : 显得 It appeared similar to a lighthouse.

similar : 与...相似 : be similar to (to 不能少)

a appeared similar to 就对

§ Lesson 42 Not very musical 并非很懂音乐

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★musical adj. 精通音乐的

★market n. 市场, 集市

★snake charmer 玩蛇者 (通常借音乐控制)

★pipe n. (吹奏的) 管乐器

pipe: 两头通的东西, 如: 下水管道, 老爸的烟斗, 或一节两头通的竹子都可以叫 pipe

★tune n. 曲调

★glimpse n. 一瞥

have a glimpse of: 瞥了一眼

glance at: 扫了一眼

have a glimpse of: 映入眼帘 (犹如汉语中的 “惊鸿一瞥”)

glance at (有意识): 注意连读 [glɑ:nsæt]

have a glimpse of (无意识)

它们的共同点时: 时间都很短

★snake n. 蛇

★movement n. 动作

action: 采取行动

move: 移动—>移动的名词形式: movement

★continue v. 继续

begin/start/continue to do

begin/start/continue doing

I continue (to go)/going on.

continue+sth

Let's continue our trip.

Let's continue our journey.

★dance v. 跳舞

dance [dɑ:ns; (US) dæns] 注意美音和英音的不同

dance to the music 随着音乐跳舞 (固定搭配, 用 “to”)

★obviously adv. 显然

obviously=clearly

Obviously you are wrong.

Obviously I love you.

★difference n. 差别

tell the difference between A and B: 区别差异

Can you tell the difference between them?

be different from : A is different from B

differ v.

Jazz: 爵士乐

Indian music: 印度音乐

文中: It obviously could not tell the difference between Indian music and jazz!

★Indian adj. 印度的

【Text】

Lesson 42 Not very musical 并非很懂音乐

First listen and then answer the question. 听录音, 然后回答以下问题.

What happened when the snake charmer began to play jazz?

As we had had a long walk through one of the markets of old Delhi, we stopped at a square to have a rest. After a time, we noticed a snake charmer with two large baskets at the other side of the square, so we went to have a look at him. As soon as he saw us, he picked up a long pipe which was covered with coins and opened one of the baskets. When he began to play a tune, we had our first glimpse of the snake. It rose out of the basket and began to follow the movements of the pipe. We were very much surprised when the snake charmer suddenly began to play jazz and modern pop songs. The snake, however, continued to 'dance' slowly. It obviously could not tell the difference between Indian music and jazz!

参考译文

当我们穿过旧德里的市场时走了很长一段路, 我们在一个广场上停下来休息. 过了一会儿, 我们注意到广场的那一边有一个带着两个大筐的耍蛇人, 于是就走过去看看. 他一见我们, 就拿起了一个长长的上面镶有硬币的管乐器, 并掀开了一个筐的盖子. 当他开始吹奏一支曲子时, 我们才第一次看到那条蛇. 它从筐里探出身子, 随着乐器的摆动而扭动. 当耍蛇人突然又吹奏起爵士乐和现代流行乐曲时, 我们感到非常惊奇. 然而那蛇却还是缓慢地“舞动”着. 显然, 它分辨不出印度音乐和爵士乐!

【课文讲解】

have a walk/rest/look

have a + 名词, 这个名词与此同时可以跟动词是同形的

have a swim/bath

have a bath=bathe / have a swim=swim

have a walk=walk / have a look=look have a rest=rest

Sometimes we can use have+noun in place of an ordinary verb. 有时我们可以用 have+名词来代替普通动词 : have a +名词=动词

一个动词的后面会加介词(如果这个动词是不及物动词), 这个名词的后面, 动词能加什么样的介词, 名词也可以加什么样的介词

look at->have a look at; walk across->have a walk across

(v)succeed in doing sth->(adj)be successful in->(n)success in

to 放在一个句子的后面起目的的作用

at the other side of

be covered with : 盖满

play a tune ,play music

tune,可数名词; music 不可数名词

have a (first)glimpse of

at the first sight

I love you at the first sight of you.

rise: 升 vi. (不及物) / raise: 提高 vt. (及物)

follow the movements of the pipe

very much surprised : 很少用 very much 放在一起修饰 surprise, 一般用 very surprised 或 most surprised

obviously 更习惯放在句首

总结:

① have a glimpse of

② have a + 名词, 这个名词能有一个同形的动词, 动词能加什么, 名词就加什么

【Key structures】 关键句型

have a + 名词=相对应的动词, have 是实义动词

Exercises 练习 B Write these sentences again using have + noun in place of the verbs in italics:

用 have+ 名词来替代用斜体印出的动词 :

- 1 Yesterday I rode on a horse for the first time in my life.
- 2 I was looking at those old photographs last night.
- 3 He washed before going out.
- 4 I swam in the sea this morning.
- 5 Those two sailors fought in the bar last night.
- 6 Dan and Caroline have been quarrelling.
- 7 He tried again. (Use 'another' in place of 'again').
- 8 She is resting.
- 9 I wanted to smoke.
- 10 Did you sleep well last night? (Use 'a good' in place of 'well' .)

1 rode on a horse -> had a ride on a horse

2 was looking at -> was having a look at

3 washed-> had a wash

4 swam-> had a swim

5 fought-> had a fight

6 quarrelling-> having a quarrel

quarrel ['kwɒrəl] n. 吵架, 反目, 怨言, 争吵的原因 vi. 吵架, 争论, 挑剔

★7 tried again-> had another try

8 is resting-> is having a rest

9 smoke-> have a smoke

10 sleep well-> have a good sleep

have a + 名词=相对应的动词, 后面能加相对应的介词短语

【Special difficulties】 难点

参见第 6、7 两课的难点(SD6, SD7)

Study these sentences. Each sentence contains the verb pick. This verb has a different meaning in each sentence:

细读以下句子，每句中均有动词 pick，但词义各不相同。

He picked up a long pipe which was covered with coins. (11.4-5)

I'll pick you up in the car this evening. 今晚我开车来接你。

I **picked up** a lot of English while I was in England. (I learnt.) 在英国的时候，我学到了不少英语。

There are so many beautiful cards on display, I can't **pick out** the ones I like best. (I can't choose.)

陈列着那么多漂亮的明信片，我挑不出最喜欢的。

pick: 采摘 : pick apples 摘苹果

pick up: 拣起, 发现

pick sb up: 接某人(顺路) / meet sb+地点: 专程接

pick up a lot of English=learn a lot of English

pick out: 挑出来

pick up the radio program(the program on the radio) : 在广播上收听节目

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题

2 The snake probably 'danced' _____.

- a. by listening to the Indian music
- b. by listening to the jazz
- c. by looking at the snake charmer
- d. by following the movements of the snake charmer's pipe

by doing....通过做某事,通过某种方式

by train 乘火车

by the river 沿着河边

by the end of....到.....时候为止

I show him my respect by sending him flowers. 我通过向他送花来表示我对他的尊重

respect [ris'pekt] n.尊敬, 敬重, 注意, 考虑, 尊重, 关系, 有关, 敬意

vt.尊敬, 尊重, 不防碍

3 We stopped at a square _____have a rest.

- a. so to b. in order c. in order that d. in order to

so as to...为了,表示目的, 不存在 "so to"

to 不定式做状语表目的(原文中)

in order 在秩序中, 有秩序的, 有次序的, 整洁的, 整齐的

Keep your room in order

in order to +v.: 为了

in order that+从句: 为了

Answer: D

7 It could not tell the difference between Indian music and jazz. It _____.

- a. might not b. may not c. must not d. wasn't able to

might not 可能不 / may not 可能不 : 注意与 "不可能" 的区别 ≠ can't / couldn't

must not 不准

wasn't able to 不能

Answer :D

【语法精粹】 Nouns P17

1. Julie went to the_____to buy a pair of shoes.
A.shoes store B.shoe's store C.shoe store D.shoes' store

Answer: C

表示类别的商店,用单数名词修饰

2.As a safety precaution,all city cab drivers carry only enough money to make change for a_____bill.

A.ten-dollar B.ten-dollars C.tens-dollar D.ten-dollar's

cab drivers(美语)=taxi drivers(英式)

bill 纸币

有连字符连接的单词没有复数,连字符单词做定语,不会加 "s"

Answer: A

3.Recently,he has lost all his_____at cards.

A.wage and saving B.wages and saving

C.wage and savings D.wages and savings

wage 薪水 ; saving 积蓄

Answer: D

★4.I want_____.

A.a dollar worth candy B.candy a dollar's worth

C.a dollar's worth of candy D.a dollar worth's candy

a dollar's worth of n.

Answer :C

5.The surroundings a child grows up in usually _____an effect on his development.

A.have B.had C.do D.has

have an effect on ...对……有效果

grow up 成长

in 连接作用

The surroundings 做主语 (surroundings [sə'raʊndɪŋz] n.环境)

a child grows up 定语从句修饰 "the surroundings"

孩子成长的环境常常对他的发展有影响. 用一般现在时

Answer: A

§ Lesson 43 Over the South Pole 飞越南极

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★pole n. (地球的)极

South Pole 南极

North Pole 北极

Pole Star 北极星

★flight n. 飞行

fly v: 飞

★explorer [iks'plɔ:rə, eks-] n. 探险家, 探测者, 探测器 [计]Windows 资源管理器

explore [iks'plɔ:] v. 探险, 探测, 探究

exploration [ˌeksplɔ:'reɪʃən] n. (科研相关) 探险, 探求, 开发

adventure [əd'ventʃə(r)] n. 冒险(追求刺激)

venture ['ventʃə(r)] n. 冒险(为了财富, 没有生命保障)

★lie v. 处于

tell a lie 撒谎

lie n. 谎言; lie v. 撒谎

Eg.: You lied. 你骗人! 你撒谎! / You, liar! 你, 骗子! (liar ['laɪə] n. (惯于) 说谎者)

lie, lied, lied 撒谎

lie/lai/, lay/lei/, lain/lein/ 处于, 位于(+地点)

stay in bed/lie in bed 躺在床上

in bed 介词短语, lie vi.

lie 现在分词--> lying

lay vt. ① 放, 放置: lay sth.

② 下蛋, 产卵: lay an egg 下一个蛋

lay, laid, laid

hang, hung, hung 挂, 悬挂

hang, hanged, hanged, 绞刑

You lied!

You lied to me.

lie in bed

★serious adj. 严重的

★point n. 地点

point 点, 一般指从飞机上向下看的点

地点 place, spot

dot 点: "sina.com" 中的 "." 读为: dot

@-> at

★seem v. 似乎

① seem + as if

② seem + adj.

③ seem to be

④ seem that...

Eg.: He seems rich.

He seems to be rich.

It seems that he is rich.

it seems that... 看起来似乎...

seem as if 看起来似乎

Eg.: He seems as if he had never lived in England before.

Seem: 真正应译为“看起来”

★crash v. 坠毁

crash(从上向下掉)

aircrash 空难 / carcrash 车祸(由 aircrash 引申而来)

strike 撞击

collide [kə'laɪd] vi.碰撞, 抵触(两个都运动的东西相撞)

clash [klæʃ] n.冲突, 撞击声, 抵触 v.(使)发出撞击声, 猛撞, 冲突

★sack n. 袋子

★clear v. 越过

over 越过(距离)

clear(凌空)越过, 跳过, 没有接触面的飞跃

go over 飞跃

clear the mountain 飞跃山峰

The horse cleared the fence.

fence n.篱笆, 栅栏, 墙 v.围住, 防护

★aircraft n. 飞机

★endless adj. 无尽的

★plain n. 平原

mountains 高山

plain girl 平凡的女孩

Eg.: I'm a plain girl.

【Text】

Lesson 43 Over the South Pole 飞越南极

First listen and then answer the question. 听录音, 然后回答以下问题.

How was the plane able to clear the mountains?

In 1929, three years after his flight over the North Pole, the American explorer, R.E. Byrd, successfully flew over the South Pole for the first time. Though, at first, Byrd and his men were able to take a great many photographs of the mountains that lay below, they soon ran into serious trouble. At one point, it seemed certain that their plane would crash. It could only get over the mountains if it rose to 10,000 feet. Byrd at once ordered his men to throw out two heavy food sacks. The plane was then able to rise and it cleared the mountains by 400 feet. Byrd now knew that he would be able to reach the South Pole which was 300 miles away, for there were no more mountains in sight. The aircraft was able to fly over the endless white plains without difficulty.

参考译文

美国探险家 R.E. 伯德在飞越北极3年之后, 于1929年第一次飞越了南极. 虽然开始时伯德和他的助手们拍下了飞机下面连绵群山的大量照片, 但他们很快就陷入了困境. 在有个地方, 飞机似乎肯定要坠毁了. 只有在飞至10,000 英尺的高度时, 它才能飞过这些山头. 伯德马上命令他的助手们把两个沉重的食物袋扔掉, 于是飞机可以上升了, 它在离山头400 英尺的高度飞越了过去. 伯德这时知道他能够顺利飞抵300 英里以外的南极了, 因为前面再没有山了. 飞机可以毫无困难地飞过这片茫茫无际的白色原野!

【课文讲解】

【Key structures】关键句型

can...可能性

be able to...可能性,成功地做

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题

4 It could only get over the mountains if it rose to 10,000 feet. This means it_____ over the mountains.

a. would succeed in getting b. got c. was able to get d. had got

4.....a...

could 与过去时态有关,强调可能性

be able to 强调成功地做

用过去式表达,表示在过去发生

过去完成时,强调在过去的过去

5 The plane was then able to rise. This means it _____.

a. could rise b. might rise c. might succeed in rising d. rose

5...d...

could rise...有可能,不知道结果

might rise...可能

might succeed in rising...可能成功地做

rose...没有情态单词,表示已经成为事实

6 Byrd knew that he would be able to reach the South Pole. It would be _____.

a. impossible b. necessary c. able d. possible

6...d...

be able to

was/were able to表示这个动作在过去成功地做

will be able to.....将来可能会成=can

§ Lesson 44 Through the forest 穿过森林

【New words and expressions】生词和短语

★forest n. 森林

★risk n. 危险, 冒险

★picnic n. 野餐

★edge n. 边缘

★strap n. 带, 皮带

★possession n. 所有

★breath [breθ] n. 呼吸

out of breath: 上气不接下气

waste one's breath; 白费口舌

in one breath: 片刻, 转眼间: He finished water in one breath. 他一口气把水喝完了.

hold one's breath: 屏住呼吸

bad breath: 口臭 : You have a bad breath. 你有口臭.

★contents n. (常用复数) 内有的物品(具体的东西)

content: 内容(抽象) : content of the text 文章的内容

包里的书: contents of the bag

more contents! (口语) 在吃饭时要求再加些饭菜时可以这样说.

★mend v. 修理

【Text】

Lesson 44 Through the forest 穿过森林

First listen and then answer the question. 听录音, 然后回答以下问题.

How did Mrs. Sterling get her bag back?

Mrs. Anne Sterling did not think of the risk she was taking when she ran through a forest after two men. They had rushed up to her while she was having a picnic at the edge of a forest with her children and tried to steal her handbag. In the struggle, the strap broke and, with the bag in their possession, both men started running through the trees. Mrs. Sterling got so angry that she ran after them. She was soon out of breath, but she continued to run. When she caught up with them, she saw that they had sat down and were going through the contents of the bag, so she ran straight at them. The men got such a fright that they dropped the bag and ran away. 'The strap needs mending,' said Mrs. Sterling later, 'but they did not steal anything.'

参考译文

安·斯特林夫人在穿过森林追赶两个男人时, 她并没有考虑到所冒的风险. 刚才, 当她和孩子们正在森林边上野餐的时候, 这两个人冲到她跟前, 企图抢走她的手提包. 在争抢中, 手提包的带断了, 包落入这两个人手里, 他们拔腿跑进了树林. 斯特林夫人非常气愤, 向着他们追了过去. 只追了一会儿便上气不接下气了, 但她还是继续追赶. 当她赶上他们时, 发现他们已经坐了下来, 正翻着包里的东西. 于是她直冲过去. 这两个人吓了一跳, 扔下提包逃跑了. “这提包带需要修理,” 斯特林夫人事后说道, “不过他们什么也没偷走.”

【课文讲解】

Mrs. Anne Sterling did not think of the risk...

take a risk: 冒...风险

run after: ① 追赶, ② 追随, ③ 追求 : The police are running after a thief.

run behind: 在某人后面跑: I ran behind him.

run to: 跑向

rush up to: 迎面冲过来

up: 向上, 面对面, 与说话人相反方向

down: 方向相同, 与说话人相同方向: go down 接着往前走, 不用回头

have a picnic 野餐

in one's possession: 为某人所拥有…… (给人感觉是这东西本来不属于你)

I went out of the book shop with book in my possession.

so...that: 如此...以致于

continued to do: 接着做

catch up with: 追上, 赶上(强调结果)

contents of the bag: 包里的东西

go through: 浏览, 翻看(速度较快的看)

run (straight) at (at 强调瞄准,一般与 straight 相连都用 at, lesson35 也有类似句型)

need 用法除 lesson41 外的又一种情况:

needn't 可以回答 must 开头的疑问句,只能用在肯定句中,可以直接加动词-ing

need doing: 需要做,需要被做

① 这里 need 属于实义动词, 动词 ing 相当于名词来理解

② 有时态和人称变化,否定式为: don't need doing

③ need doing 表达被动含义, 如: Your shoes need washing. 你的鞋子需(被)洗了

另外:want doing :也是用主动表示被动含义

它们的主语一定是物, 不是人: Your hair needs cutting.

need to be done---主语是人,也可以是物

总结:

1.never/not think of the risk she was taking

2.with sth.in one's possession

3.need doing

【letter writing】书信写作

Addressing the envelope: The name and address must appear in the middle of the envelope. Titles are always used with names. Study these examples:

信封上的地址的书写方式: 收信人的姓名和地址必须在信封的中央, 称呼总是和姓名连在一起的. 研究以下例子:

Mr. James Thompson, James Thompson Esq.,

Miss H. Thompson, Mrs. D Thompson,

Mr. and Mrs. J. Thompson,

Esq.→ Esquire 写信时对男性的尊称(放在人名的后面), 等同于 Mr. 但位置不同

Mr.and Mrs.(已婚), 一般夫妇一起邀请

先写人名,再写地址, 写信人的地址写在信封背面, 或放在信中

【Key structures】关键句型

Both men started running through the trees.

a Do you remember these sentences: (KS20) 你还记得以下句子吗? (参见第 20 课关键句型)

Eating is always a pleasure. 吃总是一种享受.

I am very keen on cycling. 我很热衷骑自行车.

He sat there without saying anything. 他坐在那里, 一言不发.

I must apologize for not letting you know earlier. 没有让你早点知道, 我必须向你道歉.

b Now study these examples:

仔细阅读以下例子:

I am looking forward to seeing him tomorrow. (SD37) 我期待着明天与他会面. (第 37 课难点)

I am accustomed to getting up early. 我习惯早起.

I am used to getting up early. 我习惯早起.

(Compare: I used to get up early but I don't anymore. [KS31])(对比: 我过去常早起, 但现在不再早起了.

(参见第 31 课关键句型))

c Instead of saying : We can say:

除了这种表述方法外 : 还可以说 :

The men started to run through the trees. The men started running through the trees.

They began to run. They began running.

They continued to run. They continued running.

d Compare these sentences:

比较下面句子 :

Now

Always

I hate to disturb you, but can I come in for a moment please? I hate disturbing people when they are busy.

我不愿意打扰你,但我可以进来一会儿吗? 人们忙的时候,我不愿意打扰.

I'd love (or like) to sit in the garden. I love (or like) sitting in the garden when it's fine.

我喜欢坐在花园里. 天气好的时候,我喜欢在花园里坐坐.

e Study these expressions :

研究以下表达方式 :

My shirt is torn. It needs mending. 我的衬衫撕破了,需要缝补.

Those windows are dirty. They want washing. 那些窗户很脏,需要洗刷.

a. 动词-ing 做介词宾语,或做主语

b. to 做介词 + 动词-ing

look forward to / be used to / be accustomed to

devote oneself to (全身心投入做某事) : She devotes herself to teaching. / My mother devotes herself to doing homework.

object to (反对) : I object to eating out. 我反对在外面吃饭.

c. begin, start, continue + to do/doing 没有区别

d. hate, love, like + doing.....表示一种习惯(always)

hate, love, like + to do.....表示某一次性的行为(now)

would love / like to do: 表示想要, 习惯于在前面加 would

餐厅服务员习惯会问: "Would you like to ...?", 而不会用 "Do you like ...?", 他只关心你现在想吃什么, 而不管你平常吃什么.

I hate to... : 不喜欢

I hate to ... but ... :

I hate to say I have no money, but I really need some. 说明这个人要向你借钱了

I hate to say but I really have something important to do. 你想拒绝别人的邀请时可用的句型

e. need, want

如果以物体做主语,可以直接加动词-ing,表达被动的含义

Exercises B Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses: 用正确的形式填空 :

1 I'd love _____ (see) that film. Will it be on tomorrow?

2 He's accustomed to _____ (work) very hard.

3 These shirts need _____ (iron).

4 I hate _____ (leave) so early, but I'm afraid I have to.

5 They continued _____ (argue) till after midnight.

6 Would you like _____ (come) with me?

- 7 I shall be looking forward to_____ (see) you soon.
- 8 You must never come into this room without _____ (knock) first.
- 9 I got tired of _____ (wait) so I left.
- 10 It began _____ (rain) just as I was going out.
- 11 I don't believe in _____ (work) too hard.
- 12 He accused me of _____ (take) his umbrella.

1.to see

would love to do 固定用法,等同于 would like to do

想要,愿意

2.working

be accustomed to doing 习惯于做某事

look forward to doing

be used to doing

be accustomed to doing

devote to doing : 奉献给某事, 把...奉献给...

object to doing : 反对做某事

3.ironing

iron n.铁,熨斗

v.熨烫,熨衣服

4.to leave

原来我们只会说:I must be going now.(我要走了) 或 I must go. 现在我们用 "I hate to..." 的句型, 比前面的表达更有礼貌

5.to argue/arguing

6.to come

7.seeing

8.knocking

介词后面加动词,一定要加-ing 形式

9.waiting

get/be tired of 对...厌烦, 作为系动词 get 可与 be 替换

10.to rain/raining

有三个动词加 to do 和加 doing 一样: begin, start, continue

11.working

believe in 信任,信仰

take it easy 轻松,放松,慢慢来: I believe in taking it easy.

believe in + sb 表示信任某人,信仰某人

believe in + doing 表示我的信条是...

12.taking

accuse [ə'kju:z] vt. accused, accusing 控告; 指控

accuse of : 因某事控告某人

The police accused him of stealing. 警方控告他犯有盗窃罪.

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题

4 They were going through the contents of the bag. _____ she ran straight at them.

a. For this b. That's because c. That's why d. That's so

4.c

That's 后一般加特殊疑问词引导的从句

或 that's all 加从句

for 加句子的时候, 习惯上放在主句之后

表示由于某个理由, 我们不说 for this 而说 for this reason

5 They got such a fright. They were _____.

a. so frightful b. such frightened c. so frightened d. such fright

5.c

frightful=terrible

frightened 感到害怕的

d 应为 such a fright

6 The strap needs mending. It _____.

a. has mended b. has to be mended c. has been mended d. has been mending

6.b

10 They tried to steal her handbag. They tried to _____ her of her handbag.

a. rob b. steal c. be robbed d. be stolen

10.a

steal 后面加物, rob 的后面加人

steal sth from sb

rob sb of sth

8 She took a risk. What she did was _____.

a. dangerous b. brave c. clever d. stupid

8.a

what she did 她做的事

What I said is true. 我所说的话是真的

That is what I heard. 那就是我所听到的事情

这里 what 有点类似于汉语中的“兼语”的概念

what=the thing that

The thing is that my brother will come./arrive.

The thing surprised me.

The thing that/which surprised me is that my brother will come.

What surprised me is that my brother will come. (更多用这种表达)

What I saw made me sad.

What you said made me sad.

stupid ['stju:pid] adj. 愚蠢的, 麻木的, 乏味的

dangerous ['deɪndʒərəs] adj. 危险的

§ Lesson 45 A clear conscience 问心无愧

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★clear adj. 无罪的, 不亏心的

★conscience n. 良心, 道德心

clear conscience 问心无愧

guilty conscience 问心有愧 (guilty ['gilti] adj. 犯罪的, 有罪的, 心虚的)

I have a clear conscience. 我问心无愧

I have a guilty conscience. 我问心有愧

bad conscience 问心有愧

★wallet n. 皮夹, 钱夹 (一般指的是男用的那种皮夹)

purse [pɜ:s] n. 钱包(女士用)

handbag 手袋

billfold ['bɪlfəʊld] n. 皮夹, 钱包(美语) (意为纸币折叠形成的, 很形象)

fold [fəʊld] n. 折, 羊栏, 折痕, 信徒 vt. 折叠, 包, 合拢, 抱住, 笼罩, 调入, 交迭 vi. 折叠起来, 彻底失败

★savings n. 存款

savings account 存款账号(有利息的, 有点象活期存款)

checking account 存款(没有利息)

deposit [di'pɒzɪt] n. 定金

deposit account 存款(有利息, 有点象定期存款)

ATM 自动取款机 : auto teller machine

self-service machine 自助银行

cash card 取款卡

IC [aɪˈsi:] ① interchange [7ɪntE5tFeɪndV] 高速公路转换出入口

② [电] integrate circuit 集成电路, 指令计数器

★villager n. 村民

★per cent 百分之.....

three per cent 百分之三

【Text】

Lesson 45 A clear conscience 问心无愧

First listen and then answer the question. 听录音, 然后回答以下问题.

How did Sam get his money back?

The whole village soon learnt that a large sum of money had been lost. Sam Benton, the local butcher, had lost his wallet while taking his savings to the post office. Sam was sure that the wallet must have been found by one of the villagers, but it was not returned to him. Three months passed, and then one morning, Sam found his wallet outside his front door. It had been wrapped up in newspaper and it contained half the money he had lost, together with a note which said: 'A thief, yes, but only 50 per cent a thief!' Two months later, some more money was sent to Sam with another note: 'Only 25 per cent a thief now!' In time, all Sam's money was paid back in this way. The last note said: 'I am 100 per cent honest now!'

参考译文

整个村子很快知道, 有一大笔钱丢失了. 当地的屠户萨姆.本顿在把存款送往邮局的途中把钱包丢了. 萨姆确信那钱包一定是被某个村民捡到了, 可是却不见有人来送还给他. 3 个月过去了, 后来在一天早晨, 萨姆在自己的大门外发现了他的钱包. 钱包是用报纸包着的, 里面有他丢失的钱的一半, 而且还附着一张纸条, 上面写

着：“一个小偷，是的，但只是一个 50%的小偷！”又过了两个月，又有一些钱送还给了萨姆，又附了一张字条：“这回只是 25%的小偷了！”很快，萨姆全部的钱都用同样的方式还了回来。最后的那张字条上写道：“我现在是一个 100%的诚实人了！”

【课文讲解】

learn 得知

The whole world learnt...全世界都知道...

while doing 是一个省略形式

这种情况应具备两个条件

1.这个动作的主语跟主句的主语一样

2.这句话一定要是进行时态

这句话完整的应为: while he was taking...

must have been done

must have done 表示对过去的推测

must have been done 表示对过去被动的推测

三种表示一段时间以后,另外一件事情发生的方式

1...passed and then

2.some time later

3.some passed before...

wrap up 包裹

It had been wrapped up in newspaper by somebody. (用报纸包用 “in”, 不能用 “by”)

half the money 钱的一半

half 直接加在名词前表示 “一半”

half an hour 半个小时 / half a year 半年

together with = with 介词短语作状语,表示随它一起的还有...

I with my son went there. 我带着我的儿子去了

My son and I went there.

a note which said...

The picture said...图片上说

Newspaper said...报纸上说

Note said....纸条上说

some more money 又有一些钱 (more : 又, 再)

in time = in the end 最终

pay back 还回来

In the way : 以这种方式

...per cent adv 作副词

总结

learn 得知 ; 与 know 知道 不同

while doing

with 表附带

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题

3 Sam was taking his savings to the post office _____ he lost his wallet.

a.when b.while c.as d.just as

while doing 两者同时发生

while sb was doing 当....时候

能用 while; as 的地方就可以用 when, 反之则不一定

when 后的时间表达即可以是点,也可以是段

while 后的时间表达只可以是段

as 等同于 while.

Answer: A

7 Some more money was sent to Sam. Sam _____ some more money.

a. sent b. has sent c. was sent d. had sent

send=take/give

send/take/give sb sth

双宾语一般用离动词最近的宾语来做被语动态的主语

sent sb sth -> 变被动: sb be sent sth

send sth to sb -> 变被动 : sth be sent to sb

answer: C

6 _____ had it been wrapped up in? A newspaper.

a. Where b. Who c. How d. What

对名词提问用 what

answer: D

10 How much did it contain? How much _____ ?

a. did it consist b. was there in it c. did it include d. had it

contain/container : 与容器有关,或类似于容器的东西的包含

include 指一种抽象的包含

answer: B

12 _____, all Sam's money was returned.

a. At times b. After a time c. With the times d. A long time

a time 一段时间, 不译为“一次”, 一次用“once”

for a long time

after a time = after some time

answer : B

9 The thief had _____ the wallet in newspaper.

a.wound b.rolled c.wrapped d.bound

answer: C

wind : 主要指道路

roll [rəʊl] v : 卷起来, 如: 滚雪球 / spring roll : 春卷

bound [baʊnd] 弹跳, 球类的弹跳

§ Lesson 46 Expensive and uncomfortable 既昂贵又受罪

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★unload v. 卸（货）

load v 装货

★wooden adj. 木制的

★extremely [iks'tri:mli] adv. 非常，极其

extremely 把一个形容词或副词推到了极限,达到了无以复加的程度

extremely beautiful

I am tired. 我累了

I am extremely tired. 我累极了

★occur vi. 发生（不及物）

happen vi. 发生（不及物）

What happened/occured ?

It happened to me... 这件事发生在我身上

What happened to the clavichord?

What's wrong with you? (以前我们会这么问)

What happened to you? 什么事发生在你身上?

It occured to me.... 我想起了一件事

It occured to sb that....

It occured to me that I didn't finish my homework. 我想起我还没完成作业

I have a good idea.

A good idea occured to me.

sth occur to sb

It occurs to sb to do sth / It occurs to sb that...

It suddenly occurred to one of the workers to open up the box. 突然一个工人想到打开箱子看看

sth occur to sb 某人突然想起某件事（从后面往前面翻）

★astonish [əs'tɒnɪʃ] vt.使惊讶

如果一个动词跟人的情绪有关,则它的宾语是人,其形容词有两个:令人 -ing ; 感到 -ed

astonishing/astonished

surprise/shock/astonish/astound

surprise 最常用,但意思肤浅

shock 不快的事情

astonish 难以置信的事

I am surprised.

I am astonished.

astound [əs'taʊnd] vt.使惊骇,使大吃一惊(非常吃惊,目瞪口呆)

I am surprised.-->astonished-->astounded-->shocked 惊讶程度递增

★pile n. 堆

★woollen n. 羊毛的

★goods n. (常用复数)货物,商品

★discover v. 发现(属于那种以前你不知道的事现在知道了)

discovery n 探索

discovery [dis'kʌvəri] n.发现,发明的东西

★admit v. 承认

deny sth/deny doing

admit sth/ admit doing sth

I admit having lunch.

★confine v. 关在或局限在某个地方(一个狭小的空间里)

sb was confined to (一定会加 "to")

sb was confined to the room.

★normal adj. 正常的, 通常的

【Text】

Lesson 46 Expensive and uncomfortable 既昂贵又受罪

First listen and then answer the question. 听录音, 然后回答以下问题.

What did the man in this story do?

When a plane from London arrived at Sydney airport, workers began to unload a number of wooden boxes which contained clothing. No one could account for the fact that one of the boxes was extremely heavy. It suddenly occurred to one of the workers to open up the box. He was astonished at what he found. A man was lying in the box on top of a pile of woolen goods. He was so surprised at being discovered that he did not even try to run away. After he was arrested, the man admitted hiding in the box before the plane left London. He had had a long and uncomfortable trip, for he had been confined to the wooden box for over eighteen hours. The man was ordered to pay \$3,500 for the cost of the trip. The normal price of a ticket is \$2,000!

参考译文

当一架来自伦敦的飞机抵达悉尼机场时, 工人们开始卸下装有服装的一批木箱. 其中有只箱子特别重, 可谁也弄不清是怎么回事. 突然一个工人想到打开箱子看看. 看到的情景使吃惊, 箱内有一人正躺在一堆毛织品之上. 他由于被人发现而感到非常吃惊, 甚至都没有企图逃跑. 此人被逮捕后, 承认他是在飞机离开伦敦前躲进箱里的. 他经历了一次漫长而又难受的旅程, 因为他在那木箱里闷了 18 个多小时. 此人被责令交付旅费 3,500 英镑, 而正常票价是 2,000 英镑!

【课文讲解】

同位语从句

重点:

It suddenly occurred to one of the workers to open up the box.

Text

occur to sb

it occur to sb to do sth/that...

clothing/clothes

clothing 在分类时强调衣服这一种类

clothes 表示"衣服"的单数名词的复数形式, 表示许多衣服

No one could...

No one knows... 没有人知道

account for = explain, 但也有区别, account 的解释必须是令人满意的, 而 explain 却只要是一个解释就行

account [ə'kaunt] n. 计算, 帐目, 说明, 估计, 理由 vi. 说明, 总计有, 认为, 得分 vt. 认为

give the explanation

一个句子跟在一个名词后,可以是: 1.定语从句; 2.同位语从句

My friend Lucy: 同位语

I know the fact that he doesn't know.

I do know the fact that he doesn't know.

区别:

1.同位语从句后的 **that** 是起解释说明的作用, 而定语从句是起修饰作用

2.**that** 在从句中做主语或宾语成分,则是定语从句; **that** 在从句中不能做主语或宾语成分,则是同位语从句

be astonished at: 对什么感到吃惊用介词 "at"

be surprised at

what = the thing that...

on top of

a pile of

piles of snow: 一堆堆

at the top of/on top of: 在...之上

on top of 与顶端有接触面

at the top of 在...上方(**at the top of** 之前的词属于其之后的词的范围之内)

so...that... 如此...以致于

admit doing sth

have a trip

for:because: 文中这里强调事实, 而非原因

be confined to

over:more than

pay...for... 为...付钱

pay 付钱

cost of ...的花费, 费用

the cost of government: 政府开支

It is too expensive! (**expensive** 意为贵得令人不能接受)

dear: **The book is dear** 这本书有点贵

dear [diə] adj.昂贵的, 亲爱的 **int.**[表示惊讶, 怜悯等], **Oh, ~!**

have a trip

go on a trip

总结:

It suddenly occurred to one of the workers to open up the box

同位语从句

be surprised at

be astonished at

admit doing

be confined to

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题

2 The man had hidden in the box _____.

a. to get to Sydney

b. because it contained woollen goods

c. to avoid paying the fare from London to Sydney

d. because no one would find him

because 后面加原因

to 后面加目的

avoid 后面一定要加 doing 表示避免做某事: avoid doing

fare 车费,乘坐的交通工具的费用

C.

4 Which boxes contained clothing? _____.

a. The wooden b. The wood c. The woody ones d. The wooden ones

A. The wooden adj. 木头的

B. The wood 木头

表示木头制的东西用 wooden

C. woody ['wudi] adj. 多树木的, 木本的, 木头般的, 木制的

D. The wooden ones ✓

ones 是代词

8 The boxes contained clothing. They contained _____.

a. cloths b. cloth c. clothes d. dresses

answer : C

【Key structures】 关键句型

Verbs followed by to, at, for and with (Compare KS22)与 to, at, for 和 with 连用的动词(对比第 22 课关键句型)

We can put to, at, for and with after certain verbs.

在一部分动词的后面可加上 to, at, for 和 with.

对比 : Compare :

I saw Tom yesterday. 昨天我见到了汤姆.

I shall see to the dinner tonight. (I shall prepare it.)今晚我做晚饭.

Use this list for reference : 请参考下表 :

a To: accustom(ed), amount, appeal, apply(or for), attach(ed), attend, belong, challenge, compare (or with), condemn(ed), confess, confine, consent, convert, entitle(d), listen mention, object, occur, prefer, react(or against), reply, respond, see, submit, surrender, turn, yield.

与 to 连用的动词 : 习惯于; 达到; 呼吁; 适用于; 附属于; 参加; 属于; 向……提出挑战; 比较; 判刑; 承认; 限制; 同意; 改信(某宗教); 享有权利; 听; 提到; 反对; 想到; 更喜欢; 对……反应; 回答; 响应; 注意; 服从于; 向……投降; 转向; 屈服.

b AT: amused. (or by), arrive (or in), astonish (ed)(or by), exclaim, glance, guess, knock(SD 6), look (SD 37b), point (or to), shock(ed)(or by), stare, surprise(d) (or by), wonder (or about), work (or on).

与 at 连用的动词 : 对……感到有趣; 到达; 感到惊愕; 惊叫; 对……看一眼; 猜测; 敲(第 6 课难点); 看(第 37 课难点 b); 指向; 感到震惊; 盯着……看; 感到惊讶; 感到惊异; 钻研.

c FOR: account, ask (or of), act(or on), apologize, blame, beg, call (SD 34), charge, exchange, hope, look, mistake, mourn, pay (SD 45b), prepare, provide, search, thank, vote (or on)(KS 22d), wait (or on).

与 for 连用的动词 : 说明(原因); 请求; 代表; 因……而道歉; 责备; 乞求; 需要(第 34 课难点); 收费; 交换; 希望; 寻找; 误认为; 哀悼; 为……付款(第 45 课难点 b); 准备; 提供; 寻求; 感谢; 投票支持(第 22 课关键句型); 等候.

d WITH: agree, begin, communicate, compare (or to), compete (or against), comply, confuse, contrast(or to), cope, correspond, disgust(ed), finish, help(or in), interfere (or in), mix, occupy(ied), part, please(d), quarrel (or about), reason, satisfy (fied) (or by), threaten (ed).

与 with 连用的动词：同意；以……开始；与……联络；与……比较；同……竞争；同意；误作；形成对照；对付；与……一致；使……讨厌；完成；帮助；干扰；混合；从事于；放弃；对……满意；争论；规劝；感到满足；威胁。

Exercises 练习

A Point out verbs in the passage which are followed by to, at, or for.

找出课文中与 to, at, for 连用的动词。

B Supply the missing words (to, at, for and with) without referring to the above lists as far as possible:

用 to, at, for 或 with 填空, 尽可能不查以上动词表：

- 1 I don't agree _____ you.
- 2 She preferred _____ wait _____ him.
- 3 We have been corresponding _____ each other for years.
- 4 How do you account _____ this?
- 5 Do you object _____ my smoking?
- 6 I'm surprised _____ you! present.
- 7 You must reply _____ his letter.
- 8 He has some important business to attend _____.
- 9 Do you mean to say you exchanged that lovely car _____ water.
- 10 Has it occurred _____ you that she must have arrived _____ London Airport by now?
- 11 I was shocked _____ his indifference!
- 12 You must comply _____ the rules of the game.
- 13 Poor Mary! She has so much to cope _____!
- 14 Please don't mention it _____ my husband, but I paid £50 _____ this hat.
- 15 She was quite unprepared _____ the news.
- 16 Don't blame me _____ the accident!
- 17 I'm disgusted _____ your behaviour!
- 18 You forgot to thank Aunt Jane _____ her
- 19 It is rude to stare _____ people.
- 20 I'm not satisfied _____ your work.
- 21 His debt now amounts _____ £100.
- 22 Mix the contents of this packet _____ a little _____ this?
- 23 I knocked _____ the door.
- 24 Whom does this book belong _____?
- 25 I reasoned _____ him, but he would not listen _____ me.
- 26 She's accustomed _____ living in comfort. She'll never part _____ her precious possessions.
- 27 At what time will you call _____ me? better.
- 28 The spy surrendered himself _____ the enemy and was condemned _____ death.
- 29 I've looked _____ it everywhere, but I can't find it.
- 30 I'll see _____ the cooking tonight.
- 31 I must apologize _____ keeping you waiting. exercise?
- 32 The class failed to respond _____ the teacher's new methods.
- 33 He turned _____ me for help, even after I had quarrelled _____ him.
- 34 Like Micawber, I hope _____ something
- 35 Please apply _____ the secretary for information.

- 36 There was a note attached _____ the parcel.
 37 Just guess _____ the price of this carpet.
 38 How long have you been working _____ this
 39 The concert began _____ a piece by an unknown composer.
 40 How much did they charge you _____ that?

§ Lesson 47 A thirsty ghost 嗜酒的鬼魂

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★thirsty adj. 贪杯的

thirsty 渴的

I am thirsty for the book.

be thirsty for / be hungry for 渴望得到(如饥似渴)

★ghost n. 鬼魂

ghost 强调魂，并不是邪恶的象征

'ghost' --- 影片《人鬼情未了》的英文名

★haunt [hɔ:nt] v. (鬼)来访，闹鬼

the ghost haunt. 闹鬼

The ghost haunted the house. 这个房子闹鬼

haunt=visit, 但不能应用于人的拜访

★block v. 堵

The pipe was blocked.

★furniture ['fə:nitʃə] n.家具，设备，储藏物

furniture 不可数名词

a piece of furniture 一件家具

a set of furniture 一套家具

★whisky n. 威士忌酒

Scotch [skɒtʃ] n 一种上等的威士忌

wine : 果酒,如葡萄酒,石榴酒

beer : 啤酒

brandy : 白兰地

★suggest v. 暗示

suggest 常用用法: 1.+that 从句 ; 2.+doing

★shake v. 摇动

shook[ʃʊk], shaken['ʃeɪkən], shaking[ˈʃeɪkɪŋ]

★accept v. 接受

accept: receive sth. with pleasure

【Text】

Lesson 47 A thirsty ghost 嗜酒的鬼魂

First listen and then answer the question. 听录音, 然后回答以下问题.

What evidence is there of a ghost?

A public house which was recently bought by Mr. Ian Thompson is up for sale. Mr. Thompson is going to sell it because it is haunted. He told me that he could not go to sleep one night because he heard a strange noise coming from the bar. The next morning, he found that the doors had been blocked by chairs and the furniture had been moved. Though Mr. Thompson had turned the lights off before he went to bed, they were on in the morning. He also said that he had found five empty whisky bottles which the ghost must have drunk the night before. When I suggested that some villagers must have come in for a free drink, Mr. Thompson shook his head. The villagers have told him that they will not accept the pub even if he gives it away.

参考译文

伊恩·汤普森先生最近才买的一个小酒店现在又要卖出去。汤普森先生之所以想卖它, 是因为那里常闹鬼。他告诉我有天夜里他怎么也睡不着, 因为他听到酒吧里传来一阵奇怪的响声。第二天早上, 他发现酒吧间的门被椅子堵上了, 家具也被挪动过。虽然汤普森临睡觉时把灯关了, 但早晨灯却都亮着。他还说他发现了5只空的威士忌瓶子, 肯定是鬼魂昨天晚上喝的。当我暗示说一定是村里有些人来喝不花钱的酒时, 汤普森先生摇了摇头。村里的人已经告诉他, 即使他把小酒店白送人, 他们也不要。

【课文讲解】

a public house 酒吧

up for sale 有待出售

on sale 打折卖

for sale 拿出来卖的

up for 有待于...

This problem is up for discussion. 这个问题有待于讨论

hear sb. doing 听见某人正在做某事

the next morning = next morning : "the" 可省略

turn off 关闭

The light is on. 这个灯是亮着的

the night before 前一天晚上 / last night 昨天晚上

the week before 前一个星期 / last week 上个星期

the day before 前一天 / yesterday 昨天

the next day 下一天 / tomorrow 明天

for : 表目的

shake one's head 摇头

nod one's head 点头

even if 即使

give away 捐献, 免费的送

【Multiple choice questions】 多项选择题

7 The ghost must have drunk the whisky. In Mr. Thompson's opinion, the ghost _____ whisky.

a.must drink b.has got to drink c.has to drink d.should drink

in one's opinion 就某人看来,以某人观点,某人认为

I think ... : 太过强调个人的主观性, 一般用 in one's opinion 更让人接受

have to=have got to

should 可以是情态代词,表应该

It's too late,I should go home.太晚了,我要回家了.

must+v.(原型): 1.必须做,2.很可能做

§ Lesson 48 Did you want to tell me something? 你想对我说什么吗?

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★pull v. 拔

pull vt 拔,拉,. 反义词 push vt,推

pull one's leg 开某人玩笑

You are pulling my leg. 你在开我玩笑

Don't pull my leg any more. 不要再开我玩笑

You are kidding. 你在开玩笑

no kidding! 不要开玩笑!

You are joking.

joke [dʒəʊk] n.笑话, 玩笑 v.(和...)开玩笑

★cotton wool 药棉

★collect v. 搜集

collect salary 领工资

collect money 筹集资金

collect stamp 集邮

collect children 收养孩子

★collection n. 收藏品, 收集品

★nod v. 点头

★meanwhile adv. 同时

meanwhile = at the same time = in the same time

用法和 however 一样,不能连接两个句子,但是意思上有承接概念

【Text】

Lesson 48 Did you want to tell me something? 你想对我说什么吗?

First listen and then answer the question. 听录音, 然后回答以下问题.

Why did the writer become very worried?

Dentists always ask questions when it is impossible for you to answer. My dentist had just pulled out one of my teeth and had told me to rest for a while. I tried to say something, but my mouth was full of cotton wool. He knew I collected match boxes and asked me whether my collection was growing. He then asked me how my brother was and whether I liked my new job in London. In answer to these questions I either nodded or made strange noises. Meanwhile, my tongue was

busy searching out the hole where the tooth had been. I suddenly felt very worried, but could not say anything. When the dentist at last removed the cotton wool from my mouth, I was able to tell him that he had pulled out the wrong tooth.

参考译文

牙科医生们总是在你无法作出回答的时候向你提出问题。我的牙科医生刚刚给我拔掉了一颗牙，叫我休息一会儿。我想说点什么，但我嘴里塞满了药棉。他知道我收集火柴盒，于是问我收藏的米柴盒是否在增加。接着他又问我的兄弟近来如何，问我是否喜欢伦敦的新工作。作为对这些问题的回答，我不是点头，就是发出奇怪的声音。与此同时，我的舌头正在忙着寻找刚拔掉的那颗牙的伤口。我突然非常着急起来，但却什么也说不出。当那位牙医最后将药棉从我嘴中取出时，我总算有可能告诉他，他拔错了牙。

【课文讲解】

my tongue was busy searching out the hole where the tooth had been.

be busy doing 忙于做某事

search out 找出

判断是否是定语从句就看是否和前面的名词有关系

where = 介词 + which

That is the house which I lived in. 这是我住的房子

That is the house where I lived.

I swim in the river. 那就是我常常游泳的河

where 称为关系副词,另外还有 when 也是关系副词

This is the river where I swim.

where 作定语从句的标志,修饰前面的 hole.

The tooth had been in the hole. (in the hole = where)

in answer to 作为对...的回答 : in answer to your question, he...

in return for 作为对...的报答

【Multiple choice questions】 多项选择题

11 Meanwhile my tongue was busy...._____ my tongue was busy...

a. However b. In the mean time c. Nevertheless d. Although

meanwhile=at the same time =in the mean time

§ Lesson 49 The end of a dream 美梦告终

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★tired adj 厌烦的

be tired of sth/doing sth 讨厌做某事

get tired of ...

★real adj 真正的 (强调东西不是假的)

true : 真挚, 真诚, 符合标准 (强调符合某个标准)

体会 "real man /true man" 的区别

★owner n 主人

own v

★spring n 弹簧

spring : 春天, 泉水

fountain 人工喷泉

★mattress n 床垫

mat 垫子 (如杯垫)

cushion 座垫

★gust n 一阵风

breeze : 微风

gale 大风, (突发的)一阵风

a gust of anger (一阵)无名火

★sweep n 扫刮(swept/swept/,swept)

blow

sweep sth away 把...刮走

★smash v 碰碎, 摔碎

smash sth into pieces 把...摔成碎片

crash : 受挤压而变碎

The egg is easy to crash.

break: 打碎

cut into pieces 切碎, 剪碎

tear into pieces 撕碎

crack : 裂

cracker

★courtyard ['kɔ:tjɑ:d] n 院子 (英音读音[tj]读成“雀”)

backyard 后院

court 院子, 庭院

yard 院子

★unhurt adj 没有受伤的

★glance v 扫视

glance at

glare at 瞪着(生气的)

stare at 盯着

gaze at : 盯着(无限神往, 羡慕地看)

★promptly adv 迅速地

promptly=at once, immediately

★miraculously adv 奇迹般的

【Text】

Lesson 49 The end of a dream 美梦告终

First listen and then answer the question. 听录音，然后回答以下问题。

How did the dream end?

Tired of sleeping on the floor, a young man in Teheran saved up for years to buy a real bed. For the first time in his life, he became the proud owner of a bed which had springs and a mattress. Because the weather was very hot, he carried the bed on to the roof of his house. He slept very well for the first two nights, but on the third night, a storm blew up. A gust of wind swept the bed off the roof and sent it crashing into the courtyard below. The young man did not wake up until the bed had struck the ground. Although the bed was smashed to pieces, the man was miraculously unhurt. When he woke up, he was still on the mattress. Glancing at the bits of wood and metal that lay around him, the man sadly picked up the mattress and carried it into his house. After he had put it on the floor, he promptly went to sleep again.

参考译文

德黑兰的一个年轻人由于对睡地板感到厌倦，于是积蓄多年买了一张真正的床。他平生第一次自豪地拥有了——一张既有弹簧又带床垫的床。由于天气很热，他便把床搬到了他的屋顶上。头两天晚上，他睡得非常好。但第三天晚上起了风暴。一阵大风把床从屋顶上刮了下来，把它摔碎在下面的院子里。那年轻人直到床撞到地上才醒了过来。尽管床摔成了碎片，但年轻人却奇迹般地没有受伤。他醒来时，仍然躺在床垫上。年轻人看了一眼周围的碎木片和碎金属片，伤心地捡起了床垫，把它拿进了屋。他把床垫往地板上一放，很快又睡着了。

【课文讲解】

be tired of : 对……感到厌倦

如果一个名词和一个代词分别做主句和从句地主语，能把事物说清楚地名词习惯放在主句做主语

Tired of sleeping on the floor, ... 用形容词短语直接做状语

I always go to bed hungry. 用形容词直接做状语

Worried about my daughter, Lucy, she went to London to visit Lucy.

I went home. I am tired. => I went home tired

I went home excited.

for the first time in one's life 平生第一次

He became the proud owner of a bed.

He became the proud father of a baby. 译为：我自豪的成为一个孩子的父亲了。

on to 类似与 in to: 不但有“去”的概念还有把它放到“on 上面”或“in 里面”的概念

Lift sth on to the cart.

for the first two nights 头两天晚上

I study hard for the first three days.

for the last three nights 最后三天晚上

blow up(adv)风越刮越大(程度在加深)

speak up 大声点

off = down from/away from

below : 直接放在被修饰词之后作定语

一个句子中不能出现两个动词：

如果出现了两个动词，用 and, but 连接；或者把其中一个作为非谓语动词(to do(表目的); -ed(表被动);

-ing(表主动))

although 尽管 : though 虽然, 意义差不多, 以从句出现
crash vi(不及物动词)直接用主动形式, smash 一般用作及物动词
glancing at=be glancing

bits = pieces

lie (lay lain) vi (不及物动词), 后面一定要加 "around", 不能说成 "lay him"

只有谓语动词才会把它变成几种时态

动词的 ing 形式一定强调某一个名词之间的主动关系

【Key structures】 关键句型

主语从句

what she did .../ It is easy that we learn English.(It 形式主语)

宾语从句

间接引语

I am sorry (that) I am late.

定语从句 who, which, that

状语从句

让步状语 although

原因状语 because, as, since

条件状语 if,

时间状语 until, after, before, as, as soon as

结果状语 so.....that.....

目的状语 to, in order to

following his mom, he went there. (主动概念, 跟着他母亲去了那儿)

followed by his mom, he went there. (被动概念, 被他母亲带着跟着去了那儿)

【letter writing】书信写作

第二行如要退格是退 5 个字符, 现在西方都是顶格写.

写 business letter, 参照范本

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题

3、_____ the hot weather, he couldn't sleep indoors.

a. Because b. Because of c. As d. For

because, as, for+句子 : 不能加词组

answer : B

because the weather is hot...

5、How _____ did he sleep?

a. good b. well c. good d. nice

how 对形容词或者副词提问

He slept well.

how 本题中, 对程度副词提问

answer: B

the tree is tall

how tall is the tree

he sang songs beautifully

how beautifully did he sing

6、Where was the courtyard?

a. Down. b. Under. c. Below. d. Bottom.

Courtyard 院子

answer: C

down 在.....下(向下): go down, sit down

under prep. + 宾语

below adv 下面, 表示一种状态

bottom n

★7、He looked at the bits of wood and metal _____ around him.

a. laying b. laid c. lying d. lied

...that lay around him 定语从句

laying(lay) vt 放; lay the egg(下蛋)

lying(lie)vi lie in bed

laid(lay)vt

lie, lied, lied 撒谎

answer: C

过去分词属于非谓语动词, 做定语时与被修饰词形成被动关系

如把选择变为: "a. lay b. lain c. lying d. lied" 再仔细考虑!

8 A gust of wind swept the bed off the roof. The wind blew very _____.

a. hard b. fast c. quickly d. soon

a gust of wind 一阵风

hard 修饰动词, 表示程度大

study hard: 努力学习

9 The bed crashed into the courtyard. It _____ the courtyard.

a. smashed b. knocked c. struck d. exploded

crash vi (不及物)从上往下掉, 摔碎

smash vt (及物)敲击

knock v 敲击

explode v 爆炸

struck v 撞击

answer: C

11 He glanced at the bits of wood and metal. He _____ the bits of wood and metal.

a. looked quickly at b. had a glimpse of c. stared at d. watched

glance at(漫不经心的)扫视,(主动的看)

look quickly at 快速地看

had a glimpse of(无意识的)看

stare at 盯着看

watch 注视, 密切关注

answer: A

§ Lesson 50 Taken for a ride 乘车兜风

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★ride n 旅行

trip(出差性的)旅行

travel(周游世界性的)旅行

journey(陆地上的)旅行

flight(空中)旅行

voyage(海上)旅行

tour 游玩

sightseeing 观光游

ride v 骑(车, 马)

★excursion n 远足

excursion n 游玩, 郊游(距离不会很远)

weekend's excursion 周末游

Tomorrow we will have (a day's excursion 一日游)

★conductor n 售票员 (在火车上称为列车员)

★view n 景色

sight n 景色, 视线, 视野

in one's view=in one's opinion 就某人看来

view n 景色(主观性较强)

sight n 景色, 视线, 视野(强调客观)

Can I have a room with a good view?

【Text】

Lesson 50 Taken for a ride 乘车兜风

First listen and then answer the question.听录音, 然后回答以下问题.

Why did the writer not get off the bus at Woodford Green?

I love travelling in the country, but I don't like losing my way.

I went on an excursion recently, but my trip took me longer than I expected.

'I'm going to Woodford Green,' I said to the conductor as I got on the bus, 'but I don't know where it is.'

'I'll tell you where to get off,' answered the conductor.

I sat in the front of the bus to get a good view of the countryside.

After some time, the bus stopped. Looking round, I realized with a shock that I was the only passenger left on the bus.

'You'll have to get off here,' the conductor said. 'This is as far as we go.'

'Is this Woodford Green?' asked.

'Oh dear,' said the conductor suddenly. 'I forgot to put you off.'

'It doesn't matter,' I said. 'I'll get off here.'

'We're going back now,' said the conductor.

'Well, in that case, I prefer to stay on the bus,' I answered.

参考译文

我喜欢在乡间旅行，但却不愿意迷路。最近我作了一次短途旅行，但这次旅行所花费的时间比我预计的要长。

“我要去伍德福德草地，”我一上车就对售票员说，“但我不知道它在哪儿。”

“我来告诉您在哪儿下车，”售票员回答说。

我坐在汽车的前部，以便饱览农村风光。过了一些时候，车停了。我环视了一下身旁，惊奇地发现车里就只剩我一个乘客了。

“您得在这里下车，”售票员说，“我们的车就到此为止了。”

“这里是伍德福德草地吗？”我问道。

“哎呀，”售票员突然说，“我忘了让您下车了。”

“没关系，”我说，“我就在这儿下吧。”

“我们现在要返回去，”售票员说。

“好吧，既然如此，我还是留在车上吧。”我回答说。

【课文讲解】

love [lʌv] 注意[ʌ]的读音，如拼音中的 e 的音

love doing/like doing 强调一种习惯，喜欢做某事

I love my brother, but I don't like his girlfriend

I love having dinner with you, but I don't like paying for dinner

go on an excursion (固定短语)=have an excursion : go on 可译为“进行”

take 花费

take sb some time

Eg. : My trip took me a long time.

it 形式主语

It takes sb some time to do sth

It takes sb some time that...

It took me a month to learn book 2

Sb. spend some time doing sth

Eg. : I spent a month learning English

sb spend some time on sth

金钱上的花费 cost, pay for sth.

than I expected 【口语化】比我所预料的

The question is easier than I expected.

You are greater than I expected.

You are more beautiful than I expected.

You are better than I expected.

Than I thought 比我原以为的

The holiday took you longer than I expected.

The English class took me longer than I thought.

Where it is [weəɪtɪz] 注意单词的连读，音标以元音音标结尾，字母以“re”或“er”结尾的，会与下一个元音之间加“r”这个音。

get on the bus 上车

get off the bus 下车

I will tell you where you can(should) get off.

I will tell you where to get off

语法结构：特殊疑问词+to+动词原形 可用来取代宾语从句

How can I get there?

can you tell me how I can get there

can you tell me how to get there

can you tell me how I should do ?

can you tell me what to do?

I don't know which to choose.

I wonder when to have a meeting.

Can you tell me how to begin a letter?

【语法精粹】P23

1、Did you find out_____the pie out of oven?

a to take b have taken c when to take d being taken

find out 发现

pie 馅饼

oven 火炉

take sth out of 取出来

answer : c

Did you find out when we could(can)take the pie out of oven?

你发现什么时候才能把馅饼从烤箱中拿出来了么?

In the front of /in front of

The : 特指, 范围

in the front of 前者属于后者的范围

in front of 前者不属于后者的范围

The teacher stands in the front of the classroom.

The teacher stands in front of the students.

to : 表目的

get a good view of 欣赏.....的美景

I stood at the window to get a good view of the city.

after some time=after a time

looking round,

现在分词或过去分词做状语, 那么这个动作必然与主句主语相关

1、非谓语动词做状语, 这个动作必然与主句主语有关

—ing 与主句主语构成主动关系

—ed 与主句主语构成被动关系

to do 与主句主语构成目的关系

2、如果非谓语动词做定语, 只与被修饰词相关, 与主语无关

passing plain 路过的飞机

ploughed field 耕过的地

3、如果-ing/-ed 做宾补, 与宾语有关

I find the door locked (被动, 门被锁)

I realized with a shock that...

I do sth with an excitement

with+n 表示状态

that 引导宾语从句

left 放在被修饰词之后

on the bus / in the bus : 表示在火车上, 汽车上既可以用 “in” 又可用 “on”

as far as we go 我们能够走的一样远

This is as far as I can do.

as far as + 从句; 最大程度地, 最大限度地

as far as we go=we couldn't go any more

I can't bear(it any more).

It was more than I could bear.

This is as far as I bear.

This is as far as I can understand

This is as far as I can afford 我只能付这么多钱

Oh dear 哦, 天呐

forget to do 忘记去做某事

forget doing 忘记已经做了什么事

I forget to shut the door. 我忘了锁门

I forget shutting the door. 我忘了门已经锁了

put sb off

put off the meeting/put off the appointment 表示推迟, 延期

put sb off (off adv)=remind sb. to do 表示提醒

put sb off 推脱, 敷衍

My son always asks me to take him up, I always put him off.

We're going back now. 我们马上就要回去(将要的概念)

in that case 如果那样的话

in this case 如果这样的话

prefer to do sth 宁可做某事

prefer to do...rather than...宁可...也不...

【Composition】 作文

1 I went into the kitchen. I turned on the light. It was dark. (On going...because)

On going into the kitchen, I turned on the light because it was dark.

2 My brother shouted angrily. The lights went on. (when)

My brother shouted angrily when the lights went on.

3 I spoiled a film. He was developing it.(which)

【letter writing】书信写作

How to be begin a letter

写信如何开头

A Friends should be addressed by their first names: e.g. 'Dear Fred' . Never begin a letter with the words 'Dear Friend' .

给朋友写信要称呼他们的名字，如：“亲爱的弗雷德”，决不要以“亲爱的朋友”之类的词语开头。

B When writing to relations you may begin: Dear Mother, Dear Father, Dear Uncle Fred, Dear Aunt Alice, but never 'Dear Cousin', or 'Dear Cousin Fred' .

给亲戚写信，则可以这样开头：亲爱的妈妈，亲爱的爸爸，亲爱的弗雷德叔叔，亲爱的艾丽丝姨妈；但决不可称“亲爱的表兄”，或“亲爱的弗雷德表兄”。

如何给下列人写信：

你的祖母 Dear grandma 你的表姐 Dear Elizabeth

你的朋友杰克：Dear Jack 你的叔叔汤姆：Dear Uncle Tom

【Key structures】 关键句型

Here are some more verbs that tell us what always happens:

下面是表示习惯性动作的动词

belong to, consist of, contain, desire, detest, dislike, hate, hope, love, matter, mean, mind, need, want, wish

表示状态、感觉、情绪、精神活动的动词不可用于进行时

【Special Difficulties】 难点

a Lose, Loose, Miss.

Lose [lu:z] 丢失

Loose [lu:s] adj 松动的（注意读音的不同）

miss v 怀念，思念，错过

sth is lost/sth is missing

missing adj 不见了的

missing boy 失踪了的孩子(不能用“lost”)

servral screws have come loose.

come loose: 系动词+adj 松了

b expect, wait for

c My trip took me longer than I expected.(11.2-3)

Exercise 练习

Rewrite these sentences so that they begin with It takes or It took.

改写以下句子，用 It takes 或 It took 来开头。

1 I get to the office in an hour.

It takes me an hour to get to the office

2 I reached Tokyo in fifteen hours.

It took me fifteen hours to reach Tokyo.

3 He wrote the book in six months.

It took him six months to write the book.

Exercise 练习

Choose the correct words in these sentences:

选择正确的词：

1 Hurry up! You'll (lose) (miss) the bus.

2 That doorknob has come(lose)(loose). It will fall off soon.

3 Do you(expect)(wait for) him to change his mind?

4 If you bet on that horse you will (loose) (lose) your money.

5 He (waited) (expected) at the street corner for over half an hour before his girlfriend arrived.

1 miss 2 loose 3 expect 4 lose 5 waited vi (wait for)

bet on sth 就...打赌

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题

4 The trip took him longer than he expected. He didn't expect it to last _____.

a. longer b. as long c. so long d. such a long

last :延续 expect to do sth.

Answer: C

For a long time = long

I have waited for you for a long time = I have waited for you long.

5 'Where _____ get off?' I asked. 'I'll tell you where to get off,' answered the conductor.

a. to b. for c. shall I d. in order to

answer: C

但在日常口语中语法概念很弱,如 "what to do?" 也常常使用, 不符合语法, 但在写作时语法概念要很强.

7 This is as far as we go. We don't go _____.

a. any further b. more far c. further more d. so far

not any more , not any longer, not any further

answer : A

further more : 更进一步, 更有甚者的是

9 The writer got on the bus, but he didn't know where to _____.

a. get down b. get off c. get out of d. get over

answer: B

下某种交通工具, 一定要用 get off

get down: 如吃完饭后, 下桌子是会用 get down

After dinner, I got down. 我吃完饭后, 离开了桌子.

Get down 不会和下车相连

Get out of + 地方, 从... 地方出去

Get over: 恢复

12 I prefer to stay on the bus. That's _____.

a. my favourite b. my best c. beloved d. what I'd like to do best

I'd like to do 我愿意做某事

What I'd like to do best 我最想要做的事

I like sth best 我最喜欢的事

§ Lesson 51 Reward for Virtue 对美德的奖赏

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★reward n 报偿

give sb reward 给...报偿(n)

reward sb with sth 用...奖赏...

I write sth with a pen. (with 表示“用”)

reward sb for sth 因为...给某人奖赏

...reward him for the first prize

★virtue n 美德

strongpoints 长处, merit 优点

shortpoints 短处 weak points 弱点

★diet n 节食

go on a diet

be on a diet

★forbid [fə'bid] v 禁止

(pt. forbade [fə'bæd, -'beɪd] / pp. forbidden [fə'bidn])

forbid sb to do sth : 禁止某人做某事

allow sb to do 允许某人做某事

Forbidden City 紫禁城 (被禁止的城市)

Forbidden fruit 禁果

lost : 一个动词的过去分词可以作为形容词用

broken glass 被打破地玻璃

★hurriedly adj 匆忙地

★embarrass v 使尴尬

embarrassing : 令人尴尬地

embarrassed: 感到尴尬

sth embarrass sb

you embarrassed me 你让我感到尴尬

embarrassment

to my embarrassment 让我感到尴尬的

★guiltily adv 内疚地

guiltily conscience 问心有愧 (conscience ['kɒŋjəns] n. 良心, 道德心)

clear conscience 问心无愧

★strict adj 严格的

be strict with sb

my father is strict with me

be strict in sth

★reward v 给奖赏

★occasionally adv 偶尔地

on the occasion 偶尔

sometimes 偶尔

at times 偶尔

How often do you visit your parents

off and on 偶尔

now and again 偶尔

【Text】

Lesson 51 Reward for Virtue 对美德的奖赏

First listen and then answer the question.听录音, 然后回答以下问题.

Why did Hugh's diet not work?

My friend, Hugh, has always been fat, but things got so bad recently that he decided to go on a diet. He began his diet a week ago. First of all, he wrote out a long list of all the foods which were forbidden. The list included most of the things Hugh loves: butter, potatoes, rice, beer, milk, chocolate, and sweets. Yesterday I paid him a visit. I rang the bell and was not surprised to see that Hugh was still as fat as ever. He led me into his room and hurriedly hid a large parcel under his desk. It was obvious that he was very embarrassed. When I asked him what he was doing, he smiled guiltily and then put the parcel on the desk. He explained that his diet was so strict that he had to reward himself occasionally. Then he showed me the contents of the parcel. It contained five large bars of chocolate and three bags of sweets!

参考译文

我的朋友休一直很胖,但是近来情况变得越发糟糕,以致他决定节食。他是一星期前开始节食的。首先,他开列了一张长长的单子,上面列了所有禁吃的食物。这张单子上的大多数食物都是休喜欢吃的:黄油、土豆、米饭、啤酒、牛奶、巧克力和糖果。昨天我去看望了他。我按响了门铃。当看到休仍和往常一样胖时,我并不感到惊奇。他把我领进屋,慌忙把一个大包藏到了桌子下面。显然他感到很尴尬。当我问他正干什么时,他内疚地笑了,然后把那个大包拿到了桌上。他解释说,他的饮食控制得太严格了,以致不得不偶尔奖赏自己一下。接着他给我看了包里的东西。里面装了5大块巧克力和3袋糖果!

【课文讲解】

so.....that.....结果状语从句

First of all 首先,首要(许多事情中首要的,即最重要的)

at first 首先(句型: at first....., then.....: 起先.....然后.....)

write out 写出

included 在这里课文中不能用 contain

contain 一定是容器里面装

most of 大部分 fatten: 使某人长胖

pay sb a visit 拜访某人

pay a visit to sb./someplace: 拜访某人/某地.

call up sb./at someplace 拜访某人/某地

拜访某人但更习惯用 pay sb a visit 如: pay you a visit

have a visit=visit

as...as ever 像往常一样; 如: as clean as ever as quiet as ever

be surprised to do / be surprised at sth
lead sb into(进门) show sb out(出门) see sb off(送行)
obviously adv = it was obvious that.....(it 为形式主语)

【letter writing】书信写作

如果给一个不很熟悉的人写信，应按如下方式开头：亲爱的布朗先生
对对方熟悉，但是为了表示一种尊重，也可这么写。在姓名之后总要加上一个逗号。

Exercise 练习

How would you begin a letter to: your sister, your friend Bill, your employer, your old headmaster?

给下列人写信应如何开头：你的姐姐(Dear + 姐姐的名字)，你的朋友比尔(Dear Bill)，你的老板(Dear Mr./Mrs. + 某人)，你的老校长(Dear Mr./Mrs. + 姓)。

另：在不知道对方性别姓名时：如应聘信开头 Dear Sir/Madam,

【Special difficulties】难点

- 1、raise 及物动词 / rise：不及物动词，不能加宾语：它们的区别不在于意思，而在于词性
- 2、lay：及物动词 / lie 不及物动词：lay the egg / lie in bed
- 3、beat 后面接对手 win 不能接对手：I beat you.

Exercise 练习

Choose the correct verbs in the following sentences:

选择正确的动词：

- 1 Everybody(raised)(rose)when he entered the room.
 - 2 I have been(laying)(lying)here for half an hour.
 - 3 Mrs.Jones(laid)(lay)the table before breakfast.
 - 4.The aeroplane(raised)(rose)into the air.
 - 5 I'm not very good at chess. He always(wins)(beats) me.
 - 6 'Did you(win)(beat)or lose?' I asked.
- 1 rose 2 lying 3 laid / before breakfast. 不能用 "lay" 因为第三人称单数 4 rose 5 beats 有对手 6 win 后面没对手

【Summary writing】摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 65 words.

回答下列问题，将答案组成一个段落，不要超过 65 个单词。

- 1 Is Hugh fat or not? Has he gone on a diet or not? (so...that)
- 2 Has he forbidden himself all the foods he likes, or has he forbidden himself all the foods he does not like? Has he lost weight or not? (but)
- 3 What did he hide under his desk when the writer visited him yesterday?
- 4 Did the parcel contain chocolate and sweets, or did it contain biscuits?
- 5 Why did Hugh say that he had to reward himself occasionally? (because)

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题

- 4 How long ago _____ his diet?
a. will he begin b. has he begun c. was he beginning d. did he begin

4、answer：D 解题时要求读完句子

注意因为有 ago 的词，一定不用完成时，用一般过去时

11 He was very embarrassed. He felt _____.

a.shy b.shameful c.hot d.uncomfortable

11、felt 是 feel 的过去式

半联系动词：be 动词

注意以下三类词：

① 感官动词 feel, smell(闻起来：The food smells well.), sound(听起来：The idea sounds good.)

② get：变得, become,

③ lie

feel+adj

shy [ʃaɪ] adj.：害羞的(习惯性的, 在某一种情况下就会作出的反应)

shame [ʃeɪm] n：羞愧

shameful：令人羞愧的：It's shameful.(注意它没有“-ing”形式)

Ashamed [ə'ʃeɪmd] adj.：感到羞愧的：I am ashamed.

hot 热的, 恼火的

uncomfortable：不舒服的, 不放松的

comfortable: 一种自在, 轻松, 放松的概念

ill 生病：I feel ill.

Terrible 糟透了, 不舒服

§ Lesson 52 A pretty carpet 漂亮的地毯

【New words and expressions】生词和短语

★temporarily ['tempərərɪli] adv 暂时地

★inch [ɪntʃ] n 英寸(度量单位)

foot 英尺(pl. feet); mile 英里

★space [speɪs] n 空间

注意读音浊化, 六个爆破音中有三个清辅音 [p t k] 在 [s] 后面是要浊化为对应的三个浊辅音 [b d g] 又如 school [sku:l]

★actually ['æktʃuəli] adv 实际上

=in fact

【Text】

Lesson 52 A pretty carpet 漂亮的地毯

First listen and then answer the question.听录音, 然后回答以下问题.

What is the writer's carpet made of?

We have just moved into a new house and I have been working hard all morning. I have been trying to get my new room in order. This has not been easy because I own over a thousand books. To make matters worse, the room is rather small, so I have temporarily put my books on the floor. At the moment, they cover every inch of floor space and I actually have to walk on them to get in or out of the room. A short while ago, my sister helped me to carry one of my old bookcases up the

stairs. She went into my room and got a big surprise when she saw all those books on the floor.
'This is the prettiest carpet I have ever seen,' she said. She gazed at it for some time then added,
'You don't need bookcases at all. You can sit here in your spare time and read the carpet!'

参考译文

我们刚刚搬进一所新房子，我辛辛苦苦地干了整整一个上午。我试图把我的新房间收拾整齐，但这并不容易，因为我有1,000多本书。更糟糕的是房间还非常小，所以我暂时把书放在了地板上。这会儿，书把地板的每一点空隙都占据了，我实际上是踩着这些书进出房间的。几分钟前，我妹妹帮我把一个旧书橱抬上了楼。她走进我的房间，当她看到地板上的那些书时，大吃一惊。“这是我见过的最漂亮的地毯，”她说。她盯着“地毯”看了一会儿，又说：“你根本用不着书橱，空闲时你可以坐在这儿读地毯！”

【课文讲解】

有 **just** 就是完成时

现在完成进行时—动作有延续

现在完成时：1、在漫长地时间段，过去发生的，还一定要对现在产生影响

2、在过去发生的动作，一直延续到现在

体会区别：It has rained for half day./It has been raining.

I have been working hard all morning(还在继续)

get my new room in order

in order：有秩序，有次序

get sth in order 使...有秩序(get 使役动词)

to make matters worse—插入语，放在句子的开头，“更糟糕的是”

rather 相当的

at the moment：(=now)现在

every inch：每一英寸(夸张)

It is worth every penny of it.(一册)

Eg: Gold covered every inch of the ground in America.

help sb (to) do sth：帮某人做某事(to 可省略)

① help sb to do sth ② help sb do sth ③ help sb. with sth.

He help me to learn english

He help me with my english

with your help：在你的帮助下

with your help i made great progress

I have ever seen：做定语从句出现，是最高级的标志

gazed at：对...向往，羡慕

not at all 起强调作用

现在完成时，动词一定是延续性动词

【Summary writing】摘要写作

2、This has proved difficult because he own over a hundred books which covered every inch of floor space at the moment. (双重复合句)

【Composition】作文

1、when 2、not only....but.....as well (会放在 there be 后面) 3、since: 因为，由于(=because)

【Key structures】关键句型

现在完成时 **have done**

现在完成进行时 **have been doing**

I have read the book 书已看完

I have been reading the book 还没看完，还要继续

I have read 'Oliver Twist' five times.

与段时间连用可以用现在完成时，也可以用现在完成进行时，但跟次数连用的，一定只能用完成时，不能用现在完成进行时

He has rung me up five times since 12 o'clock.

【语法精髓】P9 用所给动词正确时态填空

1、You should go to bed.you _____ (watch) TV for 5 hours.

2、I _____ (write) letters since breakfast.

3、I _____ (write) 3 letters since breakfast.

4、Sorry, but Mr.Smith _____ (leave) for Beijing.

5、I _____ (look) for him everywhere, where can he be?

1、have been watching/have watched

2、having been writing

3、have written

4、has left

leave 是瞬间动词

1、和现在完成进行时连用的，一定不能是次数

2、和现在完成进行时连用的动词，一定不能是短暂动词

5、have been looking 通过 “where can he be?” 这句话可知人没找到，还要继续找

【Special Difficulties】 难点

1、现在完成进行时

have been doing

强调动作有可能继续发生

不能是短暂动词，次数不能连用

2、形容词—做表语，定语

副词—修饰动词(walk quickly)，形容词(very beautiful)，副词词性本身(very much)，还可以修饰句子

大多数形容词加 “ly” 变为副词：如 beautiful—beautifully

但是：不是所有的形容词都可以加 ly(asleep)

不是所有的副词都一定以 ly 结尾(late)

不是所有的加 ly 的都是副词(lovely)

有些词加了 ly 后，反而意思会改变

有些词的形容词和副词同形

late(adj, adv)迟

lately：近来(=recently)

hard 努力地(表示程度深)，困难地(=difficult)

hardly 几乎不

high：(adj)高的 high(adv)=高度地

highly：高度地 (不能用尺度测量的，抽象的)

deep：深的(adj)(adv)

deeply：深度地 (不能用尺度测量的，抽象的)

near(adj adv)：在旁边的

nearly：几乎，将近

Exercise 练习 选择正确的词：

- 1 She dusted the furniture very(careful)(carefully).
- 2 I hit him very(hardly) (hard) .
- 3 This exercise is not(hard)(hardly).
- 4 I got home from work very(latently)(late)last night.
- 5 I(near)(nearly)missed the bus the this morning.
- 6 He ran so(fastly)(fast)no one could keep up with him.
- 7 I can't jump so(highly)(high).

1 carefully 2 hard 3 hard 4 late 5 nearly 6 fast 7 high

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题

- 3 He has been working all morning and he _____hard.
a.still works b.has still worked c. is still working d.still worked

answer : C

现在还在继续

a. still works 一般现在时是一种习惯

- 4 He's been trying to get his room in order. He wants to _____.
a.make it tidy b. keep it tidy c. made order d. keep order

answer: A

keep order : 保持秩序

动词+宾语+形容词(做宾补)

此类动词常见的有 : get, keep, make, find (其中 get make 是使役动词)

- 7 The writer _____bookcases.

a.needn't b.needs not c. doesn't need d.isn't needing

answer : C

a.needn't :情态动词后面不能加动词

b.need not :实义动词后面不能加 not

d.isn't needing : need 不用进行时态

- 10 He actually has to walk on them. He can't do _____.
a.else b.different c.otherwise d.other

answer: C

else 一定放在不定代词和疑问代词后面 anything else,anybody else,who else,what else 等

different——形容词, 动词后应加副词或名词做宾语, 而不是形容词

other——形容词

the other——代词

otherwise ① conj.连词, “否则, 不然”, Eg: hurry up,otherwise you will miss train.

② adj 形容词 另外的, 其他方面的

③ adv 副词 另外, 否则, 不同地, 别的方式 (=differently)

- 12 You can sit here in your spare time. You can sit here when you're _____.
a.working b.studying c.not working d.reading

answer: D

spare time = not work

- c. 在考试时没上下文是答案为 : c
d. 在本课文中应为 : d

§ Lesson 53 Hot snake 触电的蛇

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★hot adj 带电的, 充电的

hot 热的, hot-hot-hot : 麻辣烫

hot-wings : 辣鸡翅

hot-tempered : 火爆(脾气)的 temper['tempə] n 脾气 v. (冶金)回火、锻炼, 调和, 调节

hot line : 热线

hot topic : 热门话题

hot cake : 热蛋糕

hot dog : 热狗

It sells like a hot cake/cakes 表示一个东西的畅销, 热销

hot 新鲜的

best seller : 畅销的东西

hot potato 棘手的问题

hot news 最热点的新闻

hot snake 触电的蛇

★fireman n 消防队员

hydrant ['haɪdrənt] n.消防栓, 消防龙头

fire extinguisher : 灭火器 extinguisher [ɪk'stɪŋgwɪʃə(r)] n.熄灭者, 灭火器

extinguish=put out : 灭火

★cause v; n 引起; 原因

cause sth : 引起麻烦

Carelessness causes accidents. 粗心导致事故

Pride causes failure 骄傲使人失败 failure ['feɪljə]

cause sb to do sth : 引起某人做某事, 导致某人做某事

Illness caused him to lose his temper (lose his temper 发火)

because : 因为 be cause

reason : 理由, cause : 原因

cause : 强调事情发生的直接原因(一个)

reason : 其他各种的理由(很多个)

★examine v 检查

examine the soil

check : 核实, 核对

★accidentally adv 意外地, 偶然地 (但更趋向于“偶然”的意思)

accident—》accidental—》accidentally

accident : 事故

unexpectedly : 出乎意料地(更趋向于“意外”的意思)

★remains n 尸体, 残骸

remains 指 dead body

★wire n 电线

★volt n 伏特

★power line 电力线

★solve v 解决

solve the mystery

solve the problem

★mystery n 谜

mystery(无法接受地, 解释不了的)

★snatch v 抓住

catch : 如抓鱼

hold : 握着

snatch : (突然抓起来)强调动作的突然性

seize : 抓住(用力)seize my arm

★spark n 火花, 并不一定电火花

【Text】

Lesson 53 Hot snake 触电的蛇

First listen and then answer the question. 听录音, 然后回答以下问题.

What caused the fire?

At last firemen have put out a big forest fire in California. Since then, they have been trying to find out how the fire began. Forest fires are often caused by broken glass or by cigarette ends which people carelessly throw away. Yesterday the firemen examined the ground carefully, but were not able to find any broken glass. They were also quite sure that a cigarette end did not start the fire. This morning, however, a firemen accidentally discovered the cause. He noticed the remains of a snake which was wound round the electric wires of a 16, 000-volt power line. In this way, he was able to solve the mystery. The explanation was simple but very unusual. A bird had snatched up the snake from the ground and then dropped it on to the wires. The snake then wound itself round the wires. When it did so, it sent sparks down to the ground and these immediately started a fire.

参考译文

消防队员们终于扑灭了加利福尼亚的一场森林大火。从那时起, 他们一直试图找出起火的原因。森林火灾时常由破碎的玻璃或人们随手扔掉的香烟头引起。昨天, 消防队员仔细查看了地面, 但未能发现碎玻璃。他们还十分肯定火灾也不是由烟头引起的。然而今天上午, 一个消防队员偶然发现了起火的原因。他发现了缠绕在 16, 000 伏高压线上的一条死蛇。就这样, 他解开了起火之谜。解释很简单, 却异乎寻常。一只鸟把蛇从地上抓起来, 然后把它扔到了电线上。于是蛇就缠住了几根电线。当它这样做时, 把火花送到了地面, 这些火花立刻引起了一场大火。

【课文讲解】

put out a fire 扑灭火

a fire 一场(堆)火

since then 从那时起到现在为止

have been trying to

现在完成时强调的是很有可能进行下去，但并不是强调必然要进行下去

broken glass 被打碎的玻璃片

cigarette ends 烟头

be able to 能够 / be not able to 没有能够

be sure that : 对...很有把握

quite sure : 相当的把握性

rather : 相当

fairly ['fɛəli] adv.相当, 公正地, 诚实地

quite(=completely) — 》 rather — 》 fairly

程度一个比一个轻

quite a few 颇有几个(相当多的)

start a fire=cause a fire

accidentally(by chance) : 偶然地

unexpectedly : 出乎别人意料之外

cause : 直接原因

notice : 注意别人没注意的东西

wind one's way : 蜿蜒而行

wind [waɪnd] vt 盘旋, 缠绕

16,000-volt power line : 连字符 : "-" 一旦加在两个词之间, 这个词之间就失去了加复数的资格, 能够加连字符的概念一定是做定语

in this way : 以这种方式

explanation : 解释

had done : 先发生的事

drop : 无意掉下去的

do so : 这么做

i refuse to do so 我拒绝这么做

send+宾补

down to the ground : 介词短语作宾补

these 指的是 sparks

hot snake : 触电的蛇

get a shake

get a electric shock 触电

now that 既然

【Special Difficulties】 难点

quite /quiet

quiet adj 安静的

quite adv 相当地, 非常地, 很

cause/reason

reason : 理由, cause : 原因(直接)

cause v

1、cause sth : 导致, 引起

2、cause sb to do sth : 导致某人做某事

reason v

reason with sb : 劝说(以道理)

beg for sth : 乞求什么东西

drop/fall

drop vt + 宾语(名词或代词), 强调的是不小心掉下来

fall vi 物宾语, 强调的是掉下来的概念, 动作

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题

6 He was able to solve the mystery. He _____.

a.could if he wanted to b.could but he didn't want to

c.succeeded in solving it d. didn't succeed in solving it

6、key phrase : be able to=can, succeed in doing

11 In this way he was able to solve the mystery. _____he did it.

a.That's so b.Like this c.That's how d. So

11、in this way 以这种方式 = that's how

like 在英文中不表示方式, 只表示两者的东西很象

【Summary writing】摘要写作

1 Have firemen put out a big forest fire in California or not? Have they been trying to discover its cause?(Now that ...)

2 Was there any evidence that it was started by broken glass or by a cigarette end or not?

3 Who has just solved the mystery?(However)

4 What did he notice? Had it been dropped by a bird on to the electric wires or not?(which)

5 Where did the snake wind itself? What had it sent to the ground? Did this cause the fire or not?(In winding... and)

1 now that 既然

Now that fireman have put out a big forest fire in California ,they have been trying to discover its cause.

2 evidence n 证据

区分同位语从句与定语从句地区别 :

如果 that 做了主语或者宾语, 是定语从句

如果 that 既不作主语也不作宾语, 是同位语从句

fact , evidence 的后面往往是加同为语从句

5 (in) winding itself around the wires the snake had sent sparks to the ground and it caused the fire.

介词 "in" "on" 放在动词 "-ing" 前面的理解方式和没有 "in" "on" 的理解方式一样

§ Lesson 54 sticky fingers 粘糊的手指

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★sticky adj 粘的

as sticky as glue 和胶水一样粘

★finger n 手指

thumb 大拇指

index finger 食指 (index ['indeks] n vi vt)

middle finger 中指

ring finger 无名指

little finger 小指

toe [təu] 脚趾

★pie n 馅饼

★mix v 混合, 拌和

mixture n 混合物

★pastry n 面糊

★annoying adj 恼人的

It is annoying

annoyed 感到烦恼的

比 anger 的语气弱 ['æŋgə] n v

★receiver n 电话的话筒

★dismay v 失望, 泄气

dismay sb 让某人感到失望

dismaying 令人失望

dismayed 感到失望

★recognize v 认出, 听出

★persuade v 说服, 劝说

reason with sb 劝说; 并不能说明是否劝说成功

try to persuade 劝说; persuade 表示劝说已经成功

★mess n 乱七八糟

what a mess!

you are a mess! 你真邋遢

the man/woman is a mess

make a mess of sth 把...搅得乱七八糟

he made a mess of my job 他把我的工作搅得一团糟

★doorknob n 门把手

★sign v 签字

sign your name(s) here 在这签名 (许多人加 "s")

signature ['signitʃə] 签名

I need your signature 我需要你的签名

autograph ['ɔ:təgrɑ:f] 明星, 名人的签名 (n 亲笔签名 v 签署)

registered letter 挂号信

sign for 签收

★register v 挂号邮寄

【Text】

Lesson 54 sticky fingers 粘糊的手指

First listen and then answer the question. 听录音, 然后回答以下问题.

What two interruptions did the writer have?

After breakfast, I sent the children to school and then I went to the shops. It was still early when I returned home. The children were at school, my husband was at work and the house was quiet. So I decided to make some meat pies. In a short time I was busy mixing butter and flour and my hands were soon covered with sticky pastry. At exactly that moment, the telephone rang. Nothing could have been more annoying. I picked up the receiver between two sticky fingers and was dismayed when I recognized the voice of Helen Bates. It took me ten minutes to persuade her to ring back later. At last I hung up the receiver. What a mess! There was pastry on my fingers, on the telephone, and on the doorknobs. I had no sooner got back to the kitchen than the doorbell rang loud enough to wake the dead. This time it was the postman and he wanted me to sign for a registered letter!

参考译文

早饭后, 我送孩子们上学, 然后就去了商店. 我回到家时, 时间还早. 孩子们在上学, 我丈夫在上班, 家里清静得很. 于是我决定做些肉馅饼. 不一会儿我就忙着调拌起了黄油和面粉, 很快我的手上就沾满了粘粘的面糊. 恰恰在此时, 电话铃响了. 没有什么能比这更烦人了. 我用两个沾满面糊的手指捏起了话筒. 当我听出是海伦·贝茨的声音时, 非常丧气. 我用了 10 分钟的时间才说服她过会儿再来电话. 我终于挂上了话筒. 真是糟糕透了! 我的手指上、电话机上以及门的把手上, 都沾上了面糊. 我刚回到厨房, 门铃又响了起来, 响声足以把死人唤醒. 这次是邮递员, 他要我签收一封挂号信!

【课文讲解】

after breakfast 在吃过早饭后

I send the children to school 送孩子上学

at school 在上学

at work 在上班

at home 在家休息

be busy doing 忙于做某事

flour 面粉, 不可数名词, 注意发音与 “flower ['flaʊə]” 相同, 但 “flower” 是可数名词, 一般会用复数 “flowers”

be covered with 盖满

at exactly that moment 就在那里

no one could be/have been 没有人...

no one could be /have been fatter 没有人更胖了

nothing could have been cheaper 没有什么东西更便宜了

no face could be uglier 没有一张脸更丑了 (ugly ['ʌgli])

no books could be more interesting 没有书更有趣了

nothing could have been more exciting 没有什么事情更令人激动

pick up the receiver 捡起话筒

persuade sb to do sth 说服某人做某事

it takes sb some time to do sth 花费某人多久做某事, "it" 作形式主语

ring back : 1、回电话, 2、再打电话

hang up 挂起

hang up the receiver 挂断电话

no sooner...than... / hardly...when...

★enough n adj adv 足够的

1、n. I have/had had enough. 我已经拥有足够了

2、adj ① enough+n, ② n+enough 修饰名词

I have enough time/time enough.

enough 修饰名词放在被修饰词的前面或后面

3、adv 不修饰动词只修饰 adj 或者 adv

enough 修饰 adj 或者 adv 时一定要放在被修饰词的后面;

enough to do sth 足以用来做某事

he is rich enough to buy the whole city 他富有的可以买下整个城市

I am hungry enough to eat sth

在 dead, young, old 前面可以直接加 the

the+adj 表示...一类人

the rich 富人 the young 年轻人 the blind 瞎子 the deaf 聋子

the English 英国人 Englishman, Englishwoman

重点 :

词 (annoyin; dismay; persuade; mess; sign)

句型 (1 Nothing could have been more annoying. 2 loud enough to wake the dead.)

【letter writing】书信写作

pleased to do 非常高兴的

在信的第一段里, 你应该提及你已经收到的一封信或促使你回信的某一事件

如 : I was very pleased to learn that you are well.

I was very pleased to learn that you have a baby. 恭喜你做爸爸了

Thank you for +n

【Key structures】关键句型

the + adj : 表示一类人

the most : 最

most : 非常

most of the : 大部分的

most of the young people : 大部分年轻人

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题

5 Nothing could have been more annoying. It was _____ annoying thing that could have happened.

a.the more b.more c.most d. the most

5、nothing + be more annoying 表达最高级含义

answer: D

7 She had hardly got back to the kitchen _____the doorbell rang.

a.when b.than c.as d. as soon as

hardly....when.....

no sooner.....than.....

8 She was busy mixing butter and flour. She was _____.

a.joining them b.uniting them c. unifying them d. putting them together

United States (政治上的联合)

Unify 与 unite 的用法基本相同, 指的是政治上的联合

join 的两种用法

1、join the army/join the party

2、join us!(口语常用, 注意连读)

answer: D

10 She was dismayed when she heard Helen Bates. She felt _____.

a.pity b.sorry c.ill d.tired

tired 单独用表示: 很累

只有“tired of”表示: 厌烦

pity 为名词, sorry 为 adj

answer: B

fell 为感官动词

【Composition】 作文

用括号中的连词改写以下句子:

1 I put the cake in the oven. I forgot all about it. (After putting)

2 Two hours had passed.I smelled something burning.(When)

3 I went into the kitchen.I found it full of smoke.(On going)

1 After putting the cake in the oven, I forgot all about it.

2(time)passed, and then.....

.....(time)passed, before.....

Two hours had passed when I smelled something burning.

一般不会把“when”放在“.....(time)passed.....”之前, 这是一种习惯

something burning: burning 放在不定代词后面, “-ing”表主动关系, 即表示东西正在燃烧.

3 On going into the kitchen, I found it full of smoke.

【Summary writing】 摘要写作

1 Did the writer return home from the shops or not?What did she begin to make?(As soon as)

2 Did the telephone ring soon afterwards or not? Were her fingers very sticky or not?(When)

3 How long did she spend talking to Helen Bates on the telephone?

4 Did she look at the mess she had made or not?(After that)

5 What was covered with pastry?

6 Who rang the doorbell?(Just then)

7 What did he want her to do?

1 as soon as: 时间状语从句引导词

as soon as = when

as soon as 强调这个动作一发生, 立即就发生了另一个动作

when 不强调两个动作紧密相连

4 after 作介词, 后接名词或代词作宾语
作连词, 后接句子

文中 “that” 为代词, “after that” 仅为介词短语

补充 P237 lesson 50 summary writing

1 Where did the writer want to go? Did he know the way or not? What did the conductor promise to do? (but as)

1 “but as” 并不是并列短语, 两者连在一起仅仅是巧合

The writer wanted to go to Woodfast Green but as he did not know the way, the conductor promised to tell him where to get off.

第一句和第二句之间是 “but” 关系, 第二句和第三句之间为 “as” 关系, 所以产生 “but as”

§ Lesson 55 Nota gold mine 并非金矿

【New words and expressions】生词和短语

★gold n 金子

gold [gəʊld] n /golden ['gəʊldən] adj

sth be made of gold 由金子做成的

gold watch; gold ring

golden sun 金色的太阳

Silence is golden 沉默是金 (silence ['saɪləns] n. 静, 寂静, 沉默, 静默 vt. 使沉默, 使安静 v. 压制)

golden : 金色的, 宝贵的

golden opportunity 宝贵的机会 (opportunity [ˌɒpə'tju:niti] n. 机会, 时机)

golden sentence 黄金句型

I am honoured to have the opportunity to do sth.

I am glad to have the golden opportunity to do sth.

I am glad to have the golden opportunity to stay with you.

【Special difficulties】Exercise B

用 gold 或 golden 填空 :

1 All that glitters is not _____.

glitter ['glɪtə] vi. 闪闪发光, 闪烁, 闪光 n. 闪光

all.....is not.....不是所有的

All that glitters is not gold.

部分否定 not all

2 Silence is _____.

Silence is golden.

goldfish n 金鱼 (众口铄金)

platinum ['plætɪnəm] n. 白金, 铂

★mine n 矿

★treasure n 财宝 (为总称, 没有复数)

'treasure island' 《金银岛》

jewel ['dʒu:əl] n 宝石 珠宝, (可数)

jewelry ['dʒu:əlri] n. 珠宝, 珠宝类 珠宝(总称, 不可数)

I have some jewels./I have some jewelry.

people/police/cattle (总称)

diamond 钻石

jade [dʒeɪd] 碧玉 (不可数名词)

jade palace: 翠宫饭店

★revealer n 探测器

reveal 揭示

★invent v 发明

invention n

★detect v 探测

detective n

★bury v 埋藏

★cave n 山洞

★seashore n 海岸

★pirate n 海盗

pirate ['paɪərɪt] n. 海盗, 盗印者, 盗版者, 侵犯专利权者 vt. 盗印, 盗版, 掠夺, 翻印 vi. 做海盗

★arm v 武装

army n 军队

hold one's arm

Farewell! Arms 永别了, 武器

farewell ['fæə'wel] n. 辞别, 再见, 再会 int. 再会, 别了! (常含有永别或不容易再见面的意思)

Soldiers should be armed well 士兵应该要很好的武装

the youth should be armed with knowledge. 年轻人应该用知识武装自己

youth [ju:θ] n. 青春, 青年时期, 初期, 少年, 青年们

be covered with

the teacher should be patient. (patient ['peɪjənt] n. 病人, 患者 adj. 忍耐的, 耐心的)

the teacher should be armed with patience.

★soil n 泥土

earth 泥土 (泥巴)

soil 土壤 (能生长植物的地方)

★entrance n 入口

exit ['eksit, -zit] n.出口, 太平门, 退场, 去世 vi.退出, 脱离, 去世

entrance of/entrance to

entrance of the park / entrance to the park

★finally adv 最后

★worthless adj 毫无价值的

★thoroughly adv 彻底地

completely/thoroughly/totally

★trunk n 行李箱

★confident n 有信心的

confidence n

be confident of doing sth

be confident that

★value n 价值

【Text】

Lesson 55 Not a gold mine 并非金矿

First listen and then answer the question.听录音, 然后回答以下问题.

What did the team find?

Dreams of finding lost treasure almost came true recently. A new machine called 'The Revealer' has been invented and it has been used to detect gold which has been buried in the ground. The machine was used in a cave near the seashore where----it is said----pirates used to hide gold. The pirates would often bury gold in the cave and then fail to collect it. Armed with the new machine, a search party went into the cave hoping to find buried treasure. The leader of the party was examining the soil near the entrance to the cave when the machine showed that there was gold under the ground. Very excited, the party dug a hole two feet deep. They finally found a small gold coin which was almost worthless. The party then searched the whole cave thoroughly but did not find anything except an empty tin trunk. In spite of this, many people are confident that 'The Revealer' may reveal something of value fairly soon.

参考译文

最近, 找到失踪宝藏的梦想差一点儿变成现实. 一种叫“探宝器”的新机器已经发明出来, 并被人们用来探测地下埋藏的金子. 在靠近海边的一个据说过去海盗常在里面藏金子的岩洞里, 这种机器被派上了用场. 海盗们过去常把金子埋藏在那个洞里, 可后来却没能取走. 一支用这种新机器装备起来的探宝队进入了这个岩洞, 希望找到埋藏着的金子. 当这个队的队长正在检查洞口附近的土壤时, 那台机器显示出它的下面埋有金子. 队员们异常激动, 就地挖了一个两英尺深的坑, 但最后找到的是一枚几乎一钱不值的小金币. 队员们接着又把整个洞彻底搜寻了一遍, 但除了一只空铁皮箱外什么也没找到. 尽管如此, 很多人仍然相信“探宝器”很快就会探出值钱的东西来.

【课文讲解】

dreams come true 梦想成真

dreams ended 梦想破灭了, 梦断了

dream of

dream of doing sth

I dream of flying in the sky. (dream v)

dream of flying in the sky comes true. (dream n)

一句话中只有一个动词，如果再出现动词，可以用 **and** 并列连接，也可以变成复合句，用 **when, because** 连接，还可以使这个动词表示动词意思，但不做谓语，即非谓语动词

过去分词做定语，表示“被”

ploughed field (plough [plau] n.犁 v.耕，犁，犁耕，费力穿过，艰苦前进，在考试中淘汰)

n+called

the plane called a “Pilatus Porter”

如果用短语修饰其他词，则把短语放在被修饰词的后边

be used to do 被用来

used to do

同位语从句中的引导词只要一个 **that**

in the ground (更习惯于用 “under the ground”)

it is said 是插入语 “据说”

used to 过去常常

where 修饰 cave；一个地点状语从句

where: in which 翻译时译为 “在那儿”

This is the river where I swim.

would 一般表示从过去看将来，但此处表示 “used to” 过去常做

【Key structures】关键句型

当我们提到过去某一特定时间时，我们有时可用 **would** 来代替 **used to**。但是，我们不能在下面这个句子中使用 **would**: **This sort of novel used to be very popular.** 这种小说过去很流行。

be armed with they were armed with.....

went into the cave they went into the cave.

hoping to find they hoped to find.....

如果几个句子的主语是同一事物，则可以把几个句子合并为一个句子

在把握中心句子的前提下，注意其他成分的合成。如果是主动关系，用 **ing** 形式

保留一个句子做主句，其他的变成非谓语动词

非谓语动词采用何种形式，则根据其与主语的关系，如果是主动关系，用 **ing**，被动关系，则用动词的 **ed** 形式

主句与其他句子的位置安排要保持句子的平衡，还要注意动作的连贯

the boy went home. the boy was crying. the boy was beaten

beaten by sb, the boy went home, crying.

armed with / hoping to find

entrance to / of :的入口

under the ground

Tired, I went home. / I went home tired. 句子顺序不同，表达的意思也不同

Very exciting, 形容词短语做状语

如：Tired of sleeping on the floor, (见 lesson 49)

two feet deep 数词+量词+形容词

long/wide/high/deep

人有多高用 “tall”

I am five years old.

数词+量词+形容词结构可以做定语; 也可以做表语

the street is wide.

the street is five meters wide.

文中 “a small gold coin” 没说成 “a gold small coin”

离名词最近的形容词是最被强调的

in spite of 尽管/ though / even if

something of value (这里 value n)

of 加名词往往让人联想这名词对应的形容词

of value=valuable 有价值的

of small value 价值很小(= almost worthless)

形容词要放在不定代词的后边

something important

something of importance

someone patient

someone of patience

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题

3 ‘The Revealer’ has been used for _____gold.

a.to detect b.detecting c.detect d.detected

3、介词后面要加 v+ing 形式

被用来做某事, 有两种表达方式

如果跟名词相连说 be used for

如果跟动词相连说 be used to do+v be used for +v+ing

4 Pirates used to hide gold there, _____.

a. and they always do

b.and they still do

c. and they still do sometimes

d.that's what they would do

That's what : 那就是....事

题目 “Pirates used to hide gold there,” 应该用句号, 而不应该用逗号

两个句子中间必须加 “and ,but” 等连词, 或是用句号隔开

1、一句话当中只有一个主语, 一个动词, 叫简单句

2、出现两个以上的动词要用连词连接

两个句子可以是主从句

可以把一个动词用为动词, 而把其他的动词改装为非谓语动词

7 How _____was the hole?

a.deeply b.depth c.deep d.down

answer:C

deeply adv

depth n

deep adj adv

down adv

用什么词看它的陈述句用什么词

8 ‘The Revealer’ is a very good _____.

a.machine b.engine c.machinery d.mechanic

machine [mə'ʃi:n] n. 机器 可数名词

engine ['endʒɪn] n. 发动机

machinery əmə'ʃi:nəri] n.[总称] 机器, 机械 机器(总称, 一般后边不会加 s, 前面也不加 a)

mechanic [mi'kænik] n. 技工, 机修工, 机械士

revealer 探测器

answer: a

10 The coin was almost worthless. So it was of small _____.

a.worthy b.honour c.price d.value

of value = valuable

of small value=worthless 不值钱的

of great value 非常值钱的

介词短语修饰名词时放在其后面

【Summary writing】 摘要写作

回答下列问题, 将答案组成一个段落, 不要超过 65 个单词.

1 Is 'The Revealer' a new machine or an old machine? Is it used for detecting buried gold or not?(which)

2 Did a search party use this machine or not? Where did they try to find gold recently?(Using this machine...)

3 Did they examine the cave thoroughly or not? Did they only find a small gold coin? Was it valuable or was it practically worthless?(Although...which)

4 Do many people believe that the machine may reveal something of value soon or not?(However)

1、 machine 作为先行词, it 指代 machine, 会被 which 所取代

2、 using this machine, a search party tried to find the gold in cave near the seashore.

3、 Although 会引导让步状语从句, which 会引导一个定于从句

Although they examined the cave thoroughly, they only found a small gold coin which was practically worthless.

4、 however 放在句首句中都可以, 要用逗号隔开

§ Lesson 56 Faster than sound! 比声音还快!

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★sound n 声音

sound v 听起来

adj 合理的 等于 reasonable ['ri:znəbl] adj. 合理的, 有道理的, 通情达理的, 讲道理的

I have a piece of sound advice. 我有一个合理的建议

Soundly adj 香甜的: sleep soundly

任何声音都可以说: sound n

voice n 人的声音

noise n 和周围不和谐的声音, 噪音

★excitement n 激动, 兴奋

to one's excitement : 令某人激动的是

the most exciting thing is that : 最令人激动的是

the most surprising thing about it is that : 最令人惊讶的事情是

it excited me that : 让我激动的是

★handsome adj 漂亮的, 美观的

you look beautiful

一般形容人, 形容人的时候表示内在和外在美的统一, 完美的概念

She is pretty.

flowers are beautiful

picture is beautiful

pretty 美丽(用于女孩或小孩), 有柔美的意思

pretty boy / pretty girl / pretty woman

nice (天气, 食物, 物品的品质等)

you are nice. 你长得不错

lovely 可爱的

This is a lovely story. 这是一个可爱的故事

lovely girl

good-looking 很好看的

smart 小巧而美丽的(物)或时髦而美丽的(人) : she is smart.

cute [kju:t] adj. 漂亮, 常用来形容小孩

the baby is cute

What a cute baby! 多漂亮的宝宝啊!

How cute you are! 你多漂亮啊!(可爱啊!)

handsome ['hænsəm] adj. 形容男孩, 英俊, 一般与男孩子连用 : handsome boy.

handsome 与人连用有阳刚的美, 与物相连表示美观大方, 并表示制作精良.

Your husband is handsome. / Your wife is pretty.

pretty 跟男性连用就表示没有阳刚气, 女性化

handsome 跟女性连用的时候就表示这个女孩子有阳刚气, 类似女侠的概念

★Rolls-Royce 罗莱斯-罗伊斯

★Benz n 奔驰

★wheel n 轮子

★explosion n 爆炸, 轰响

explode [iks'pləud] vt. 使爆炸 vi. 爆炸, 爆发, 破除, 推翻, 激发

如 : decision n / decide v

explosive [iks'pləusiv] n. 爆炸物, 炸药 adj. 爆炸(性)的, 爆发(性)的, 暴露

bomb [bɒm] n. 炸弹 vt. 投弹于, 轰炸

the bomb exploded.

★course n 跑道, 行程

on the course 按照轨道运行

off course 偏离轨道

of course 当然

course n 课程

This term, I took/take seven courses 这学期我学了七门课

★rival n 对手

competition n 竞争, 竞赛

competitor [kəm'petitə] n. the person who takes part in the competition 竞争者, 对手

opposite ['ɒpəzɪt] n. 相反的事物 adj. 相对的, 对面的, 对立的, 相反的, 对等的, 对应的

opponent [ə'pəʊnənt] n. 对手, 反对者(持反对意见的人, 如辩论赛上的和政治上的) adj

enemy 敌人

rival adj 势均力敌的 n 势均力敌的对手 v

★speed v 疾驶

speed sped sped

speed 速度

at the speed of 以...的速度

the car goes at the speed of 40 miles an hour / at 40 miles an hour.

在车后的 3 speed/4 speed 表示档位

blow up 风力的增加

speed up 速度的增加, 加速

slow down 减速

★downhill adv 下坡

downstairs 下楼

upstairs 上楼

go down stairs

go downhill 下山

downtown (n adj adv) 市中心的商业区 反义词: uptown 远离商业区

I'll go to the downtown.

【Text】

Lesson 56 Faster than sound! 比声音还快!

First listen and then answer the question. 听录音, 然后回答以下问题.

How fast did the winning car go?

Once a year, a race is held for old cars. A lot of cars entered for this race last year and there was a great deal of excitement just before it began. One of the most handsome cars was a Rolls-Royce Silver Ghost. The most unusual car was a Benz which had only three wheels. Built in 1885, it was the oldest car taking part. After a great many loud explosions, the race began. Many of the cars broke down on the course and some drivers spent more time under their cars than in them! A few cars, however, completed the race. The winning car reached a speed of forty miles an hour--much faster than any of its rivals. It sped downhill at the end of the race and its driver had a lot of trouble trying to stop it. The race gave everyone a great deal of pleasure. It was very different from modern car races but no less exciting.

参考译文

旧式汽车的比赛每年举行一次。去年有很多汽车参加了这项比赛。比赛开始之前, 人们异常激动。最漂亮的汽车之一是罗尔斯-罗伊斯生产的银鬼汽车, 而最不寻常的一辆则要属只有 3 只轮子的奔驰牌汽车了。该车造于 1885 年, 是参赛车中最老的一辆。在好一阵喧闹的爆炸声之后, 比赛开始了。很多汽车在途中就抛了锚, 而有

些驾驶员花在汽车底下的时间比坐在汽车里面的时间还长。然而还是有几辆汽车跑完了全程。获胜的那辆车达到了时速 40 英里——远远超过任何对手。它在接近终点时，冲下了山坡，驾驶员费了好大劲才把车停下来。这次比赛使每个人都挺开心。它虽然与现代汽车比赛大不相同，但激动人心的程度并不亚于现代汽车大赛。

【课文讲解】

How fast did the winning car go? 获胜的车子走得有多快?

race 车赛

Once a year, a race is held for old cars. 也可以：Old car race is held once a year.

enter for 报名参加

a great deal of 大量的+不可数名词

a great number of +可数名词

a great many +可数名词

a large amount of +不可数名词

There was a great deal of excitement. 人们非常激动

There is a great deal of excitement.

Just before : just 起强调作用

关于 one of : (lesson 28)

如果在定语从句中出现了 one of 作为先行词，它后边的关系代词指代的是后面的复数名词

如果在 one of 前面还有一修饰词 only, 那么后边的关系代词将指代 one 这个词，才作单数看

He is the only one of those rare people who believes in ancient myths.

one of 直接作主语的时候，它是做单数看待的

One of the answers is true.

One of those people is good.

A Benz : 许多 Benz 中的一辆

Built in 1885, it was the oldest car taking part. It 是主语

The car was built in 1885.

Taking part 理解为 : taking part in

Built in 1885, it was the oldest car taking part (in the race).

A great many 许多

After explosions 许多爆炸声之后

break down 车子抛锚

many cars 许多车子

many of the cars 车子当中的许多

many students 许多学生

many of my students 我教过的许多学生

some pictures 一些照片

some of the pictures 那些照片中的一些

spend 花费

英文中的斜体字起强调作用

spent more time *under* their cars than *in* them. 他们花在车下的时间比在车里的时间还多

the winning car 获胜车

much faster 快得多

a little faster 快一点

any of its rivals = any rival 任何一个

any 在比较级中一旦出现，它往往要加可数名词的单数

Beijing is bigger than any other city. 注意 "other" 不能丢

如果是不定代词, 可以说 someone else, anyone else

如果不是不定代词, 要在名词前加 other. 如 : any other competitor.

have trouble doing sth 干...有麻烦

trouble 既可数又不可数, 随你

give sb pleasure

give sb a fright

give me a fright 你吓了我一跳

give you a surprise 给你一个惊喜

give sb+n

掌握两个句型 : ① There was a great deal of excitement.

② It will give sb. A great deal of pleasure.

modern car race 现代车赛

be different from 和...不同

It was exciting.

no more 和 no less 都表示和...一样, only, the same

There are no more than 100 students.

表示不相同用

not more; not less

not less = more

not more = less

not less exciting 更令人激动

no less exciting 一样的激动

no more than you 和你一样

总结 :

be held for 比赛为...而举行

is held for the blind 比赛为盲人而举行

a great deal of 后要加不可数名词, 表示大量得

have trouble doing 做...很困难

have trouble in doing sth (完整的表达式, 常省略 "in")

than any + 可数名词单数

【Key structures】 关键句型

not so...as 不如

not as...as

I am less lucky. 我还不如他们幸运. (lesson 20)

more exciting 更激动 = not less exciting.

as.....as 和.....一样

【Special difficulties】 难点

1 handsome : 可以指人, 也可以指东西的制作精良

beautiful : 美丽的, 强调内在和外在的结合

pretty : 强调女孩和小孩的外表美丽

good-looking : 好看

My furniture is good-looking.

2 reach; arrive

reach : 是及物动词, 后面一定要加宾语

arrive : 是不及物动词, 后面要加宾语要和介词 “in” 或 “at” 连用

3 take part in; take place

take part in 参加

take place=happen 发生

What happened?=What took place?

【Multiple choice questions】 多项选择题

4 _____in 1885, so it was the oldest car in the race.

a. It built b. Built c. It was built d. Having built

一个简单句只有一个主语+一个动词, 如果出现了两个动词, 那么 :

① 用 “and, but, so” 等连接

② 变成带有从句和主句的复合句

③ 留一个作主干, 剩下的动词变为非谓语动词

④ 有介词短语替代动词概念, 如 : the boy in black

answer: C

5 It was the oldest car taking part. There wasn't _____one.

a. an older b. the oldest c. an elder d. the eldest

elder 意为 “年长的”, 一般作定语用, 不用作比较

answer: a

12 It went faster than any of its rivals. It went faster than its _____.

a. opponents b. enemies c. competitors d. partners

opponent [ə'pəʊnənt] : 两个持相反观点的对手

answer: c

partner ['pɑ:tənə] : 伙伴, 搭档(合作关系的伙伴)

从下玩道大的伙伴用 : friend 或 company

6 It reached a speed of forty miles an hour. It _____ forty miles an hour.

a. ran b. ran with c. went at d. drove with

用于 “速度” 的介词只有 “at”

3 A lot of cars entered for this race. There were _____ cars in it.

a. much b. lot of c. lots of d. plenty

much : 修饰不可数

lot of : 不存在这种结构

lots of = a lot of

plenty of 固定搭配

§ Lesson 57 Can I help you, madam? 您要买什么, 夫人?

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★madam n. (对妇女的尊称)太太; 夫人

ma'am [mæm, mɑ:m, məm] n. <口>夫人, 太太, 女士, 小姐 = madam

★jeans n 牛仔裤

trousers ['trauzəz] n.裤子, 长裤 / pants [pænts] n.裤子, 短裤

★hesitate v 犹豫, 迟疑

hesitate to do sth

make up one's mind

hesitation [ˌhezi'teɪʃən] n.犹豫, 踌躇

without hesitation 毫不犹豫 : Without hesitation he refused my request.

★serve v 接待(顾客)

service ['sɜ:vɪs] n.服务, 服务性工作, 服役, 仪式 vt.保养, 维修 adj.(军队)服现役的, 服务性的, 仆人的, 耐用的

at your service

serve sb. : 为某人而服务

★scornfully adv 轻蔑地

look down upon/on : He looks down on me.

★punish v 惩罚

punishment 惩罚 / capital punishment 极刑

★fur n 裘皮

mink 貂皮

★eager adj 热切的, 热情的

be eager to do 急于做某事

【Text】

Lesson 57 Can I help you, madam? 您要买什么, 夫人?

First listen and then answer the question.听录音, 然后回答以下问题.

Did the woman get what she wanted?

A woman in jeans stood at the window of an expensive shop. Though she hesitated for a moment, she finally went in and asked to see a dress that was in the window. The assistant who served her did not like the way she was dressed. Glancing at her scornfully, he told her that the dress was sold. The woman walked out of the shop angrily and decided to punish the assistant next day. She returned to the shop the following morning dressed in a fur coat, with a handbag in one hand and a long umbrella in the other. After seeking out the rude assistant, she asked for the same dress. Not realizing who she was, the assistant was eager to serve her this time. With great difficulty, he climbed into the shop window to get the dress. As soon as she saw it, the woman said she did not like it. She enjoyed herself making the assistant bring almost everything in the window before finally buying the dress she had first asked for.

参考译文

一位穿着牛仔褲的婦女站在一家高檔商店的櫥窗前。她雖然猶豫了片刻，但終於還是走進了商店，要求把陳列在櫥窗里的一件衣服拿給她看。接待她的售貨員不喜歡她的那副打扮，輕蔑地看了她一眼後，便告訴她那件衣服已經賣出去了。這位婦女怒氣沖沖地走出了商店，決定第二天教訓一下那個售貨員。第二天上午，她又來到這家商店，穿了一件裘皮大衣，一手拎著一手提包，另一隻手拿著一把長柄傘。找到那個無禮的售貨員後，她還要看昨天的那件衣服。那個售貨員沒有認出她是誰，這一回接待她的態度非常殷勤。費了好大勁兒，他爬進櫥窗去取那件衣服。這位婦女對那件衣服只看一眼，就說不喜歡。她開心地迫使那位售貨員把櫥窗里几乎所有的東西都拿了出來，最後才買下了她最先要看的那一件。

【課文讲解】

what she wanted. 她想要的東西

do window shopping(表示在櫥窗外購物)

for a moment : 不一定要與現在完成時連用，也可以是一般現在時，只要這個動詞是延續性動詞就可以

ask to do sth : 請求做某事

dress sb 給某人穿衣服 : Mother is dressing her baby.

I dress myself.: 自己給自己穿衣服

反身代詞是不能做主語的,故: I am dressed.

be dressed in : She is dressed in jeans.

the way 可以直接加定語從句，不需要引導詞

I don't like the way she eats. 我不喜歡她吃飯的樣子

The way she eats annoyed me. 她吃飯的樣子讓我煩

I cooked in the way you taught me.

with sth in hand 手上拿著

He went to the theatre with a book in one hand. 他手上拿著一本書去了電影院

She went to her mother's carrying her baby with a chicken in one hand and a duck in the other. (go to one's mother's 回娘家)

Seek out 找出，找到

Not realizing...

非謂語動詞形式的否定詞 not 一定要直接加在該結構的前面

tell sb. not to do: 告訴某人不要做某事

【語法精粹】P26 Exercise 2

2. _____ an answer from the committee, he was worried.

a. Having not got b. Getting not c. Not having got d. Having not been got

毫無疑問不管句子是什麼意思，答案肯定為 : c

with great difficulty/trouble

its driver had a lot of trouble trying to stop it. (lesson 56)

he had a lot of trouble climbing into the shop window to get the dress

enjoy oneself

enjoy sth

enjoy doing

make sb do sth : 使某人做某事

She bought the dress she had first seen.

文中此句用了五個動詞 : She enjoyed herself making the assistant bring almost everything in the window before finally buying the dress she had first asked for.

【Key structures】 关键句型

At, In, Off and With (Compare KS9, KS33) (对比第 9, 33 课关键句型)

a Study these sentences carefully. Pay close attention to the words in italics.

仔细阅读以下句子, 特别注意用斜体印出的词.

Phrases with at. 带 at 的短语

He lives at 27 West Street. 他住在西大街 27 号.

A large crowd was waiting at the bus stop. 一大群人在公共汽车站等候.

I'll see you at the station. 我将到车站送你.

On the way home, we stopped at a small village called Puddleton. 在回家的路上, 我们在一个叫普都顿的小村逗留.

Someone is at the door. 有人敲门.

Phrases with in. 带有 in 的短语

There were a lot of people in the street. 街上有许多人.

I would like to live in a warm country. 我喜欢住在一个气候温暖的国家.

He lives in Berlin. 他住在柏林.

Let's go for a walk in the park. 让我们到公园去散散步.

Where's Tom? He's in his room. 汤姆在哪里? 他在自己的房间里.

Phrases with off. 带有 off 的短语

The lid came off easily. 这个盖子很容易掉.

Take your coat off. 把你的外套脱下来.

The pencil rolled off the table. 铅笔滚到桌子下面去了.

b Now study these phrases with in and with:

仔细阅读以下含有 in 和 with 的短语:

Can you see that woman in the blue coat? 你能看见那个穿蓝外套的女士吗?

He was dressed in a black suit. 他穿着一套黑衣服.

That man with long hair is supposed to be a poet. 那个留着长发的男人应该是个诗人.

The police are looking for a man with a scar on his face. 警察正在搜寻一个脸上有疤的男人.

The woman with the brown handbag and long umbrella is a famous novelist. 那个手上拿着棕色手提包和长柄伞的女士是一位著名的小说家.

at 表地点

off: 1、away from 2、down from

in 后面加衣服, 或颜色: 'woman in white' 小说《白衣女人》

with 表示具有, 带有, 拿有

【Special Difficulties】 难点

Make and Let

Study these examples: 细读以下例句:

She enjoyed herself making the assistant bring almost everything in the window. (11.11-12)

I can't make him change his mind. 我无法使他改变主意.

The teacher made the boy write the exercise again. 教师叫那男孩把练习重做一遍.

Don't let him persuade you. 不要让他把你说服了.

Let me try. 让我试一试.

Don't let the children touch anything in this room please. 请别让孩子们动这个房间里的任何东西.

let/make sb do sth: 不定式作宾补, 省略 “to” 的不定式
be made to do : 当 “make” 用被动语态时, “to” 不能省略

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题

4 The assistant_____ her did not like the way she was dressed.

a. served b. serving c. who serving d. was serving

找这句话有没有谓语动词, 从句一定要有主语和谓语动词

answer : b

5 After _____out the rude assistant she asked for the same dress.

a. she was seeking b. she had sought c. sought d. when she sought

after, before 后面一定要加两种概念 : 1、句子 2、+ing

after 后面不能接进行时态

answer : b

6 _____who she was, the assistant was eager to serve her this time.

a. Not to realize b. Without to realize c. Except realizing d. Without realizing

不定式的概念表示的是一种目的

answer : d

9 She returned the following day. She returned the day _____.

a. other b. next c. after d. else

else 放在不定代词或疑问代词后面, who else / anyone else

other, next 都作形容词用, 单个形容词修饰一个名词

一定要放在被修饰词之前, the next day / the other books

after 可以放在结尾, 副词表达式 : =later

three days later / three days after

before: I've never seen it before.

After 与 before 相对应, 可以放在句末作副词用

【Summary writing】摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 80 words.

回答下列问题, 将答案组成一个段落, 不要超过 80 个单词.

1 Did the woman in jeans hesitate for a moment or not? Did she enter an expensive shop or not?
What did she ask to see? (Though ... and)

2 What did an assistant tell her? When did the woman return? Was she dressed in a fur coat or not? (On being told by)

3 What was the assistant eager to do this time?

4 What did she make him bring her? What did the woman finally buy? (After making)

1、第一步写单句, though 后面要加一个从句, 第一个句子和第二个都做主句并列, 则 though 后面还有第三个从句, though 后面有从句是第一个和第二个并列, 但还有个主句

Though the woman in jeans hesitated for a moment, she entered an expensive shop and asked for/to see the dress in the shop window.

2、by + 主动语态中的主语

On being told by an assistant that the dress was sold,

① the woman returned the following morning dressed in a fur coat.

② when the woman returned ,she was dressed in a fur coat. / the woman returned , when she was dressed in a fur coat. 前后两句的强调点不同, 本句中应强调 “return”, 故后面一句更好, 这属于 tiny mistake(微小的错误), 当然第一句最好, 另外应注意句子的平衡, 也应将 “when” 放后面

4、make sb do

After making the assistant bring.....,the women finally bought the dress she had.....

The woman finally bought what she had first asked for. 也对!

Letter writing 书信写作

Learn the following opening phrases by heart: 熟记以下两个开头语 :

What a surprise it was to ...

Forgive me for not writing earlier, but ...

熟记并模仿

1、What a surprise it was to send me flowers.

To do sth. 的结构当中, 可以在前面表达动作由谁做, 加一个 “for sb”

It is important for me to do sth. “for” 一定要加在 “to” 的前面

What a surprise it was for you to send me flowers.

2、Forgive me for not writing earlier, but ... 我很抱歉我这么久没给你写信

I apologize. / I do apologize. 我真的很抱歉!(do 其强调作用)

Your apology is accepted.

apology [ə'pɒlədʒi] n.(为某种思想, 宗教, 哲学等)辩解, 道歉

'walk in the cloud' 电影《云中漫步》英文版, 学习口语

【语法精粹】P26 Exercise

1、The _____ news made them _____.

a. excited/exciting b. exciting/excited c. exciting/to be excited d. excited /excited

make sb do / make sth +形容词 : make the room warm.

Answer: b

6、After a whole day's heavy work,the old worker returned home,_____

a. hungry and exhausted b. hungry and exhausting

c. hungry and being exhausted d. hungry and exhaust

After a whole day's heavy work,

After so many years of sunshine, (lesson 38)

Ing: 令人 ed: 感到

exhaust [ig'zɔ:st] vt.用尽, 耗尽, 抽完, 使精疲力尽 vi.排气 n.排气, 排气装置 adj.用不完的, 不会枯竭的

形容词短语作状语

3、_____, all the quarrels came to an end.

a. The lost money was found b. Was the lost money found

c. Because the lost money found d. With the lost money found

quarrel ['kwɒrəl] n.吵架, 反目, 怨言, 争吵的原因 vi.吵架, 争论, 挑剔

a.出现了两个主语和谓语动词 b.也不对, 原因相同 c.Because + 从句, 缺 was d.对, with 后面不能加句子
非谓语动词 : 表达被动含义, 而不作谓语

4、Many of our dreams _____ impossible in the past have come true.

a. were considered b. to be considered c. considering d.considered

have come true, 梦想成真

非谓语动词

不定式：表示目的，还可以表示将要发生的事(在时间上)

-ing：动作处于现阶段，表达主动

-ed：已经做过了，表达被动

将来的：to do；现阶段：ing；过去的：ed

先说动词再说名词的就是被动

b,d 的不同在于 “in the past” 时态上的差别

§ Lesson 58 A blessing in disguise? 是因祸得福吗?

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★blessing n 福气，福分

bless 保佑：God bless you 上帝保佑你

Bless you / bless my country 保佑我的国家

★disguise [dis'gaiz] n 伪装

in disguise 穿着伪装的

a blessing in disguise 因祸得福

a curse in disguise (curse [kə:s] n.诅咒，咒语，祸根，祸因 vt.诅咒，咒骂，降祸，使受罪)

spy [spai] n.特工人员，间谍，侦探，探员，秘密侦察他人行动者 v.侦察，侦察，发现

a wolf in disguise 披着羊皮的狼，被伪装的狼

wolf [wulf] n.狼，残忍贪婪之人，极度的穷困 vt.狼吞虎咽，大吃 vi.猎狼

★tiny adj 极小的

tiny = very very small

★possess v 拥有

possession [pə'zeʃən] n.拥有，占有，所有，着迷，领土，领地，财产(常用复数)，自制

in one's possession / sb possess sth

★cursed adj 可恨的

cursed ['kə:sɪd] adj.被诅咒的，邪恶的

如果有 ed 构成形容词，做为形容词读音要读/id/

★increase vi (不及物) 增加

add vi 及物 / grow 不及物动词

★plant v 种植

plant：强调把东西给种下去 / grow 生长

grow sth 种庄稼(不但种，还要让它生长) / plant tree 种树(只是种，活不活不管)

Tree Planting day：植树节

★church n 教堂

① + the：地点：go to the church：去教堂玩

② 不+the 和功能有关: go to church : 去教堂做礼拜

I am at church 做礼拜 / I am at the church : 在教堂玩

★evil adj 坏的

evil = wicked 邪恶的

★reputation n 名声

good reputation / bad reputation

fame 一定是好名声

fame [feim] n.名声, 名望, 传说, <古>传闻 vt.(常用被动语态)使闻名, 使有名望, 盛传

famous ['feiməs] adj.著名的, 出名的, <口>极好的, 令人满意的

★claim v 以...为其后果

claim = take 拿, 索取

★victim n 受害者, 牺牲品

★vicar n 教区牧师

★source [sɔ:s] n 来源

resource : re-又 : 资源(一次又一次的来源)

reread ['ri:ri:d] vt.重读, 再读

注意 source 读音与 sauce 相同

sauce [sɔ:s] n.沙司, 酱油, 调味料 vt.调味, 使增加趣味

★income n 收入

income, salary, wages, rent([rent] v.租, 租借, 出租 n.租金), interest(['intrist] n.兴趣, 关心, 重要性, 影响, 利息,利益, 利害 vt.使发生兴趣, 引起...的注意)等都与收入有关

bonus ['bəunəs] n.奖金, 红利

DINK-丁克家族 : D—double; I—income; N—no; K—kids

Kid [kid] n.哄骗, 取笑, 开玩笑, 小孩, 小山羊 v.哄骗, 取笑, 开玩笑, 欺骗

★trunk n 树干

trunk [trʌŋk] n.干线, 树干, 躯干, 箱子, 主干, 象鼻 vt.把...放入旅行箱内 adj.树干的, 躯干的, 干线的, 箱形的

【Text】

Lesson 58 A blessing in disguise? 是因祸得福吗?

First listen and then answer the question. 听录音, 然后回答以下问题.

Why does the vicar refuse to cut down the tree?

The tiny village of Frinley is said to possess a 'cursed tree'. Because the tree was mentioned in a newspaper, the number of visitors to Frinley has now increased. The tree was planted near the church fifty years ago, but it is only in recent years that it has gained an evil reputation. It is said that if anyone touches the tree, he will have bad luck; if he picks a leaf, he will die. Many villagers believe that the tree has already claimed a number of victims. The vicar has been asked to have

the tree cut down, but so far he has refused. He has pointed out that the tree is a useful source of income, as tourists have been coming from all parts of the country to see it. In spite of all that has been said, the tourists have been picking leaves and cutting their names on the tree-trunk. So far, not one of them has been struck down by sudden death !

参考译文

据说弗林利这个小村里有一棵“该诅咒的树”。就因为报上提到过这棵树，所以现在来弗林利参观的人越来越多。该树是 50 年前栽在教堂附近的，但只是近几年才得到了一个坏名声。据说，谁要是触摸了这棵树，谁就会交上恶运；如果谁摘了一片树叶，谁就会死去。很多村民相信此树已经害了不少人。人们曾请求教区的牧师叫人把树砍掉，但他直到现在也没有同意。他指出，由于人们从全国各地纷纷前来参观这棵树，它成了一个有用的财源。尽管有上述种种说法，但游客们还是照常摘树叶和把他们的名字刻在树干上。然而到目前为止，还没有一个人暴死呢！

【课文讲解】

被动语态一> 据说: it is said that...

called / sth called ... 和地点相连的词的名字 : of, 跟城市, 村庄的名字连

the city of Beijing : 名叫北京的城市

the village is said to+动词+...

be said to

it is said that village possesses a 'cursed tree.

he is said to be very good 据说他人非常好 = It is said that he is very good.

mention: 提到, 提及

my father often mentions you

in a newspaper : 强调报纸里面的内容

on the newspaper : 与报纸内容无关, 如你自己在报纸上记了什么东西时用 "on"

the number of / a number of : 后面都加可数名词的复数

a number of=lots of 做复数看待(从前往后翻, 强调后面的东西), a number of students 许多学生

the number of : ...的数量, 做单数看(从后往前翻, 强调数量), the number of students 学生的数量

主谓数字一致

gain=get 得到

it is ...that : 万能强调结构 it is I that am looking for you. 强调 "I"

it is you that I'm looking for. 强调 "you"

分号可以断开两个句子

anyone : 任何人, 与 he 相对应

if anyone wanted to go there, he will do sth

be asked to do 请求某人做某事, sb 做事

have the tree cut down

have sth done 让某事被别人做

I will go to have my bicycle repaired. 与 I will go to repair my bicycle.是有区别的

I will have my hair cut.

point out : explain 解释

have been doing : 现在完成进行时态

in spite of this

in spite of all that...= in spite of what

in spite of 介词后面不能接从句, 只能加 what 引导的从句

not one of=none of: 单数

strick / struck / stricken

be struck down 被打倒

poverty-struck 穷困潦倒

poverty ['pɒvəti] n. 贫穷, 贫困, 贫乏, 缺少

总结 :

① be said to do / It is said that 据说

② It is.....that... 万能强调结构

have sth. done

Could you introduce yourself? 你能自我介绍一下吗?

Could you make yourself known? 你能让别人知道你吗?(你的自我介绍)

make sth. done : 让某事被做

Could you make yourself heard? 你能让别人听到你吗?(你能大声点吗?)

make : ① make + 宾语 + 宾补 ② make + sb + do 让某人做某事 ③ make + sth. + done 让别人做某事

④ in spite of

⑤ not one of = none of ≠ no one of (no one 不能加 of)

【Special difficulties】 难点

Exercise 练习

Choose the correct words in these sentences: 选择正确的词 :

- 1 This fruit is fresh. I have just (cut) (picked) it.
- 2 If you travel by air, you will (earn) (gain) time.
- 3 He (earns) (gains) £300 a week.
- 4 Judy has (increased) (grown) so much I can hardly recognize her.

1、picked cut 切割 / pick 摘

2、gain/earn the reputation 都可以,但强调点不同

gain : 获得=get sth / earn 得到结果(通过努力)

earn money 挣钱 / earn one's living : 谋生

3、earns

4、grown

grow=increase(表示数量增长), the number is increasing/growing

grow 增长和生长

increase 增长

【Multiple choice questions】 多项选择题

4 If anyone picked the leaves, he _____die.

a. would b. will c.shall d. would have

answer: a

虚拟语气: 如果 if 后面直接出现正常条件的话,就会出现一般现在时,一旦出现一般过去时,就是与现在事实相反的虚拟语气.

6 _____all that has been said, the tourists have been picking leaves.

a. In spite b. Despite c. Even d. Even so

answer: b

in spite of + 名词/what 引导的从句: 不能少 of

despite (prep) = in spite of : 尽管

despite [dis'pait] prep. 不管, 尽管, 不论

even adv : 不能说 "even all"

even though : 尽管(后面加句子), 没有 even so 的表达式

7 So far _____ of them has been struck down by sudden death.

a. no one b. nobody c. not any d. none

answer: d

参考 lesson 28 第 7 题

'no one', 'nobody' 不能与 'of' 连用

'any of' 有, 但没有 'not any of' 的结构

9 The number of visitors has increased. The number has _____.

a. grown b. grown up c. overgrown d. grown old

answer: a

grown up : 成长(人)

overgrow : 过度成长

grown old : 变老了, 不译为 "长老了"

grow 一般作为实义动词, 后面加介词或副词, 一旦后面加了形容词, 不再表示 "生长" 的意思, 将表示 "变得" = get

10 It has _____ an evil reputation.

a. won b. beaten c. profited d. earned

win 赢得(通过比赛或竞争) / beat 打败(后加对手) / profit 利润&得到利润

profit ['profit] n. 利润, 益处, 得益 vi. 得益, 利用 vt. 有益于, 有利于

gain / get 获得

§ Lesson 59 In or out? 进来还是出去?

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★bark v 狗叫

the dog is barking

somebody is barking 某人在咆哮

★press v 按, 压

pressure [preʃə(r)] n. 压, 压力, 电压, 压迫, 强制, 紧迫

★paw n 脚爪

cat's paw 被人所利用的人(由寓言而来)

I don't want to be a cat's paw 我才不想被人利用

★latch n 门闩

bar 门闩, 但与 latch 是有区别的

★expert n 专家

expert at/in 在某一方面是专家

expert at/in doing sth : expert at/in opening the door.

★develop v 养成

develop the film 冲洗胶卷

develop : 发展

developing skills: 发展技巧 / fluency in English : 流利英语

fluency ['fluənsi] n.流利, 流畅, 雄辩

developing country : 发展中国家 / developed country 发达国家

ed 强调已经,ing 强调正在,有时态的区别

boiling water 滚开水 / boiled water 开水

★habit n 习惯(指个人习惯)

custom : 风俗, 习俗 / customs 海关 / customer 顾客

★remove v 拆掉, 取下

remove sth from 从...挪走

【Text】

Lesson 59 In or out? 进来还是出去?

First listen and then answer the question.听录音, 然后回答以下问题.

Why did Rex run away?

Our dog, Rex, used to sit outside our front gate and bark. Every time he wanted to come into the garden he would bark until someone opened the gate. As the neighbours complained of the noise, my husband spent weeks training him to press his paw on the latch to let himself in. Rex soon became an expert at opening the gate. However, when I was going out shopping last week, I noticed him in the garden near the gate. This time he was barking so that someone would let him out! Since then, he has developed another bad habit. As soon as he opens the gate from the outside, he comes into the garden and waits until the gate shuts. Then he sits and barks until someone lets him out. After this he immediately lets himself in and begins barking again. Yesterday my husband removed the gate and Rex got so annoyed we have not seen him since.

参考译文

我家的狗雷克斯, 过去常坐在大门外面叫. 每当它想到花园里来时, 便汪汪叫个不停, 直到有人把门打开. 由于邻居们对狗叫很有意见, 所以我丈夫花了几个星期的时间训练它用脚爪按住门闩把自己放进来. 雷克斯很快成了开门的专家. 然而上星期我正要去买东西时, 发现它正呆在花园里边靠门的地方. 这次它叫着让人把它放出去! 从那以后, 它养成了另外一种坏习惯. 它从外面把门一打开, 就走进花园, 等着门自动关上. 这之后他就坐下汪汪叫起来, 直到有人来把它放出去. 出去之后, 它又马上把自己放进来, 接着再开始叫. 昨天, 我丈夫把大门卸了下来, 雷克斯很生气, 此后我们便再也没有见到它.

【课文讲解】

let sb do

let sb in 让某人进来 / let sb out 让某人出去 / let sb down 让某人失望

let's 省略式, 口语

front gate 前门

would=used to 过去常常

every time=when 什么时候,后面可以是点,可以是段

the moment=as soon as

when 什么时候,后面可以是点,可以是段

the moment 一...就...(强调的是瞬间)

every time : 每次, 每当

every time I turn to lesson 59, i will remember my teacher

The dog used to bark the front gate to let(make) somebody open the door.

complain of 抱怨

spend time doing 花费某段时间去做某事

it takes sb 事情做主语

sb spend time 人做主语

train sb to do 训练某人做某事

press his paw 可省略为 press the latch

press the button / press the figure on the button

button ['bʌtn] n.纽扣, [计]按钮 v.扣住, 扣紧

going out shopping 加了 out 强调外出

so that : 以便于, 为了(表达目的)

after this

got : 是谓语动词 / have seen 也是谓语动词

so annoyed (that)

so...that...如此...以至于, 结果状语从句, 可以省略一个词,so 或 that 都可以

so that: 目的状语从句必须具备一个特征, 在动词前面一定要出现情态动词

since(加在尾巴上) = since then : 从那时起到现在为止

【Special difficulties】难点

表达目的几种方式: to / in order to / in order that / so as to+原形/so that+ 目的状语从句

to+动词原形, that+从句

目的状语从句必须具备一个特征, 在动词前面一定要出现情态动词

目的状语从句当中不存在 want, 只有 to do

非谓语动词的否定形式在结构前面

如果发现 do 的动作不是由主语做的, 而是由其他人做的, 在 to 的前面加 for sb

不定式的逻辑主语 for sb to do sth

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题

6 He was barking _____let him in.

a. for someone to b. in case someone c. so someone to d. so that someone

answer : a

so that 引导目的状语从句

in case 以防万一, 如果: +句子,(状语从句,不会出现将来式)

EG.:Bring your umbrella in case it rains

so 表示结果 : 引导句子,so 一旦出现会加句子,而 to 是不定式是非谓语

to do 不定式做目的状语

for sb to do sth = so that sb do sth

7 As soon as he_____ the gate from the outside he comes into the garden.

a. will open b.opens c. is opening d. has been opening

as soon as 引导状语从句

状语从句中使用一般现在时取代一般将来时

be opening 强调动作正在发生

has been doing 现在完成进行时强调从过去延续到现在,并且不将延续

§ Lesson 61 Trouble with the Hubble 哈勃望远镜的困境

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★Hubble n 哈勃

★telescope n 望远镜

★launch v 发射

★space n 空间(指宇宙空间)

room 空间, 不可数 (a room 为房间,可数)

could you make room for me?你能为我腾一点空间吗?

★billion n 10 亿

★faulty adj 有错误的

★astronaut n 宇航员

★shuttle n 航天飞机

★Endeavour n “奋进”号

★robot-arm n 机器人手

robot ['rəʊbɒt, 'rɒbət] n.机器人, 遥控设备, 自动机械, 机械般工作的人

★grab v 抓

★atmosphere n 大气层

atmosphere ['ætməsfɪə] n.大气, 空气, 气氛, 氛围

I went to the New Concept English of New Oriental school for its good atmosphere

★distant adj 遥远的

★galaxy n 星系

★universe n 宇宙

★eagle eye n 鹰眼,一种仪器

【Text】

Lesson 61 Trouble with the Hubble 哈勃望远镜的困境

First listen and then answer the question.听录音, 然后回答以下问题.

What is the special importance of a telescope in space?

The Hubble telescope was launched into space by NASA on April 20, 1990 at a cost of over a billion dollars. Right from the start there was trouble with the Hubble. The pictures it sent us were very disappointing because its main mirror was faulty! NASA is now going to put the telescope right, so it will soon be sending up four astronauts to repair it. The shuttle Endeavour will be taking

the astronauts to the Hubble. A robot-arm from the Endeavour will grab the telescope and hold it while the astronauts make the necessary repairs. Of course, the Hubble is above the earth's atmosphere, so it will soon be sending us the clearest pictures of the stars and distant galaxies that we have ever seen. The Hubble will tell us a great deal about the age and size of the universe. By the time you read this, the Hubble's eagle eye will have sent us thousands and thousands of wonderful pictures.

参考译文

哈勃望远镜于 1990 年 4 月 20 日由国家航空航天局发射升空,耗资 10 多亿美元。从最开始哈勃望远镜就有问题。它传送给我们的图像很令人失望,因为它的主要镜子有误差。国家航天局准备纠正这一错误,为此将把 4 名宇航员送入太空修复望远镜。“奋进”号航天飞机将把宇航员送上哈勃。当宇航员进行必要的修复工作时,“奋进”号上的一只机器手将抓住望远镜并托住它。当然,哈勃位于地球的大气层之外,因此,它很快就会给我们传送我们所见到过的、有关行星和远距离星系的最清晰的照片。哈勃将告诉我们有关宇宙的年龄和大小的许多事情。等到你读到这篇文章时,敏锐的哈勃望远镜已经为我们送来了成千上万张精彩的照片。

【课文讲解】

Trouble with the Hubble 科普性文章

科普性文章结构简单,句式单一,单词较难

学会逻辑阅读

at a cost of 花费

Hubble telescope 看作一个整体,在句中做主语

was launched 动词谓语

单词缩写一般都是组织或者机构

NASA ['næsə] National Aeronautics and Space Administration (美国)国家航空和宇宙航行局

there was trouble with the Hubble

trouble with 关于.....有麻烦

what's the trouble with you? 你有什么麻烦? (医生常这样问)

start 开始

定语从句省略引导语

主句: the pictures...were...

-ing 令人.....的

sorry, it's my fault

faulty adj 有错误的

be going to 将要

put sth right 把某物放正确

it 指代 NASA

send up 往上送

The shuttle Endeavour 主语,可能是交通工具

robot-arm: 机器人手臂 arm 手臂

hold it 抓住它

repairs 修理

above 在.....上面(悬空的)

astronaut n 飞行员,宇航员

atmosphere

distant galaxies

stars 星星

a great deal 大量 / a great deal of 大量的

by the time 到那时

everytime 每当

by the time you read this 到你读这篇文章的时候

will have done 将来完成式

thousands and thousands of 成千上万的

Hubble telescope 被人类送上天空的一种仪器

Space 宇宙

launch 送进

disappointing 令人失望

astronaut ['æstrənɔ:t] n.太空人, 宇航员

robot-arm 机器人手臂

阅读

1、克服害怕的心理

2、学会理解单词的含义

3、科普性文章的理解题在原文中寻找答案

【Multiple choice questions】 多项选择题

Comprehension 理解—要从原文中找答案

1 The Hubble failed to send us satisfactory pictures because _____.

- a. the cost of sending satisfactory pictures was terrible
- b. there was a problem with its main mirror
- c. it was a long time since it was launched into space
- d. it was high above the earth's atmosphere

answer: b 原文

2 The Hubble telescope _____.

- a. will tell us a great deal about the universe
- b. cost a lot but was almost worthless
- c. will measure the size of the earth
- d. requires constant care from the astronauts

answer : a

constant ['kɒnstənt] n.[数、物]常数, 恒量 adj.不变的, 持续的, 坚决的

5 A robot-arm will hold the telescope _____the astronauts to repair it.

- a. for b.so that c. so long as d.which

answer : a 原文

for sb to do sth 基本结构

so that+句子

so long as+句子 : 表示只要

which + 句子

11 The main mirror of the Hubble _____.

- a. had problems b. was distant
- c. was the clearest d. requires repairs

had problems 有问题

requires repairs 需要修理

there was a problem with its main mirror.

what's the trouble with you?

problem with sth (习惯用法) 如: There was a problem with its main mirror.

1、problem=question

2、problem=trouble

12 The Hubble is _____ the earth's atmosphere.

a. below b. over c. within d. outside

answer: d

above 在...之上(凌空)

above the earth's atmosphere 在大气层的上方

【Key structures】 关键句型

1、将来完成时 will have done

2、将来进行时 will be doing

3、将来完成进行时 will have been doing

4、现在完成进行时 have been doing

将来完成进行时: 从某一点发生, 一直延续到将来的某一点, 并且将可能延续下去

it has been raining...

we will have been learning book 2...

区别: 1 一般将来时: 事情在将来发生

2 将来进行时: 等同于一般将来时

3 将来完成时: 强调到将来某一点时间动作的结束

4 将来完成进行时: 强调到将来某一点时间动作可能结束或延续

过去完成进行时 had been doing

过去完成进行时: 到过去某一点时间为止动作一直在延续

his father had died...

his father had been waiting for his son until he came back.

soon the astronauts will have repaired the telescope. 宇航员很快会把望远镜修好.

will have done 到将来某一点时间, 动作完成

by Friday midday, they will have been working on it for seven days. 到星期五中午, 他们就在这个工程上干了 7 天了.

work on sth 关于.....的工作

到将来某一点时间, 动作延续

【Special Difficulties】 难点

Words often confused 经常容易混淆的词

Study these examples: 细读以下例子:

a Nouns: Cost, Price, Value

The Hubble was launched at a cost of over a billion dollars. 哈勃望远镜发射升空, 耗资 10 多亿美元.

How much is that blouse? Let's ask the price. 这件衬衣多少钱? 让我们来问一下价钱.

The stolen items were of sentimental, rather than financial value. 被盗物品更具有情感上的涵义, 而不是经济上的价值.

b Verbs: Cost, Price, Value.

What does this blouse cost, please? 请问, 这件衬衣多少钱?

I want to price the bed linen in a few other shops before I buy any. 我想在买床单之前打听几家商店的价格.

I value your advice a great deal. 我非常尊重你的建议.

cost / price / value : nouns 名词 & verbs 动词

nouns : price 价格; cost 费用; value 价值

at the cost of 以.....的费用

verbs : price sth 打听.....的价格, 并比较

cost 花费 sth cost money

value sth 认为.....有价值

value your time 珍惜时间

I value your advice 我尊重你的意见

value sth owned by oneself 敝帚自珍

Exercise 练习

Choose the correct words in the following sentences. 选择正确的词.

- 1 There has been a sharp rise in the(price)(cost)(value) of living.
- 2 Whenever I buy anything new, my father always asks me the(value)(cost)(price).
- 3 If you have to work for something you will(value)(price)(cost) it more.
- 4 That house(valued)(cost)(priced) a fortune to build.
- 5 Dr. James's work is of enormous(value)(cost)(price) to the community.
- 6 Jane has(valued)(cost)(priced) the alternative products and she recommends this one.
- 7 So far, ten countries have given money towards the(value)(price)(cost) of rebuilding after the earthquake.

1 sharp rise: 大幅上升的

living 生活

the cost of living 生活的费用

2 price 价格

3 value : 表示认为有价值

4 fortune : 一大笔财产

cost 花费

5 enormous adj: 巨大的

community : 社区, 社会

value : 价值

of great (enormous)value 有巨大的价值

6 alternative 另外的

recommend : 推荐

price sth. 比较价格

7 towards = to

the cost of rebuilding 重建费用

过去完成进行时: had been doing

§ Lesson 62 After the fire 大火之后

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★control n 控制

control sth. (v) : 控制

I can control it.

I can manage it. 我能对付(口语)

介词短语 :

in control : 在控制之内

under control : 在控制之下,被控制

out of control : 失控

arrest : 逮捕

under arrest : (n) 被逮捕

★smoke n 烟

smoke : 吸烟

Don't smoke! / No smoking!

cigarette, cigar: (n) 香烟

smoke : (n) 烟雾

full of smoke : 充满烟雾

名词加-y, 变为形容词: rain – rainy / cloud – cloudy

smokey : (a.) 多烟的

smoking area; smoking room 吸烟室 / smoking apartment 火车上的吸烟车厢

smokey area : 吸烟区 / nonsmokey area : 禁烟区

heavy smoker : 烟瘾重的人 / nonsmoker : 不抽烟的人 / He smoked heavily.

★desolate adj 荒凉的

lonely ['ləunli] adj : 孤独的, 荒凉的, 偏僻的 (与地方连表示孤零零的,但并不表示无人居住)

desolate : 荒凉的, 极度孤独的(与人相连时)

desolate+地方——无人居住, 荒无人烟的

★threaten v 威胁的

threaten to do : 威胁着要做...

threaten sb with sth : 以什么来威胁某人

It threatened to rain 有迹象表明天要下雨了

★surrounding adj 周围的

surroundings [sə'raʊndɪŋz] n : 环境(在周边的事物)

atmosphere ['ætməsfɪə(r)] n : 大气层, 氛围(在周边的人文环境)

★destruction n 破坏, 毁灭

destroy(v) : 破坏

destructive (adj) : 毁灭性的

construction (n) : 建设, 建筑 / construction bank 建设银行

build : 建设(具体的建某物)

construct (v) : 建设(为...创造更好的条件)

constructive (adj) : 建设性的(意见)

★flood n 洪水, 水灾

flood / floods 都对,都可以用,无区别

★authority [ɔ:'θɔ:riti] n (常用复数)当局

authorities : 当局(应为复数) / authority : 权威(单数)

★grass-seed n 草籽

★spray v 喷撒

spray sth over/on 往什么上喷洒

spray water over/on flower

spray grass-seed over/on the ground

★quantity n 量

quality : 质量

quantity : 数量

sth with good quality : 具有好质量的东西

quantities of : 大量的

★root n 根

root of...的根

what is the root cause? 根本原因

take root : 生根

come out : 长出来 / flower come out : 开花

shoot : 芽

shoot [ʃu:t] n.射击, 发射, 摄影, 急流 vt.射击, 投射, 伸出, 拍摄, 用完, 挥出, 给...注射, 使爆炸 vi.射出, 射击, 发出, 发芽, 射门, 拍电影

get out : 出去

★century n 世纪

★patch n 小片

a patch of : 一小片 / a piece of / a bit of / a sheet of

patches of : 许多片

piece : 片, 块

patch(平面上的)一片, 补丁(本意)

★blacken v 变黑, 发暗

-en --表示动词, 使...变得...

weak 虚弱的

weaken 使...变弱, 削弱

复合词 : fireman

派生词 : (前缀, 后缀)

-tion --名词后缀

- less --形容词后缀 : careless 粗心的

【课文讲解】

firemen had been fighting the forest fire.

fight sth : 和...作搏斗

get+宾语+介词短语——作宾补: get the room in order. (get : 使)

for miles around 方圆几英里

a short time before--从过去某一点时间算起, 一段时间以前

a short time ago--从现在算起, 一段时间以前

a short time before 和 a short time ago 都可以放在段时间之后

rose up(from) : 升上来

over the desolate hills: (烟、雾)弥漫

winter was coming on: 冬季即将来临 (季节的来临的通用表达式)

threaten sb. with sth. : 有...迹象

serious: 严重的

put out 扑灭

order 订购

several tons of a special type of grass—seed.

Type : 强调与其他同类的东西有明显不同的特征的种类,与 kind 有区别

in huge quantities--介词短语作状语, “大量的”

was sprayed over the ground : 被动语态

take root: 生根

in place of : 替代 (只能指代位置、空间,原来放的东西现在不在了)

instead of : 替代+没做的事

instead of staying home, I went to school. 此句就不能用 “in place of”, 而指地点空间时, 既可以用 “in place of” 也可以用 “instead of” .

In place of a cup , I put a vase there.

green n : 绿地,草地

【Key structures】关键句型

过去完成时: 这个动作在过去的过去

过去完成进行时: 这个动作非但从过去的过去开始,而且是延续的

【Special Difficulties】难点 :

control : 控制

check : 检查, 核对

great : 大的(强调重要性)

big 大的(强调面积, 体积上的)

soil : 泥土(能让植物生长的)

ground: 地表,地面(与土壤无关)

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题

6 The planes _____nearly a month to plant the seed.

a. did b. made c.took d. had

花费 : 如果人作主语用 spend

用时间表达用 take

9 Large _____ of seed were used.

a. weights b. measures c. tons d. amounts

weights / weight 重量

measures 测量

tons 吨 : several tons

amounts : large amounts 大量的, 修饰不可数名词

11 Patches of green had begun to appear. There was green grass _____.

a. every where b. only in one or two places

c. in one place d. here and there

patches 许多块

everywhere 每一寸土地上都长着东西

here and there 这一块, 那一块, 很多块, 不一定是每一寸

【Summary writing】摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 75 words. 回答下列问题, 将答案组成一个段落, 不要超过 75 个单词.

1 How long did it take the firemen to get the forest fire under control?

2 Had all the great trees been burnt or not? Was there danger that heavy rain would cause serious floods or not? Would the floods destroy the surrounding villages or not? (Now that... which)

3 Did the forest authorities order grass-seed to prevent this or not? For how long was it sprayed over the ground by planes? (To prevent this... which...)

4 Did it begin to rain or not? Where had the grass taken root? (By the time that...)

2 now that 既然 / which : 定语从句

Now that all the great trees had been burnt, there was danger that heavy rain would cause serious floods which destroy the surrounding villages.

3 to prevent...: 为了预防...

To prevent this the forest authorities ordered grass-seed which was sprayed over the ground by planes for nearly a month.

4 by the time(that)到...时候为止 (that 可以省略), 应理解为 "before"

by the time it began to rain, the grass had taken root in the soil.

§ Lesson 63 She was not amused 她并不觉得好笑

【New words and expressions】生词和短语

★circle n 圈子

★admire v 赞美, 钦佩

admire sb for sth : 因为...羡慕某人

I admire him for his richness/house/clever daughter/knowledge.

★close adj 亲密的

close friend

'my best friend's' – 《我最好朋友的婚礼》, 罗伯茨主演的一部影片

★wedding n 婚礼

reception = party

wedding reception 婚宴

news conference 新闻发布会, 记者招待会

★reception n 招待会

★sort n 种类

type 种类, 有特殊特征的

一般情况都用 kind, sort

习惯用 sort 的时候: 1、那种人 that sort of person

2、sort 可含有讽刺意味

that's the sort of thing you like best

【课文讲解】

1、have a large circle of friends 有一个很大的朋友圈子, 交际很广

=sb has/have a lot of friends

he has a large circle of friends 他有很多朋友

2、that is 一旦插在句子当中, 是作为固定结构, 意思是那就是说, 其解释作用

3、prepare sth 后面跟内容有关系

prepare for sth 后面不一定跟内容有关系

speech 发言: I am preparing a speech.

4、as 从句: 正如, 方式状语从句

a little 稍微, 有一点

be disappointed by 因为某事感到失望

do as you are told 按你被告知的做

5、why this was so

this 可以作主语, 也可以作宾语

so 只能作宾语, 只能放在动词后面

I think so / I hope so / I guess so

do so / I refuse to do so. 我拒绝这样做

I expect so

like to do 某一次

like doing 习惯

see sb doing 看见某人正在作某事

so many people: 跟数字相连的前面一定要用 so

This is the sort of thing.

the sort of, the kind of 的后面加单数

He had included...

included 包含, 把里面内容的一部分挑出来说

contain 强调容器里的包含, 后面一定要把所有的东西都列举出来

It was a great success. 表示这事做的不错, 不同凡响, 很成功都可以用

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题

4 _____ Jenny, everyone admires him for his great sense of humour.

a. Except for b. Apart c. Except d. Unless

unless : 除非

except for = apart from

apart from a few words, I do not know any French at all. (lesson 14)

7 Jeremy was a little disappointed. He was _____disappointed.

a. little b. somehow c. enough d. somewhat

a little 少量, 少许, 有一点点

little 几乎没有

与形容词或副词连用时, 用 a little

与名词连用时, 用 a little, little 都可

何时用 a little, 何时用 little, 是由说话人的态度区分

I have little time / I have a little time

somehow I fell in the hole. / somehow adv : 不知怎么的

somewhat =a little / somewhat adv : 有一些, 有一点

8 Everyone admires him. They _____him.

a. think highly of b. laugh at c. estimate d. esteem

think of 考虑

think highly of 高度赞扬

【Summary writing】摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 80 words. 回答下列问题, 将答案组成一个段落, 不要超过80个单词.

1 Is Jeremy Hampden greatly admired for his great sense of humour or not? What was he invited to do? Did he immediately agree to do so or not? (When Jeremy... who is...)

2 Did the speech contain a lot of funny stories or not? Was it a great success or not? (Since)

3 What did his six-year-old daughter, Jenny, want to do after his speech? Was Jeremy disappointed or not? (When)

4 Why had she not enjoyed it? (because)

1 Jeremy Hampden is greatly admired for his great sense of humour.

He was invited to make a speech at a wedding reception.

He immediately agreed to do so.

① When Jeremy Hampden was invited to make a speech at a wedding reception who is greatly admired for his great sense of humour , he immediately agreed to do so.

② When Jeremy Hampden, who is greatly admired for his great sense of humour , was invited to make a speech at a wedding reception, he immediately agreed to do so.

在不使句子产生歧义的前提下,定语从句可放在其所修饰的整个句子的后面, 如以下两句:

The brother, who was standing near the house, wanted to go swimming.

The brother wanted to go swimming who was standing near the house .

但下面的就容易产生歧义:

The brother, who was standing near the house , wanted to talk with the girl.

The brother wanted to talk with the girl who was standing near the house. (有歧义)

【语法精粹】P13

单项自测题(综合训练)

1 Simple photographic lenses can't ____sharp, undistorted images over a wide field.

A. to form B. are formed C. forming D. form

Answer: D 情态动词后接动词原形构成谓语

2 Of all the factors affecting agricultural yields, weather is the one _____ the most.

A. it influences farmers B. that influences farmers
C. farmers that it influences D. why farmers influence it

如果一句子出现了谓语动词,再出现动词则可能是:

① 并列关系 ② 从句 ③ 非谓语动词 ④ 介词短语

answer: B

3 By tracking the eye of a hurricane, forecasters can determine the speed at which _____

A. is a storm moving B. a storm is moving C. is moving a storm D. a moving storm

Which 后接的是定语从句,且是 at which 在句中作成份

at which = at the speed

answer: B 如: This is the river in which I swim.

4 During the flood of 1927, the Red Cross, _____ out of emergency headquarters in Mississippi, set up temporary shelters for the homeless.

A. operates B. is operating C. has operated D. operating

Answer: D

6 During an eclipse of the sun, _____ in the shadow of the Moon.

A. the Earth lies B. the Earth when lying C. that the Earth lies D. the lying Earth

Answer: A 少了主语和谓语动词

§ Lesson 64 The Channel Tunnel 海峡隧道

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★tunnel n 隧道

channel 海峡 / The Channel : 英吉利海峡

★port n 港口

airport 航空港

★ventilate v 通风

air: air the room, please 给房间通通风

★chimney n 烟囱

★sea level 海平面

★double adj 双的

DINK: double income, no kid.

字母 W 的读音就是: "double u" 意为两个 u 构成 w .

couple/pair 两个

a couple of weeks

a pair of shoes/socks/glasses 一副眼镜

★ventilation n 通风

Forced Ventilation 强制排风系统

force [fɔ:s] n.力量, 武力, 精力, 魄力, 势力, 暴力, [复]军队, 影响力 vt.强制, 强加, (用武力)夺取, 促使, 推动, 施加压力

forced [fɔ:st] adj.被迫的, 强迫的, 动用武力的

★fear v 害怕

fright / frighten / frightening / frightened / frightful

be afraid of / fear 是习惯性的/人做主语

frighten / scare 是因某件突然的事情才让你产生了害怕的情绪/句子后边的部分是人

sb fear sth: I feared darkness. / I fear dogs.

be afraid of : I am afraid of dogs.

be afraid that : can you help me? I am afraid I can't(恐怕) / I am afraid not. 等同于 I am sorry.

sth frighten sb. / sth scare sb : you frightened/scared me.

The dog frightened me. / the film scared me.

horrify ['hɔrifai] v.使恐怖, 使极度厌恶, 惊骇

horrified ['hɔrifaid] adj.惊悸的, 带有恐怖感的, 惊骇的

★invasion n 入侵, 侵略

invade [in'veid] vt.侵略, 侵袭, 拥挤

invade – invasion / decide – decision

★officially adv 正式地

official(官方的正式) / formally(一般的正式)

office – official

★connect v 连接

connect sth with/to

connect A with B (A 和 B 平等) / connect A to B (A 连到 B 上去)

★European adj 欧洲的

★continent n 大陆

European Continent: 欧洲大陆

【课文讲解】

read the text : 1 in 1858 2 in 1860 3 forty-two years later 4 1994

描述一件事物的要素 :

who/do/what/how/why

In 1858, a French engineer arrived in England with a plan.

plan for

twenty-one-mile 加连字符, 用单数, 是定语

He said

It 代表: to build a platform in the centre of the channel. 作形式主语

serve as 作为.....来服务, 起.....作用

it will serve as a swimming pool

above : 在海拔上高

put forward(plan/suggestion)提出

suggest 有两个意思

① 作为“暗示”意思时,用法与其他的词相同

② 作为“建议”意思时,则为虚拟语气,后接动词是要用-ing形式,后接that从句采用一种固定的用法:

should+动词原形, should 可省略

insist 用法作坚持用时同 suggest

文中: He suggested that a double railway tunnel should be built.

I suggested (that) he (should) go home. (that, should 都可省略)

又如: He suggested that I should go with him. 他建议我一定要跟他去.

He insisted that I should stay to lunch. 他坚持要我留下来吃晚饭.

For : 因为

draw in 吸进

如用 bring 没有 draw in 形象,贴切

at the time

the British : 英国人

虚拟语气(非真实条件句)

1、与现在事实相反

2、与过去事实相反

其从句的使用 :

1、与现在事实相反,用一般过去时

2、与过去事实相反,用过去完成时,此时主句格式为 would have done

would/could/should 都可以

must have done 对过去的推测

can't have done 对过去的推测

情态动词加 have done 表示对过去的推测

wait for

wait for five minutes

I have waited five minutes. (for 可不要)

I have waited for you for five minutes.

I have waited five years for you.

Connect ...to...

非谓语动词中的 ing 形式

1、表示其与主语是主动的关系

2、表示动作正在发生

非谓语动词中的 ed 形式表示其与主语是被动的关系

【Key structures】 关键句型

1、虚拟语气 与过去事实相反

特殊结构 : suggest/insist, 后接 that 从句(should+动词原形)

Exercise C Give the correct form of the verbs in parentheses: 用正确的动词填空 :

1 If you had told me about it earlier, I _____(be able) to help you.

2 If you _____(can/come) with us, we would have been pleased.

3 You _____(not make) such a mistake if you had been more careful.

4 If father _____(be) alive, he would be horrified.

5 If it _____ (be) fine tomorrow, we shall go for a swim.

1 would have been able

2 would have done 跟过去事实相反,从句会使用 had done

could have done, 情态动词后面一旦加了 have done 表示跟过去有关

3 would not have made

4 were : 虚拟语气与现在事实相反,从句使用一般过去时,与一般现在时相反的 be 动词,用 were 代替
if I were you

5 is 真实条件句

【Multiple choice questions】多项选择题

3 It would be possible to build a platform. A platform _____.

(a)could build (b)would be built (c)could be built (d) would build
possible

could : 可能 / would : 表示将来要做

answer : C

11 It finally connects Britain and Europe. Britain and Europe are finally _____.

(a)mixed (b)joined together (c)rejoined (d)combined

mix : 混合

join : 连接(加入), 强调使成为其中一员

rejoin : 再次加入

combine : 合并

combine [kəm'beɪn] v.(使)联合, (使)结合 n.联合企业, 联合收割机 n.联合收割机

connect : 强调连接

answer : b

9 A plan was put forward by William Low. He _____ it.

(a)suggested (b)intended (c)aimed at (d)planned

put forward : 提出

intend to do

aim at : 目标是什么

plan : 计划

suggest : 建议

suggest + doing/that,

suggest + 名词或代词

【Special difficulties】难点

Exercise 练习 Choose the correct words in the following sentences: 选择正确的词 :

1 We shall have to draw(in)(up) a new plan.

2 When I recognized who he was I drew(back)(up)in horror.

3 The car drew(back)(up) outside the cinema.

1 draw up 签署 / 2 draw back 倒退 / 3 draw up=stop : 停止,停下来

【Summary writing】摘要写作

Answer these questions in not more than 85 words. 回答下列问题, 将答案组成一个段落, 不要超过 85

个单词.

- 1 Who planned to build a tunnel under the English Channel in 1858? How would it be ventilated? (The tunnel, which...)
- 2 Who suggested a better plan two years later?
- 3 How would passing trains solve the problem of ventilation in his proposed double railway—tunnel? (because they would)
- 4 Did work begin forty—two years later or not? Why was it stopped? (Though...because)
- 5 When was the Channel Tunnel officially opened? (However)

1 The tunnel will(would) be ventilated, a French engineer planned to build in 1858.

The tunnel which a French engineer planned to build in 1858 would be ventilated if tall chimneys were built above sea level.

先行词, which : 非限定性定语从句

The tunnel, which a French engineer planned to build in 1858, would be ventilated if tall chimneys were built above sea level.

3 though...because...

because the British had feared invasion.

It was stopped because the British had feared invasion.

Though it was begun (work begin forty-two years later), it was stopped because...

5 However 起了副词的作用,后面可以直接加一个句子

【Composition】 作文

Rewrite the following sentences using the joining words in parentheses:

用括号中的连词改写以下句子 :

- 1 The English Channel separates Britain from Europe. The country has not been invaded since 1066. (Thanks to...which)
- 2 Modern warfare is far more complex. Such fears no longer exist. (However, now that...)
- 3 Britain benefits enormously from a Channel Tunnel. Europe benefits enormously from a Channel Tunnel. (Both...and)

1 Thanks to : 幸亏(to是介词) / because of : 由于

Thanks to the English Channel which separates British from Europe, the...

2 now that : 即使 (既然)

Howwever, now that moden warfare is far more complex ,such fears no longer exist.

即使现代战争越来越复杂了,然而这样的害怕都已经不存在了

3 Both...and...

Both Britain and Europe benefit... (注意 benefit 不能加 s)

benefit ['benifit] n.利益, 好处 vt.有益于, 有助于 vi.受益

§ Lesson 65 Jumbo versus the police 小象对警察

★versus prep 对 (对抗的概念)

VS 就是 versus 的缩写,读音不变

Christmas Eve : 圣诞前夜

Father Christmas : 圣诞老人

Santa Claus : 圣诞老人(美国常用)

★accompany v 陪伴, 随行

I'll accompany you to your hotel. / I'll accompany you home.

★approach v 走近

come nearer and nearer = approach

the old man approaches 80 years old

approach sb : 离某人越来越近

he is approaching me

approach n 途径, 方法

we have found an approach to success.

should : 应该(我认为)

ought to : 应该(义务上)

you should knock at the door.

you ought to knock at the door.

sb+weigh+ 体重

lose weight 减肥

★fortunate adj 幸运的

lucky : 有运气的, 幸运的 = fortunate

take to : 把...送到

dress up as : 打扮成为

dress up : 打扮

a guard of honour : 仪仗队

set off : 出发

should have done : 原本应该做而没做 : You should have come earlier.

needn't have done : 过去不必做但是做了

ought to : 应该: ought to have done 也表示原本应该做而没做

所有的情态动词+have done 都跟过去有关

1、跟虚拟语气有关的 : would have done

2、表示推测句型 : may/must/can't have done

as=because

hold up the traffic : 阻碍交通

off=away from 离开什么地方

must+v 推测 ; have to: 不得不

afterwards=later 后来

it was fortunate that...

should 跟现在有关系

should have done 跟过去有关系

let sb off(go) : 让某人走(离开)

情态动词+have done 一定和过去有关系

1、表示推测的过去 : must/can't/may

2、虚拟语气相连 : would have done

3、should have done : 原本该做但是没做

4、needn't have done : 原本不必做但是做了

let sb off : 让某人走 / let sb down : 让某人失望 / let sb in/out : 让某人进来/出去

情态动词如果后面加动词原形,认为跟现在或将来有关,一旦要和过去有关,一定在情态动词后面加 have done

①seem 加形容词 ②加不定式 ③it seemed that 句型 ④seem 后加 as if 从句: 看起来似乎
After 的后面可以直接加 doing,也可以加 having done

§ Lesson 66 Sweet as honey!像蜜一样甜!

★remote adj 偏僻的

lonely 偏僻的(孤零零的)

remote village 遥远的村庄

lonely island 孤岛

remote 偏远

★Pacific n 太平洋

Atlantic 大西洋 / Indian ocean 印度洋 / Arctic ocean 北冰洋

★damage v 毁坏

★wreck n 残骸

wreck 强调坏了没用的东西 : broken thing (一个坏了的整体,完整的)

wreckage 强调坏的东西成碎片 : piece of

★rediscover v 重新发现

re-表示再, 又的意思

review 复习 / reread 再读 / rewrite 改写 / retell 复述

★aerial adj 航空的

★survey n 调查

investigation [in'vesti'geiʃən] n.调查, 研究

survey 调查(一定要跟数据有关系)

aerial survey 航空调查(跟数据有关系)

★rescue v 营救

rescue=save

★package v 把...打包

pack n. 小包, v. 把...打成小包

package n 大包

package v 把...打成大包

parcel 包裹(邮局邮寄)

pack it for me

wrap it up for me

package deal : 一揽子交易,一揽子交易中的条款

★enthusiast n 热心人

enthusiast [in'θju:ziæst] n.热心家, 狂热者

★restore v 修复 修并且复原,如对艺术品的修复

★imagine v 想像

imagine doing

imagine it 想象一下吧! (口语)

imagine that + 从句

★packing case 包装箱

★colony n 群, 殖民地

colony ['kɒləni] n.殖民地, 侨民, (聚居的)一群同业, 一批同行, (生物)群体

colony 一群聚居在一起的生物

a colony of ants 一群蚂蚁

a colony of bees 一群蜜蜂

a colony of artists 一群艺术家

a flock of

a flock of goats 羊群

a herd of cows 一群奶牛

a crowd of (用于人)

★preserve v 保护

protect 保护

preserve 保存(经过特殊手段而保存下来)

bean curd 豆腐

preserved bean curd 豆腐乳

preserved fruit 果脯

preserved meat 腊肉

preserved fish 腊鱼

smoked fish 熏鱼

can I keep your photo? 我能保存你的照片吗?

store the cabbage

store 储存, 保存(以便日后使用)

★beeswax n 蜂蜡

本课重点词: 1 remote 2 wreck 3 re- 4 package / package deal 5 restore 6 imagine it 7 preserve

【课文讲解】

crash 从上往下掉 (不及物, on)

crash in the mountain 掉到山里

a long way to go 有很长的路要走

west of / east of / south of / north of

在英文中跟方位感相连的介词有三个 in, on, to

Haerbin 's in the north of China

on 是指跟一个地方有接触面

Korea is on the north of China

to 是相离的概念

★前面又没 the, 又没介词, west of=to the west of

west of 前面没有任何词修饰的时候, 我们认为处于相离的概念

was too badly damaged 损坏得太厉害

over 在此之间, 相当于 during (over 后如有数字则译为“超过”)

over the years 这些年来

over the new year 在新年期间 / over the Christmas 在圣诞期间

over Spring Festival 在春节期间

festival ['festəvəl] n. 节日, 喜庆日, 音乐节, 戏剧节, 喜庆, 欢宴, 欢乐 adj. 节日的, 快乐的

remain+adj 看作系动词 be 理解

the room remained warm 房间还是那么暖和, 注意与 “the room was warm.” 的区别, “remain” 有保持的意思

Christmas is coming few days after the beginning of the winter

by this time 到这时

in condition 处于...状态

in reasonable condition=in good condition

in perfect condition 处于完美状态

in poor condition 状态不好

in reasonable condition 做后置定语

keep the house in good condition

was rare and was worth rescuing.

be worth doing 表达了被动含义, 用主动 ing 表达被动含义

the cake is worth eating

the books are worth reading

have something done 让别人做某事

in parts: little by little, bit by bit 一部分一部分

the group : the group of enthusiasts

imagine 后面可以直接加宾语

imagine my excitement when I found my mother outside

imagine their excitement and delight when the People's Republic of China was founded

break sth open 打开...

cut open 切开

cut it open 剪开(信封)

tear it open 撕开(信封)

busy as a bee 忙得象个蜜蜂

sweet as honey 甜得象蜜 (在文中是双关语, 注意体会)

sticky as glue 胶水一样粘

strong as horse 马一样强壮

turn...into 把...变成

在固定短语中 as...as 中得的一个 as 省略

as busy as a bee 中第一个 as 省略: I am busy as a bee.

【Key structures】 关键句型

have sth done

1、让别人做某事 2、遭遇不幸

I have my leg broken 我摔断了腿

I have my wallet lost/stolen 我丢了钱包

shipwreck ['ʃɪprek] n. 船只失事, 海难, 遇难

情态动词 need 只用于否定句和疑问句中, 要用于肯定句中肯定是实义动词

need to do 将来需要做

§ Lesson 67 Volcanoes 火山

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

active : 积极的 / passive : 消极的, 被动的

positive: adj. 肯定的, 实际的, 积极的, 绝对的, 确实的 adj.[数] 正的 adj.[电] 阳的

★erupt n.v. (或山) 喷发

★violently adv 猛烈地, 剧烈地

violent ['vaɪələnt] adj. 猛烈的, 激烈的, 暴力引起的, 强暴的

violence ['vaɪələns] n. 猛烈, 强烈, 暴力, 暴虐, 暴行, 强暴

★manage v 设法

manage to do = try to do sth and succeed

I can manage it. / I can manage it myself.

★brilliant adj 精彩的

★liquid adj 液态的

escape death : 死里逃生

narrow escape : 九死一生 (这里的 escape 为 n 名词)

narrow ['nærəʊ] n. 狭窄部分, 海峡, 隘路

adj. 狭窄的, 精密的, 严密的, 有限的, 气量小的, 勉强的, 眼光短浅的 vi. 变窄

vt. 使变狭窄, 使缩小

escape doing sth: He escape punishment/being punished.

★alive adj 活着的

alive 做定语时一定要放在被修饰词后面, 属于表语形容词, 又如: light ahead 前面的灯光

living sth / elephant alive / living elephant 表示活着的象

live(adj) : 现场的; 表“活着的”永远不和人连用

live [lɪv] v 和 [laɪv] adj 的读音不同

live concert 现场演唱会 / live fish 活鱼, 但不能和人连

spend some time doing sth

lifetime : 毕生精力

用不定式做目的状语: to observe a new... 仔细观察, 一般科学家用“observe”

close to : 离.....很近

for long=for a long time

notice that + 宾语从句

notice sth

notice sb do/doing : 注意到某人做某事/正在做某事

notice that: 文中可改为—He notice a river of liquid rock coming towards him.

river of...形成的河流 / river of soil and stone 泥石流 / river of blood 血流成河

threaten to : 有迹象表明

the mouth of Kituro 火山口

so that : 以便于(目的状语从句), 一定含有情态动词

take a risk of/at a risk of : 冒险

risk sth=risk losing sth : 冒着失去.....的危险

risk doing : 冒着做.....的危险

在两相比较中, 如果前者属于后者, 那一定要在比较时用 other, else 排除前者

than any other man alive.

注意: spend most of his lifetime 与 spend his lifetime 的区别

tell the time 报时(固定结构)

tell the difference between: 区分, 区别

tell (sb) a lie (谎言有很多个)

tell (sb) the truth (真话只有一个, 故要特指, 加 the)

tell (sb) the difference between

say a good word for sb : 为某人说好话

only just(固定短语)=almost not : 差点就没有

on the subject of=about

(朝向)towards=in the direction of

direction [di'rekʃən, dai'rekʃən] n. 方向, 指导, 趋势, (常用复数)指示, 用法, 说明(书), 收件人地址

§ Lesson 68 Persistent 纠缠不休

【New words and expressions】 生词和短语

★persistent adj 坚持的, 固执的

you are stubborn 你这个死脑筋

stubborn ['stʌbən] adj. 顽固的, 固执的, 坚定的, 坚决的, 难应付的, 难处理的

persist 坚持(不顾阻拦一味的坚持): persist in doing sth

★avoid v 避开

avoid doing sth : 只能加 doing

★insist v 坚持做

insist 坚持(认为, 说, 是人的一种态度)insist on doing sth

persevere [ˌpəːsiˈviə] v. 坚持

persevere 坚持不懈(褒义词) : persevere in

persevere [ˌpəːsiˈviə] v. 坚持

【课文讲解】

cross : (v) 穿过 / across(adv/prep) 穿过 区别如 pass / past , 为词性上的区别

came running 向...跑过来

go shopping, go swimming, go skating(去溜冰) / coming shopping 来购物 / coming swimming

it is no use doing... 做某件事情是没有用处的

it is no use crying over the spilled milk 覆水难收 (over: 关于)

enjoy doing / appreciate sth/doing(只能加 doing)

like, love, enjoy, appreciate

用不定式做定语, 修饰 anything, anything to do: 任何要做的事

anything to eat 可以吃的东西 / anything to drink 可以喝的东西

no matter : 无论+从句(要以特殊疑问词引导)

no matter how busy you are. / no matter how deep the hole is. / no matter how well you slept.

No matter how old you are. / no matter where you are. / no matter who you are.

No matter how tired you are, your children insisted on listening to stories.

think of a way of doing : 想一个做某事的方法 / think of a way of solving

prevent sb from doing sth 阻止某人做某事, 让某人不做某事

stop sb from doing sth 让某人不做某事

keep sb from doing sth 让某人不做某事(保持不做某事)

forbid sb to do sth 禁止某人做某事

fancy meeting you here! 真想不到会在这见到你!

fancy=imagine

escape doing, risk doing, allow doing

fance+名词—表示惊讶

不定式的复合结构, 做宾语从句

be busy doing : 忙着做某事

finish doing / complete doing

would you mind my coming with you?

Mind+v.-ing

for sb--逻辑主语

-ing 的逻辑主语, 有四种形式, 分两大类

1、作为代词，可以用人称代词的宾格，又可以用形容词性物主代词

2、作为名词，可以保持本身不变，也可以变成名词所有格

my--me 可以互换

would you mind my/me smoking?

would you mind me making myself at home? 你介意我把这儿当成家吗?

4、动名词复合结构：由名词所有格或物主代词与动名词构成

His leaving is a great loss. 他的离去是一个很大的损失

Mother dislikes my(me) working late. 妈妈不喜欢我工作很迟

Mother dislikes my sleeping late.

John's having seen her did not make her worried. 约翰已经见到她的事实，没有让她感到担心

注：动名词复合结构多作主语或宾语，作主语时必须是所有格(名词所有格，形容词性物主代词)，但作宾语时可以用所有格，也可用普通格(人称代词宾格)

哪些词后面可以接动名词-ing: 介词,某些动词—avoid, enjoy, finish, It is no use, prevent sb from, fancy, imagine, escape, risk, allow 等

3、宾语：下列动词须跟动名词作宾语

admit, deny, appreciate, enjoy, avoid, complete, delay, fancy, finish, mind, practice, resent, risk, suggest, allow, permit...

insist on doing, persist in doing, persevere in doing, give up doing

特注：

以 allow 为例：allow+doing sth(动名词作宾语)，但可以，allow sb to do sth

(不定式作宾语)

这类动词常见如：advise, allow, permit, recommend, etc.

practice n—practise v / advice n -- advise v 用法一样: advise sb to do / advise doing

insist + 从句(should + 原形)，虚拟语气

salute 问候(军人向长官的)行军礼，敬礼

greet：问候

lie to：向某人撒谎

false [fə:ls] adj.错误的，虚伪的，假的，无信义的，伪造的，人工的，不老实的 adv.欺诈地

lie：谎言，可数名词，应为 a lie：tell a lie